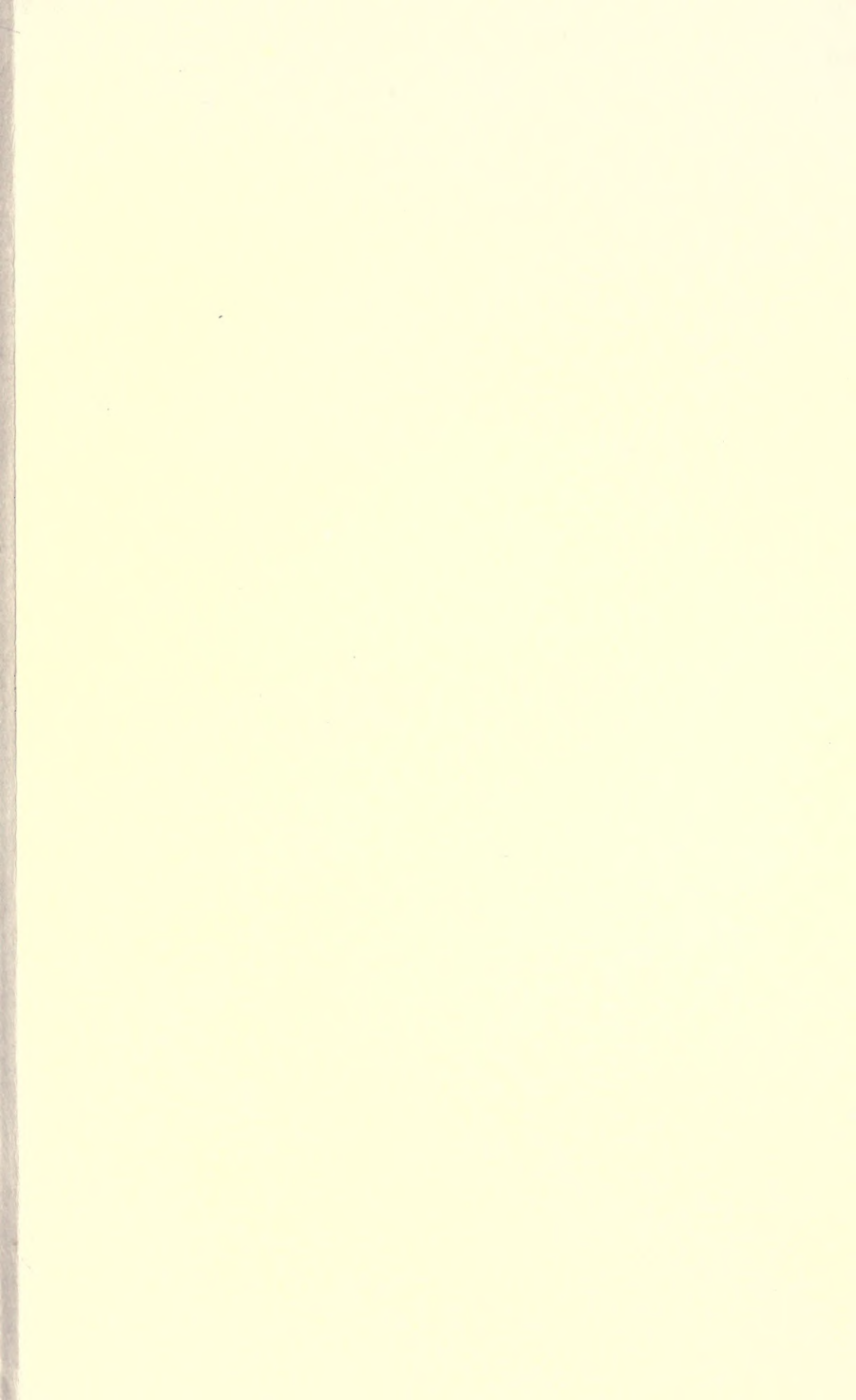




3 1761 04369 8372

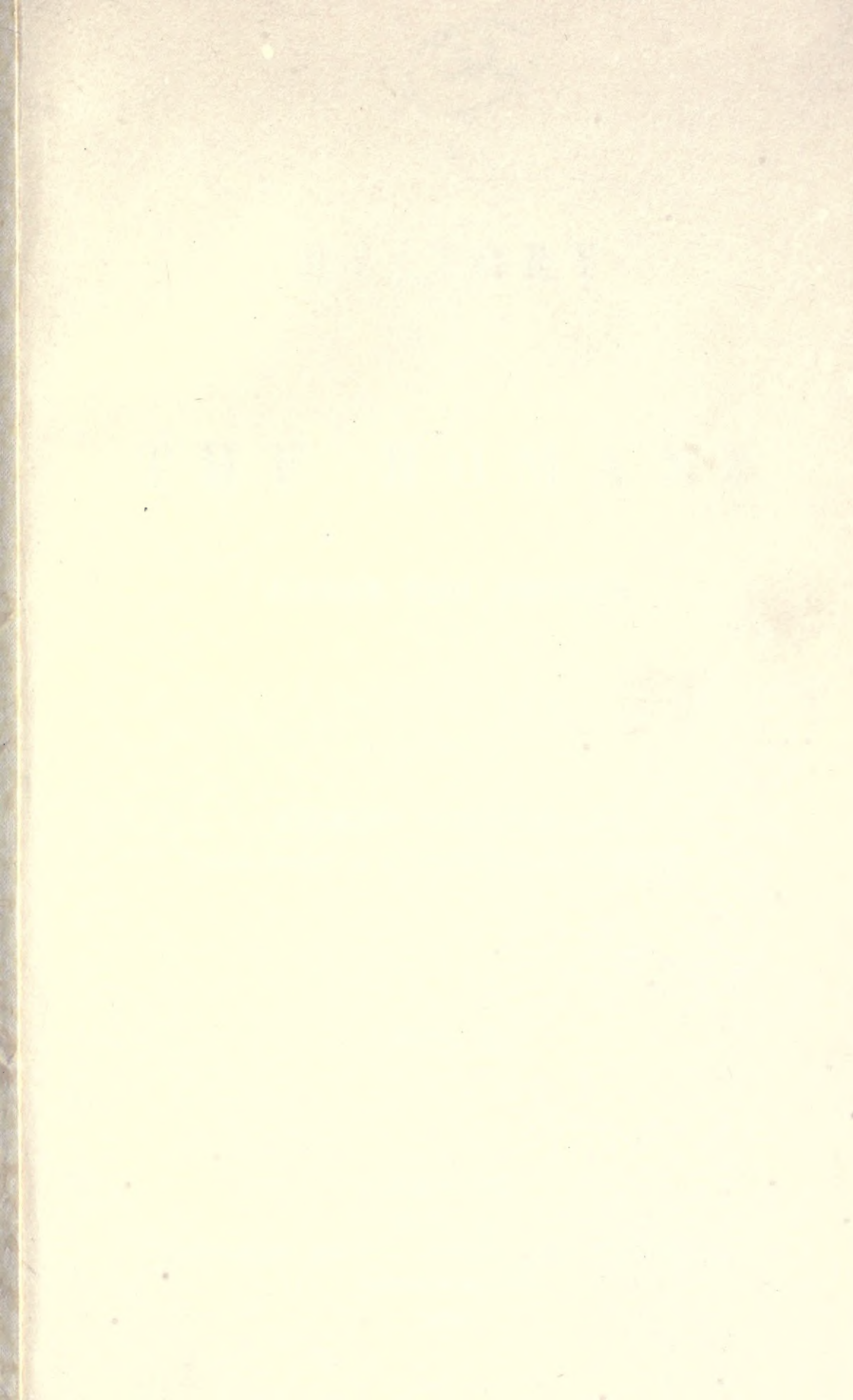








Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







22  
A

HISTORY  
OF  
THE ROMANS  
UNDER THE EMPIRE.

BY

CHARLES MERIVALE, B.D.

LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR

LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,  
PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1850.

DG  
276  
M5  
v. 2



797891

LONDON:  
SPOTTISWOODES and SHAW,  
New-street-Square.



# CONTENTS

OF

## THE SECOND VOLUME.

---

### CHAPTER XII.

Cæsar's seventh campaign in Gaul, A. U. 702. B. C. 52. — Vercingetorix effects a coalition between the Belgians and Arvernians. — Cæsar takes Genabum and Avaricum. — Wise and spirited policy of Vercingetorix. — Siege of Gergovia. — Revolt of the Ædui. — Cæsar compelled to raise the siege: he effects a junction with Labienus in Belgium, and retreats towards the province. — He obtains a victory, and blockades the Gaulish army. — Great operations before Alesia. — Triumph of the Romans, and submission of Vercingetorix. — Cæsar's eighth campaign, A. U. 703. — Partial insurrections in the North, West, and Centre of Gaul. — Capture of Uxellodunum. — The conquest of Gaul completed - - - Page 1

### CHAP. XIII.

Pompeius, as sole Consul, undertakes the reform of abuses: his ill success: he connects himself again with the Oligarchy by espousing the daughter of Scipio. — Cæsar intrigues to obtain the Consulship before relinquishing his province. — Cicero accepts the government of Cilicia: his civil and military administration. — The Nobles seek to deprive Cæsar of his command. — M. Marcellus insults him by the harsh punishment of a Transpadane Gaul. — Pompeius falls sick. — Rejoicings for his recovery. — Cæsar conciliates the Gauls. — Strength and composition of his army: his popularity with the soldiers. — Character of the younger Curio: his devotion to Cæsar's interests. — Cæsar received with acclamations in Cisalpine Gaul. — He fixes his quarters at Ravenna. — He offers a compromise with the Senate, which it refuses, and requires him to resign his command. — The Tribunes interpose, are menaced with violence, and thereupon fly to Cæsar's camp. — A. U. 702—704, B. C. 52—50 - 44

## CHAP. XIV.

The Consuls prepare to withstand Cæsar's claims by force. — Cæsar crosses the Rubicon. — Consternation of his enemies. — They abandon Rome, and rally round Pompeius in Campania. — Cæsar advances triumphantly. — The Senate affects to negotiate. — Pompeius falls back upon Luceria. — Domitius makes a stand at Corfinium: is betrayed and delivered up by his soldiers: pardoned by Cæsar. — Effect of Cæsar's clemency. — Pompeius is besieged by Cæsar in Brundisium. — Escapes across the sea with his troops, the Consuls, and the Senate. — Explanation of the apparent pusillanimity of his conduct (Jan.—March, A. U. 705) - Page 99

## CHAP. XV.

Cæsar repairs to Rome and convenes the Senate. — His moderation and clemency. — He plunders the temple of Saturn. — He proceeds to attack the Pompeian armies in Spain. — Domitius encourages the Massilians to shut their gates against him. — He leaves a force to besiege their city, and crosses the Pyrenees. — The Pompeian lieutenants occupy Ilerda. — Military operations before that place. — Overflow of the Sicoris and peril of Cæsar. — Brutus gains a naval advantage over the Massilians. — The Pompeians compelled to evacuate Ilerda. — Further military operations, ending in the capitulation of the Pompeian armies. A. U. 705, B. C. 49. - 147

## CHAP. XVI.

Siege and capture of Massilia. — Cæsar receives the submission of Varro, and establishes his power throughout the Spanish provinces. — Campaign of Curio in Africa: his defeat and death. — Disaster to Cæsar's forces in Illyricum. — Administration of Rome by Lepidus and M. Antonius. — Cæsar is created Dictator in his absence. — He quells a mutiny among his troops at Placentia, and hastens to Rome. — His financial and political measures. — He is elected Consul, and resigns the Dictatorship. — Prepares to follow Pompeius across the sea. — Advantages of his position compared with that of his adversaries. A. U. 705. B. C. 49. - 193

## CHAP. XVII.

The Senatorial party assemble at Thessalonica. — Review of their forces and position. — Cæsar crosses over to Epirus. — Pompeius throws himself before Dyrrhachium. — Maritime operations of



Bibulus : his mortification and death. — Sedition in Italy, and death of Cælius. — Antonius crosses over to Epirus with reinforcements. — Cæsar blockades Pompeius within his lines. — Operations in Macedonia and Greece. — Appius Claudius consults the Oracle of Delphi. — Cæsar is baffled in his attack on Pompeius, and withdraws into Thessaly. — Pompeius follows, and effects a junction with Scipio. — Gives battle at Pharsalia. — Rout of the Senatorial forces. — Flight of Pompeius : death of Domitius : surrender of M. Brutus (Jan.—Aug. A. U. 706, B. C. 48) - - Page 235

## CHAP. XVIII.

Pompeius seeks refuge in Egypt. — Treacherous policy of the advisers of King Ptolemæus. — Pompeius is enticed from his vessel and murdered. — The fugitives from Pharsalia reassemble at Dyrrhachium and Corcyra. — Cicero withdraws from the contest. — Scipio assumes the command. — Cæsar follows in pursuit of Pompeius : receives the submission of C. Cassius : reaches Egypt, and pays honour to the head of Pompeius. — Undertakes to settle the affairs of the kingdom. — Fascinations of Cleopatra. — Discontent of the Alexandrians : they rise against Cæsar and blockade him in the palace. — The Alexandrian war : intrigues, defeat, and death of Ptolemæus. — Cæsar places Cleopatra on his throne. — Pharnaces attacks the allies of the Republic, and defeats Calvinus. — Cæsar marches against him : he is routed at the battle of Zela and slain. — Arrogance of the conqueror, A. U. 706, 707, B. C. 48, 47 - 303

## CHAP. XIX.

Character of Cæsar's policy in Rome. — He assumes the Dictatorship for the third time. — He quells a mutiny among his soldiers. — The Senatorial party collect their forces in Africa. — Cato lands at Cyrene, crosses the Libyan desert, and joins the forces of Scipio at Utica. — Campaign in Africa decided by the victory of Cæsar at Thapsus. — Dispersion of the Republican forces, and death of their principal leaders. — Cato undertakes to defend Utica. — His adherents abandon the contest. — He commits suicide. — The Dictatorship for ten years and other distinctions showered upon Cæsar. — On his return to Rome he celebrates four triumphs, and gratifies the people with shows and largesses. — Dedication of the Julian Forum. — The war renewed by Cnæus Pompeius in Spain. — He is supported by Cæsar's discontented soldiers. — Cæsar's final campaign, and decisive victory at Munda. — Of all the Senatorial leaders Sextus alone remains in arms. — Disturbances in Syria. Sept. A. U. 707—April, A. U. 709 - - - - 345



## CHAP. XX.

Cæsar's legislation: his sumptuary laws: increase of the number of the Senate: limitation of the term of provincial governments: extension of the franchise: distribution of lands to the veterans: measures for multiplying the free population of Italy: assignment of the Judicia to the Senators and Knights, to the exclusion of the *Ærarian Tribunes*: repression of crimes of violence, and abolition of the clubs. — Cæsar contemplates the establishment of an uniform system of administration: he proposes to compile a code of laws, and to execute a complete map of the Empire. — Cæsar's patronage of literature: his reform of the Calendar: his reforms are viewed with jealousy by the Nobles: he is accused of pride and arrogance. — The demeanour of Cleopatra tends to make him unpopular; at the same time he is flattered and his clemency extolled. — He disbands his soldiers, and relies on the favour of the citizens Page 401

## CHAP. XXI.

Tranquillity of Rome during Cæsar's absence in Spain. — Character of his principal friends: Balbus, Oppius, Matius, Hirtius. — Their Epicurean principles. — Cæsar himself a free thinker, but addicted to superstition. — His return to Rome, and last triumph. — Harsh treatment of Laberius. — Honours and dignities showered upon Cæsar. — He receives the appellation of *Pater Patriæ*, and the prænomen *Imperatoris*: is elected Consul for ten years, and created Dictator for life, &c. — His magnificent schemes for works of public utility. — He manifests symptoms of intolerable pride. — Cæsar's urbanity of character. — He visits Cicero at his villa. — Cicero exhorts him to make war on the Parthians. — He prepares to set out on an expedition of foreign conquest, and appoints magistrates for the interval of his intended absence. — Cæsar appears to covet the title of King. — The people express their disapprobation. — He refuses the diadem. — A conspiracy is formed against his life by men of both parties in the state. — They place Brutus at their head. — Assassination of Cæsar on the Ides of March, beneath the statue of Pompeius, A. U. 709 — March 710, B. C. 45, 44 - 436

## CHAP. XXII.

Reflections upon Cæsar's assassination. — His person, character, and abilities. — Cæsar represents the virtues and defects of his age. — Influence of the old Etruscan discipline upon the Romans: it is gradually supplanted by the civilization of the Greeks. — Character

of Greek civilization in its decay. — Philosophy and free-thinking introduced into Rome. — Decay of the old Italian faith, and rise of Oriental superstitions. — Influence of Greek ideas upon the principles of Roman law. — Liberal tendencies of Cicero and the contemporary Jurisconsults. — Influence of Greek literature upon the Romans. — Conflict between the Greek and Italian spirit : Ennius, Nævius, Lucilius. — Spirit of imitation diffused over Roman literature. — Study of the Greek rhetoricians : its effect upon Roman eloquence. — Decay of military discipline. — Familiarity with the courts and standing armies of the East demoralizes the Proconsuls and the Legions. — Fatal effects of the observation of royalty abroad. — Concluding remarks        -        -        -        Page 486

## CORRIGENDA IN VOL. II.

- P. 66. line 13. For "novel amusement from contemplating the situation," read "amusement from contemplating the novel situation."
380. l. 6. from bottom. For "kinsmen" read "kinsman."
385. l. 7. from bottom. For "triumphs," read "triumphed."
426. l. 10. from bottom. Read "the excess of the Julian year over the Solar is a progressively increasing one; that, at the present time, it amounts to as much as 11 m. 22 s., while, at the commencement of the Julian era, it was only 11 m. 12 s."



# HISTORY

OF

# THE ROMANS

## UNDER THE EMPIRE.

---

### CHAPTER XII.

CÆSAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN IN GAUL, A.U. 702. B.C. 52.—VERCINGETORIX EFFECTS A COALITION BETWEEN THE BELGIANS AND ARVERNIAIS.—CÆSAR TAKES GENABUM AND AVARICUM.—WISE AND SPIRITED POLICY OF VERCINGETORIX.—SIEGE OF GERGOVIA.—REVOLT OF THE ÆDUI.—CÆSAR COMPELLED TO RAISE THE SIEGE: HE EFFECTS A JUNCTION WITH LABIENUS IN BELGIUM, AND RETREATS TOWARDS THE PROVINCE.—HE OBTAINS A VICTORY, AND BLOCKADES THE GAULISH ARMY.—GREAT OPERATIONS BEFORE ALESIA.—TRIUMPH OF THE ROMANS, AND SUBMISSION OF VERCINGETORIX.—CÆSAR'S EIGHTH CAMPAIGN, A.U. 703.—PARTIAL INSURRECTIONS IN THE NORTH, WEST, AND CENTRE OF GAUL.—CAPTURE OF UXELLODUNUM.—THE CONQUEST OF GAUL COMPLETED.

WE have seen the death of Crassus begin to bear fruit in the mutual alienation of the surviving members of the triple league, and in the renewed approximation of Pompeius to the party from which he had been so long estranged. During the winter, Cæsar, from his retreat at Lucca, had been a close observer of this change in the political game, precipitated as it had been by the proceed-

CHAP.  
XII.

---

Cæsar's lenient policy towards the conquered states of Gaul.

CHAP.  
XII.

ings consequent upon the murder of Clodius. The sole consul had undertaken to maintain the position of the Roman oligarchy by an extensive conscription throughout Italy. At the decree of the great council of the nobles, the youth of the peninsula were marshalled in arms: the Etrurians, the Marsians, the Samnites, and the Umbrians were sworn to defend the senate and people<sup>1</sup> of Rome under the auspices of the new Sulla. It remained to be seen whether the old allies of Marius would prove a source of strength or of weakness to the enemy who had ventured to invoke their aid. At a crisis of such intense interest it was, we may imagine, from no patriotic motives, nor from a stern sense of duty to his country, that Cæsar again withdrew from the focus of action and intrigue to the obscure banishment of a distant province. While he remained unarmed within reach of the city even his personal safety was at the mercy of his enemies. With less patience and self-control he might have been excited by the adverse turn of circumstances to make a premature appeal to the chances of war. He might have called at once upon his own devoted legions; he might have thrown himself upon the generous impulses of his friends in the city; even the new Pompeian levies he might have summoned in the names of Marius and Drusus, of Pompædus and Telesinus. But his resources were yet only half developed; the Gauls were hostile and still un-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 1.: "De senatus consulto certior factus ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent," where *conjurare* is a military term for *simul jurare*.

broken. The conquest must be thoroughly completed before they could be bent to his ulterior purposes, and made to serve as willing instruments in his meditated career. The proconsul, in fact, now regarded the magnificent country subjected to his rule not merely as a great province which he had attached to the empire, but rather as a private estate to be organized for the furtherance of his own designs. As such, he made it, in the first place, the nursery of his army, levying fresh Roman legions within its limits, without regard to the authority of the senate, and without recourse to the national treasury. With the same view he quartered his friends and partizans upon the conquered land, establishing them in permanent employments throughout the province, and effecting, through their agency, a systematic development of its resources. The subjugated and allied states he treated with studious forbearance, such as was seldom experienced from other commanders: he endowed their faithful cities with privileges, and encouraged their commerce, which already flourished in the South under his equitable administration.

But a closer view of Cæsar's policy in Gaul, with its principles and results, must be reserved for another opportunity; it is sufficient for the present to indicate thus far the direction in which it lay. The barbarians were easily seduced by these caresses. They solicited with ardour the honour of enrolment in the Julian gens.<sup>1</sup> The

Favourable disposition of the Gaulish democracies towards him.

<sup>1</sup> In the later history of the Empire, we shall meet with an Africa-



CHAP.  
XII.

parts of the country where the old aristocratic rule had been most impaired were those which submitted with least reluctance to the Roman domination. Wherever the people had an influential voice in the direction of affairs, they showed themselves generally willing to accept a yoke which promised personal security, equal burdens, and all the enervating indulgences which Rome lavished upon her obedient subjects. Brief and inglorious had been the flourishing period of Gaulish democracy. On the other hand, it was the chieftains principally who were impatient of the conquest. Wherever the power of this class was great, as in the recent uncivilized communities of Belgium, the flames of insurrection might be repressed, but were not extinguished. It was from this indomitable spirit of resistance to their conqueror, not less than from their acknowledged character among their own countrymen, that the Belgians merited the testimony Cæsar bore them, as the most warlike people of Gaul. Even among the Arvernians the sentiments of clanship were not extinct, and the gallant appeals of Vercingetorix could still sway the feelings of the multitude, in spite of the decision of their assemblies, and the maturer judgment of the nation itself.

Cæsar lavishes the treasures

But upon those parts of Gaul in which the resistance had been vigorous, and where the yoke

nus, an Agricola, a Classicus, a Florus, an Indus, a Sacrovir, a Sabinus, and several others, all of Gaulish extraction, and bearing the gentile name of Julius. It was, however, to Augustus, no doubt, that many families owed their introduction into the Julian house, as he also gave to some of his colonies the designation of Julia, in honour of his adoptive parent.

CHAP.  
XII.

of Gaul,  
enriches his  
dependents,  
and deco-  
rates the  
city.

of conquest was still shaken by repeated revolts, the hand of the proconsul lay heavy. The estates of the chieftains, the ornaments of the cities, the hoarded treasures of the temples, were distributed without remorse among his friends and officers. All that he could withhold from their insatiable appetite he reserved to defray his own lavish expenditure in Rome, to bribe the nobles with money, and cajole the multitude with public benefactions. The triumvirs had vied with one another in courting popular applause by pomp and munificence. Cæsar determined to eclipse the theatre of Pompeius by buildings of greater splendour or utility. The spoils of the Gauls were employed to adorn and enlarge the forum, in which their victorious ancestors had encamped; and the remains of the Julian basilica, on the one side, and the contemporary edifice of Æmilius, on the other, still indicate to antiquaries the limits of that venerable enclosure.<sup>1</sup>

The magnificent results thus brought before

Exultation  
of the people

<sup>1</sup> Stat. *Sylv.* i. 1. 29. :

“At laterum passus hinc Julia tecta tuentur,  
Illinc belligeri sublimis regia Paulli.”

Cicero (*ad Att.* iv. 16.) says that Oppius and himself were employed as friends of Cæsar to purchase and lay out a space on one side of the forum, which they effected at a cost of 60,000,000 sesterces, by clearing away a great many private dwellings. The Curia and Basilica Julia, which occupied part of this site, were not begun till some years later (see the chronological tables in Bunsen's *Beschreibung Roms*). Cæsar gave orders at the same time for rebuilding, of marble, the Septa, or polling-booths in the Campus Martius, and surrounding them with an arcade a mile in length. Cic. *l. c.* Æmilius Paulus was quæstor of Macedonia, prætor A. U. 701, and finally consul A. U. 704, with C. Marcellus.



CHAP.  
XII.

of Rome at  
Cæsar's  
victories.

their eyes, furnished the Romans with a vivid idea of the magnitude of the labour by which they had been achieved. Nothing in their history could be remembered equal to them, nothing certainly in the recorded transactions between Rome and Gaul, fertile as they had been in disastrous defeats and ineffective victories. "Marius," said the popular orator, "arrested the deluge of the Gauls in Italy, but he never penetrated into their abodes, he never subdued their cities. Cæsar has not only *repulsed* the Gauls, he has *conquered* them. The Alps were once the barrier between Italy and the barbarians; the gods had placed them there for that very purpose, for by them alone was Rome protected through the perils of her infancy. Now let them sink and welcome: from the Alps to the ocean Rome has henceforth no enemy to fear."<sup>1</sup>

The Gauls  
flatter  
themselves  
with revived  
hopes of  
recovering  
their inde-  
pendence.

In the midst, however, of these rhetorical flourishes, it so happened that the Gauls also, on their side, conceived that their cause was on the eve of triumph. They had heard of the confusion which reigned at Rome, of the levies of the youth of Italy, and the apparent imminence of intestine war. They were persuaded that Cæsar was retained beyond the Alps by the urgency of affairs.<sup>2</sup> They hoped to be forgotten by Rome, at least for a moment, and determined to make the most of the brief respite which might never again recur. Ten legions indeed remained in their country; but

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *de Prov. Consul.* 13, 14.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 1.: "Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli quod res poscere videbatur, retineri urbano motu Cæsarem."

Cæsar was absent. It was the general himself, they said, who had conquered them, and not his army. The proconsul had previously tried the experiment of dispersing his forces through a great extent of territory, and had suffered severe losses in consequence. This winter he concentrated them more closely together; but the tribes which were not awed by their immediate presence were able to carry on their intrigues the more securely, and succeeded in organizing another general revolt; while he was obliged to trust to the fidelity of the Ædui and Arverni even for the transmission of his couriers and despatches between the head quarters of his army and his own winter residence within the Alps. The Gauls, indeed, were not without hopes of intercepting him on his return alone, or with a slender escort. But the levies which Pompeius was making in Italy by the authority of the senate, furnished him with an excuse for strengthening his own armaments, and he employed the period of his absence from Gaul in collecting troops for the fresh campaign he anticipated.<sup>1</sup>

The execution of Acco furnished a lively subject of complaint at the secret meetings which the Gaulish chieftains convened in their distant fastnesses<sup>2</sup> to plan measures of revolt. Such, they remarked to one another, might be the fate of any one of them. Who, then, would venture to strike the first blow in a matter which equally concerned all? To the state which should be the

They form an extensive confederacy under the command of Vercingetorix.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G. l. c.*

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *l. c.*: "Indictis inter se principes Galliæ conciliis sylvestribus ac remotis locis."

CHAP.  
XII.

first to rise in arms promises were held out of national gratitude and reward. The Carnutes accepted the post of honour; they only required that the rest should pledge themselves by an oath of more than usual solemnity to join in the enterprise; for their meetings were too hurried and private to admit of the usual precaution of exchanging hostages for each other's good faith.<sup>1</sup> The leaders of the Carnutes, Cotuatus and Conetodunus, are described by Cæsar as men of violent and desperate character; assuredly they plunged their people into the war with more vehemence than reflection. But the first shock of the barbarians was sudden and irresistible. They threw themselves upon the Roman settlers in Genabum, who were driving their usual trade of money-lending, and made an indiscriminate massacre of them. Still more important was the defection of the Arverni, who were excited to arms against the will of their government by Vercingetorix, a son of the ambitious Celtillus, whose life had been forfeited a few years before for the crime of aspiring to the sovereignty.<sup>2</sup> Expelled from Gergovia, their capital, the young warrior roamed the mountain tracts of the Cantal and the Puy de Dôme, to this day the rudest fastnesses of Gallic independence,

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 2.: "Quoniam in præsentia de obsidibus inter se cavere non possint, ne res efferatur."

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 4. Cingetorix, Vercingetorix, and other Gaulish names may possibly be analysed into several Celtic words, and the compound, in each case, may be an official designation, such as captain, general, generalissimo (Thierry, *Gaulois*, iii. 86.). In the same manner the name Arminius may be the German Heermann or general. But Heermann (Hermann) is a well-known surname, and the same may have been the case with these Celtic appellatives also.



inflaming young and old by his generous eloquence, until they were roused to expel in its turn the government which resisted the movement, and greeted their champion with the title of king. Straightway the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones, Aulerci, Lemovices, and Andi, all the tribes of the Mid Seine and the Lower Loire, with many others, joined in one loud cry of defiance to the oppressor. They unanimously saluted Vercingetorix as their leader, and submitted to the levies of men, money, and arms which he imposed upon them severally. He knew the people he had to deal with, how fitfully the military spirit kindled and subsided among them, how strangely gallantry and meanness were blended in their composition. His rule was one of terror and severity. Any appearance of supineness in the cause was avenged with flames and tortures. The loss of an eye or an ear was his lightest punishment for trifling offences.<sup>1</sup>

It was to be apprehended that the treachery of the Arverni, who had hitherto kept their faith inviolate, would be followed by that of the Ædui, in whose power it lay to close the only route which remained open for Cæsar to communicate with his army. This was the point to which the views of the Gaulish leader were in the first instance directed, and it required the utmost decision and rapidity on the part of the proconsul to frustrate them. It was now the depth of winter.<sup>2</sup> The

Cæsar's  
energy and  
decision.

<sup>1</sup> So under Napoleon's regime in France, the most searching severity was necessary to raise and keep together an army, which in the field was full of enthusiasm and self-devotion.

<sup>2</sup> Owing to the confusion of the Roman calendar at this period,



CHAP.  
XII.

Cevennes, which rise to their highest elevation at the point where they form the common frontier of the Province and the Arvernian territory, were thickly covered with snow, and at such a season were regarded as an impassable barrier.<sup>1</sup> But Cæsar, who had just crossed the Alps, was not to be deterred by a less formidable rampart.<sup>2</sup> He forced his way across them with such troops as he had with him, including his new levies.<sup>3</sup> By this movement he distracted the attention of Vercingetorix, who was at that moment soliciting the alliance of some neighbouring states, and called him back to the defence of his astonished countrymen. Cæsar left D. Brutus in a secure position to harass and occupy the enemy, while he hastened himself back again across the mountains to Vienna, the

which will be explained in a subsequent chapter, the Kalends of January for the year A.U. 702 fell on the 23d Nov. of the year preceding, according to the true reckoning. (Ideler, *Chronol.* ii. 116.) Pompeius assumed the consulship v. Kal. Mart. or Feb. 25. (*Ascon. in Milon.*), corresponding with the middle of January. This was the time of Cæsar's return to Gaul: "Cum jam ille urbanas res virtute Cn. Pompeii commodiorem in statum pervenisse intelligeret" (*B. G.* vii. 6.).

<sup>1</sup> Comp. Plut. *Cæs.* 25.: τότε δὲ χειμῶνος ὥρα, πάγοι ποτάμων καὶ νηετοῖς ἀποκεκρυμμένοι δρυμοὶ, καὶ πέδια χειμάρροις ἐπιλειμνασμένα, καὶ πῇ μὲν ἀτέκμαρτοι χιόνος ἀτραποὶ, πῇ δὲ δι' ἐλῶν καὶ ρευμάτων παρατρεπομένων ἀσάφεια πολλὴ τῆς πορείας, παντάπασιν ἐδόκουν ἀνεπιχείρητα Καίσαρι τὰ τῶν ἀφισταμένων ποιεῖν. Lucan evidently refers to this exploit, where he describes the Cevennes as snowy mountains i. 434.:

"Qua montibus ardua summis  
Gens habitat cana pendentes rupe Gebennas."

<sup>2</sup> Silius (iv. 745.) says of Hannibal crossing the Apennines:

"Prior extingui labique videtur  
Gloria, post Alpes si stetur montibus ullis."

<sup>3</sup> *Cæs.* vii. 8.: "Discussa nive sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis summo labore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit."

capital of the Province, collected there some more troops, and took the road through the country of the Ædui to the quarters of his legions among the Lingones.<sup>1</sup>

He reaches the quarters of his army, leads it into the country of the Carnutes, and takes Genabum.

Thus, by extraordinary exertions and rapid movements, which are often calculated to terrify an enemy more than the most brilliant deeds of arms, Cæsar placed himself again at the head of his forces, assembled in a formidable mass from their scattered cantonments. The leader of the Gaulish confederacy, reeking from the massacres of Genabum, was menacing Gergovia, the capital of the Boii. These people, a remnant, as has been before mentioned, of the Helvetic migration, had been settled in this district by Cæsar, and placed under the patronage of the Ædui. To attack them was in fact to assail the fidelity of the more powerful nation, which, it was hoped, might be induced by the danger of its clients to join in the general defection from Rome. Anxious to avert this risk, Cæsar rushed to the defence of the Boii, although the season of the year and the scarcity of provisions presented serious obstacles to the movements of an army. His first object was to march upon Gena-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 9.: "In Lingones contendit ubi duæ legiones hiemabant." We may conjecture the spot to be that of the Roman station of Andematunum, afterwards Lingones, now Langres. This town stands on a hill rising from a central plateau, and its elevation is said to be the highest of any in France: perhaps it may be identified with the station alluded to by Lucan:

"Castraque quæ Vogesi curvam super ardua rupem  
Pugnaces pictis cohibebant Lingonas armis."—Luc. i. 397.

The hills from which the Marne, Meuse, and Saone take their rise were comprehended under the general name of Vogesus.

CHAP.  
XII.

bum, the possession of which place would intercept the communication of the northern and southern states of the confederacy; while he justly expected that the first rumour of his attack would draw off Vercingetorix from the siege of Gergovia.<sup>1</sup> With his usual celerity he advanced to the walls before the defenders were apprised of his movements. The meditated assault was only postponed for the moment by the late hour of his arrival. But the Gauls within, astounded at the unexpected apparition of their restless enemy, were preparing to evacuate the town by the bridge which crosses the Loire. As soon as the news reached him that they were about to elude pursuit, he led his troops, already on the watch for the signal, to attack the walls. Fire was applied to the gates, and an entrance easily effected, since no resistance was offered. The flying multitude, impeded by the darkness of the night and the narrowness of the bridge, were captured almost without a blow. The exertions of the soldiery demanded a soldier's reward, while the treachery of the inhabitants gave it a sufficient, or at least a plausible, pretext. Cæsar abandoned the place to fire and sword; the whole of the plunder was distributed among the captors.

Vercingetorix exhorts the Gauls to change their

The proconsul immediately crossed the Loire and entered the country of the Bituriges. He took a fortress named Noviodunum, defeated a

<sup>1</sup> Genabum, or Genabus, is the modern Orleans. Gergovia of the Boii is to be distinguished from Gergovia of the Arverni: there are no means of determining its site; but the Boii were settled in a part of the Æduan territory between the Loire and Allier, a district of the modern Bourbonnais, and their capital may have been at Moulins.



detachment of Arvernian cavalry, chiefly through the prowess of some German horse, and proceeded to lay siege to Avaricum, the capital of the tribe, a fortification of great size and strength, known in modern times by the name of Bourges.<sup>1</sup> Vercingetorix, though not dispirited by these successive disasters, now saw the necessity of changing the plan of operations, in which his countrymen had so long blindly confided. He assured them that the fatal termination of every encounter between the Gauls and the Romans was no reproach upon their valour; that no walls could withstand the skill of the Romans in engineering; no array maintain itself in the field against such weapons and such discipline. But he reminded them that through the winter and early spring the soil on which the enemy trod could furnish him with no provisions. He must disperse his troops among the villages and fortresses, and seize for his subsistence the stores there collected. Let there be no more attempts then, he said, to defy him in the open field; let him rather be followed in detail into every corner where he roamed for sustenance; above all, let the towns which served him for magazines be destroyed by the hands of the inhabitants themselves. The effect of such a mode of resistance must be his speedy and disgraceful retreat, and with it the restoration of liberty to central Gaul,

<sup>1</sup> As with many other Gaulish towns, the original name became exchanged for that of the people, i. e. Bituriges, and thence the modern Bourges and the name of the province Berri. The history of this change of name, which is found so repeatedly in Gaulish geography, is a curious subject in itself, which I may have a future opportunity of explaining more fully.



CHAP  
XII.

They consent to destroy their own towns, but are induced to spare Avaricum.

and to every other state that should have the spirit to make similar sacrifices.<sup>1</sup>

The assembled council of Gaulish states assented gallantly to this proposal. In one day twenty fortresses of the Bituriges were levelled to the ground, and similar havoc was made throughout the territories of the allies. But when the fate of Avaricum itself came to be discussed, whether it should be defended or destroyed, the Bituriges could hold out no longer. Their deputies threw themselves at the feet of the assembled Gauls, and interceded with piteous cries for the preservation of their beautiful and, as they deemed, impregnable city. The hearts of the chieftains were moved to compassion. Vercingetorix at first sternly resisted representations which he knew to be delusive. But when the rest gave way, he at last yielded to the general clamour, and consented that the place should be maintained and an ample force assigned for its defence.

Avaricum captured by the Romans.

The site of Avaricum was admirably calculated for defence. It stood on a hill, and a narrow causeway between a river and a morass afforded the only approach to it.<sup>2</sup> These natural advantages had been improved by art; and the devoted garrison now proceeded to strengthen their defences within the walls. The combined exertions of the Roman legions were applied to draw lines of circumvallation around them, while the principal force of the Gaulish league watched these operations at a short distance, and cut off the supplies destined by the Boii and Ædui for the hostile

<sup>1</sup> *Cæs. B. G.* vii. 20.

<sup>2</sup> *Cæs. B. G.* vii. 17.; *Dion.* xl. 34.

camp. While the Bituriges within their city were hard pressed by the machinery which the Roman engineers directed against their walls, the forces of the proconsul, on their side, were harassed by the fatigues of the siege and the scarcity of provisions. Cæsar is lavish of praise in speaking of the fortitude with which his soldiers bore their privations: they refused to allow him to raise the siege; and when he at last led them against the enemy's army, and finding it too strongly posted for an attack, withdrew them again within their lines, they submitted to the disappointment, and once more applied themselves without a murmur to the tedious operations of the blockade. The skill of the assailants at length triumphed over the bravery of the defenders. The walls were approached by towers at various points, and mounds constructed against which the combustible missiles of the besieged were unavailing. Finally, a desperate sally was repulsed, and then, at last, the constancy of the Bituriges began to fail. Taking advantage of a moment when the watch on the walls had relaxed its vigilance, Cæsar marshalled his legions behind his works<sup>1</sup>, and poured them suddenly against the opposing ramparts. They gained the summit of the walls, which the defenders abandoned without a blow, rallying, however, in the middle of the town, in such hasty array as the emergency would allow. A bloody struggle ensued; both parties were numerous, and, still burning to avenge the massacre of their countrymen at Genabum, the as-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 27.: "Legiones intra vineas in occulto expeditas."

CHAP.  
XII.

sailants gave no quarter. The Gauls were routed and exterminated, their women and children mercilessly slaughtered, and the great central city of Gaul fell into the hands of the conquerors without affording a single captive for their triumph.<sup>1</sup>

Vercingetorix revives the courage of the Gauls.

The influence of the champion of Gaulish independence, far from declining, rather gained strength by this disaster, for he could represent that the defence of Avaricum had thwarted the policy he so warmly recommended, and to which, in that single instance, the allies had refused to accede. He now instructed his followers, abandoning their regular fortresses, to defend themselves with temporary works, according to the Roman practice, which the Gauls had never before adopted. Nor were the rest of the tribes discouraged: many reinforcements arrived, notwithstanding the great losses the cause had sustained; the numbers of the confederates were recruited by new levies, and the Romans found their enemy no less formidable than before in actual strength, and much more so in experience and confidence.

Vacillating conduct of the Ædui, and divisions among them: interference of Cæsar.

Hitherto the Ædui had acted with great indecision. They had refused assistance to the Bituriges when that unfortunate people, urged to revolt by the Arvernians, had solicited their protection to enable them to remain faithful to Rome. This refusal, veiled by a flimsy pretext, had thrown the Bituriges into the arms of the confederates, and had brought upon them the destruction of their capital. The attack of Vercingetorix upon the Boii was intended to force the Ædui to a declaration of

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 22—28.



their sentiments; but Cæsar's sudden diversion on the North withdrew the enemy, and relieved them from this pressure. On the other hand, the pro-consul complained that the provisions and stores which he required at their hands came slowly and scantily to his camp, until the capture of *Avaricum* gave him abundant supplies. The counsels of the *Ædui* vacillated through internal divisions. At the commencement of the spring they held their annual election of a *vergobret*, and then these dissensions came to a head. While a faction among the chiefs tried to thrust into the office a noble of the name of *Cotus*, who, as brother of the late *vergobret*, was by the law excluded from it, the priests, at the head of the dominant party, selected a youth of birth and distinction, named in the Roman version of his Gaulish appellation *Convictolitans*. The rival candidates appealed to Cæsar, and consented to abide by his decision. The popular party he probably considered the most favourable to his own policy, and he accordingly confirmed their appointment.<sup>1</sup> But, having performed this act of friendly interference, he demanded his reward: he required the nation to co-operate vigorously with him, and to furnish him with a contingent of ten thousand men.

Having imposed these orders upon his clients, Cæsar proceeded to divide his Roman forces into two armies. He placed four legions under the

Cæsar  
enters the  
country of  
the *Arverni*,  
and lays

<sup>1</sup> There is some obscurity in Cæsar's account of this transaction (vii. 33.): "*Intermissis magistratibus*" I understand, with Hotoman, to refer to the law that two individuals of the same family should not succeed one another in the supreme magistracy.



CHAP.  
XII.

---

 siege to  
Gergovia.

command of Labienus, whom he charged to take up his quarters in the country of the Senones, and from thence maintain the obedience of the central states; with the remaining six he crossed from the Loire to the Allier, intending to make his way to Gergovia of the Arverni. His vigilant enemy was not off his guard. He broke the bridges, and, at the same time, guarded the fords of the latter river. If the energy of both commanders was equal, the skill of the Roman was superior. By a feigned movement he drew off his adversary's attention, and hastily rebuilt one of the broken bridges. Cæsar's camp was always furnished with the materials and the workmen which such constructions required, and the rapidity with which he effected them was one of the main secrets of his success. He transported his army across the Allier with his usual celerity; and Vercingetorix, surprised to find his flank thus suddenly turned, cautiously and firmly declined a general engagement. Cæsar held his course along the left bank of the Allier towards Gergovia, the enemy retreating with no less steadiness before him.<sup>1</sup> He arrived before the ramparts on the fifth day, but was foiled in his turn by finding on inspection that the place was too strong in situation and defences to be captured

<sup>1</sup> The site of Gergovia of the Arverni is supposed to be a hill on the bank of the Allier, two miles from the modern Clermont in Auvergne. The Romans seem to have neglected Gergovia, and to have founded the neighbouring city, to which they gave the name Augustonemetum. The Roman city became known afterwards as Civitas Arvernorum, in the middle ages Arverna, and then, from the situation of its castle, *clarus mons*, Clermont. See d'Anville, *Notice de la Gaule*, in *voc.*; Mannert, II. i. 131.

by assault. It was impossible to form a regular siege until the necessary provision for the troops had been collected and forwarded to the camp. He contented himself for the moment with a successful attack upon an important position in the neighbourhood, carrying it by a bold and skilful movement in the night.<sup>1</sup>

Meanwhile, Convictolitans, the vergobret of the Ædui, had resolved to betray the patron to whom he owed his appointment, and to precipitate his country into war with the Romans. He took his measures with Litavicus, the commander of the levies which his nation had consented to send to Cæsar, and planned a scheme for deceiving the soldiers, and hurrying the people blindly into revolt. In the midst of their march Litavicus suddenly caused his men to halt, and brought forward certain persons whom he had instructed to announce that the proconsul had just put his Æduan hostages to the sword, and reserved the same fate for the very troops who were at that moment marching into his toils.<sup>2</sup> The stratagem succeeded; the Æduans, seized with indignation, slew all the Romans within their reach, and Litavicus transmitted the news to Bibracte, with representations calculated to inflame the passions of the nation, and strengthen the hands of Convictolitans by committing it irrevocably to the Gaulish cause. A massacre of the Roman settlers ensued, as the ordinary preliminary of revolt. Meanwhile, the Æduans in the proconsul's camp, the same whom

The Ædual  
revolt, mas-  
sacre the  
Roman set-  
tlers, are  
reduced and  
pardoned.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 34—36.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 38. ; Dion. xl. 37.

CHAP.  
XII.

he was represented to have murdered, were contriving a plot for his destruction. The feebleness of one of the conspirators revealed the danger, and Cæsar marched forth with his usual decision to meet the troops of Litavicus, while they were still awaiting fresh orders from Bibracte. Instead of attacking and crushing them by force of arms, he showed them the persons of their countrymen, whose supposed assassination had excited them to revolt. Overwhelmed with surprize and terror, Litavicus threw himself on the proconsul's mercy. The soldiers disowned the authority of their general; the general disclaimed the acts of his government; every one hastened to plead for himself, and to make the most abject professions of obedience for the future.<sup>1</sup> With these professions Cæsar was forced to be content. The adherence of the Ædui was of too much importance to allow him to indulge in vengeance, or even in just retribution for the murder of his countrymen. He led back the contingent of Litavicus to his camp before Gergovia, where his presence was required to revive the courage of the division he had left behind, which had repelled one attack from Vercingetorix, and was in immediate apprehension of another.

Engage-  
ment before  
the walls of  
Gergovia;  
Cæsar de-  
feated.

It seemed, indeed, notwithstanding this success, that heavy clouds were gathering around Cæsar's position. He was aware that the Ædui still meditated defection, the more so, as they could not persuade themselves that he would persist in his clemency when the danger of the moment was passed. They held the key of the road which led

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. G. vii. 38—44.



to his legions at Agendicum, and the situation of his forces, thus separated by a wide tract of hostile country, was eminently precarious. He pressed forward to Gergovia ; but with no hope of forcing the Gaulish leader to a battle, or making any important impression upon the centre of the confederacy. He was only anxious to perform some creditable feat of arms, and then withdraw his forces northward without the appearance of a check.<sup>1</sup> Vercingetorix had posted his army midway on the declivity at the summit of which the city stood, and he had imitated so well the science of his enemies in surrounding his position with fortifications that he could not be compelled to fight. He had also taken possession of several elevated spots in the neighbourhood, from which he commanded the Roman camp in every direction. Frequent skirmishes took place between the cavalry on both sides ; and Cæsar gained a momentary advantage by deceiving the enemy with a feigned movement, and inveigling him to a distance from his encampment. The bulk of the Roman forces advanced boldly up the hill, penetrated the almost deserted lines, and found themselves, breathless and astonished at their success, beneath the walls of the town. The Gauls within were struck with panic at this sudden apparition. A cry arose among the unarmed population that the scenes of Avaricum were about to be repeated ; the women threw their ornaments and treasures over the walls ; some even leapt into the arms of the assailants, hoping to earn their mercy

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 44.



CHAP.  
XII.

by precipitate submission. Meanwhile, Cæsar, satisfied with the achievement of the day, gave the signal for retreat. He had no intention of making a serious attack upon Gergovia, which he could not hope to take, still less to keep if taken. But the ardour of his soldiers had led them too far; the hasty return of the Gaulish army placed them between two enemies. But for the prodigious exertions of the tenth legion, which, under Cæsar's immediate command, hung on the rear and flanks of Vercingetorix, they would have been crushed between the pressure of stone walls and overwhelming numbers. The struggle was long and dubious; the several divisions of both armies seemed inextricably entangled with one another; the unequal combat of horse with foot, of the light with the heavy-armed, of one above with another below, of one behind a wall or a hedge with another exposed and defenceless, all contributed to the uncertainty of the issue and rapid fluctuations of success. The Roman general was at last enabled to draw off his troops with ill-concealed precipitation. So great was their loss, so dire their discouragement that it was only to save the appearance of a rout that Cæsar postponed his retreat for two days. The Gauls abandoned themselves to the full intoxication of a success beyond their most sanguine hopes. Even the Roman writers enumerated this among the few instances in which their illustrious hero was worsted.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar himself passes it lightly

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 25.: "Per tot successus ter nec amplius adversum casum expertus: in Britannia classe vi tempestatis prope absumta; et in Gallia ad Gergoviam legione fusa; et in Germanorum finibus Titurio et Aurunculeio legatis per insidias cæsis."

over; nor certainly was his defeat of such extent or character as would have done him serious injury under other circumstances than those in which he actually stood.<sup>1</sup>

But the delay of only two days threw a serious obstacle in Cæsar's way. The Ædui, vacillating and inconstant, harassed as they were by the intrigues and solicitations of Convictolitans and Litavicus, yielded at once to their persuasions, on the news of their allies' disaster. Their previous indecision gave way to the most vehement activity. The enthusiasm of the people knew no bounds; they exhibited it by the sacrifice, not of such wretched villages or towns as the Bituriges had committed to the flames, but of Noviodunum itself, the second city in their rich and flourishing country, the mart of commerce, the centre of communications, the magazine and arsenal of the accursed Romans.<sup>2</sup> Their first act was to slaughter the Roman traders and sojourners in the city; they next demolished the bridge over the Loire, for which they knew Cæsar would make, and then consummated the awful catastrophe of patriotism and devotion. Cæsar meanwhile had broken up from before Gergovia. He crossed to the right bank of the Allier, entered the country of the Boii, only less exhausted and barren than that of the Bituriges on the left,

Cæsar retreats to his quarters in Belgium.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. vii. 52, 53. Dion (xl. 36.) takes the same view. Cæsar takes care to mention that he gained the advantage in two cavalry skirmishes before he abandoned his quarters. On the other hand, Orosius says that he lost a large part of his army, which was certainly not the case. Oros. vi. 11. This author, however, is very ill-informed. He confounds Genabum with Avaricum, and Gergovia with Alesia. Florus (iii. 10.) makes the same mistake.

<sup>2</sup> Noviodunum, the modern Nevers.

CHAP  
XII.

---

and traversed the strip of land which separates the parallel channels of the Allier and Loire. He arrived in front of Noviodunum in time to hear the last crash of the sinking bridge, and see the devouring flames rise triumphantly beyond it. His army was exhausted by its rapid march; it was straitened for supplies; the waters of the rivers were swollen with the first melting of the snows, and the ordinary fords had become impassable. Before him lay a powerful people, long ripening, as he knew, for rebellion, the first signal of whose avowed defection he beheld in the flaming masses before him. The alternative of turning southward and retreating into the Province was opposed by many considerations. The roads were difficult, and the passage of the Cevennes would cost much time; moreover, besides the disgrace of thus skulking from the enemy, it would leave Labienus in a position of extreme peril. In this emergency he did not hesitate for a moment. To consume a single day in building a bridge would have been a fatal delay. But a spot was discovered where the Loire could be forded by wading to the armpits; the soldiers could carry their weapons above their heads. The stream was strong and rapid, but the cavalry were ranged above, and broke the current for the infantry below. If the Ædui had made the best of the occasion, they might have defended the bank of the river against the Romans with great advantage. But Cæsar carried every thing before him by the terror of his name. He now supplied himself with provisions in the neighbourhood of Noviodunum, and thence continued his



march unmolested until he effected his junction with his lieutenant, who came forth, at his summons, from Agendicum to meet him.<sup>1</sup>

This well-combined operation revived the drooping spirits of the Roman legions. The forces of Labienus had engaged in a campaign against the Parisii and some neighbouring states, in which their success had at first been dubious. The growing enthusiasm of the Gauls was constantly pouring fresh hosts into the field; almost every day brought the news of further defections. The issue of the siege of Gergovia was rapidly communicated to the tribes in the north. The revolt of the Ædui was made known to them at the same moment. It was generally believed that the baffled invader had turned his back upon Gaul, and was hastening to seek an asylum in the Province. This accumulation of successes had inspired the opponents of Labienus with overweening presumption. They had no leader of consummate caution and experience, like Vercingetorix, to head them; their king Camologenus was unable to control their anxiety for instant battle. Once more engaged man to man in the open field, the Romans gained a complete victory, and this triumph counterbalanced in their minds all the disasters of the campaign hitherto.<sup>2</sup> Labienus could now receive his general with troops elated with victory and flushed with plunder, in quarters abounding with

Successful  
operations  
of Labienus.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 55, 56. Agendicum is generally supposed to be the modern Sens. See d'Anville, Mannert, Walckenaer. An essay in the *Mém. Soc. Antiq. de France* (ii. 397.), maintains the opinion of the earlier critics in favour of Provins.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 57—62.



CHAP.  
XII.

stores and provisions, and in the centre of a tract of country where the hydra of revolt lay stunned and prostrate. Perhaps it was from that moment that the lieutenant began to measure himself with his general, and to murmur secretly at standing second to a leader whose disgrace he boasted of having turned into a triumph.

Great preparations on both sides.

The tranquillity thus temporarily restored in the north afforded indeed a respite of great importance to the proconsul's plans. He had assembled all his ten legions, nor had their complements been much diminished by the checks which they had hitherto sustained. But his cavalry had suffered very severely, and he was precluded from the possibility of drawing recruits from the Province. He turned his eyes towards Germany, and the promise of pay and booty allured to his standard several bands of horse, together with the light-armed runners, who were accustomed to combat by their side. But the horses of the Germans were unequal to those of Gaul, and Cæsar did not hesitate to dismount himself and his officers to furnish them with chargers of better quality.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, the confederates received the Æduans into their alliance with open arms. Whatever distrust they might be disposed to entertain towards a people who had betrayed their countrymen in the first instance, and deceived them more than once since, every suspicion must vanish before such devotion to the cause as that which all their public acts now displayed. They had surrendered their ancient claim to precedence among the Gaulish states, and re-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 66.

linquished the command of the combined armies to the brave Arvernian. Having seized at Noviodunum the Gaulish hostages whom Cæsar kept there in honourable custody, they made use of them to confirm the fidelity of some tribes, and to stimulate the sluggishness of others. So successfully did they wield this instrument of coercion, that when the general assembly met at Bibracte, there were only three states, it was said, from whom no deputies arrived. These were the Remi, the Lingones, and the Treviri: the first had been uniformly devoted to Rome; the second were controlled by the presence or proximity of the Roman armies; the third had suffered severely in previous struggles, and as they had been left to defend themselves without assistance from the states of Southern Gaul, so they did not now choose to form a combination with them.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar retreats from Belgium towards the Province.

While Vercingetorix was preparing to march in quest of Cæsar with an overwhelming force, he did not neglect ulterior measures. He sent a division of his troops to organize a diversion against the Romans in the Narbonensis, by a combination of force and intrigue. With the Allobroges he adopted a similar course; though he could not persuade them to unite their arms with his, they took measures to defend the points at which the upper Rhone could be crossed, so as to anticipate any attempt the proconsul might make to regain the Province in that direction.<sup>2</sup> They rightly conjectured the plan which Cæsar's necessities would cause him to adopt. It was impossible for him to

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 64.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 65.

CHAP.  
XII.

remain in his actual position, having lost all communication with the South: but his united forces were formidable, from their numbers as well as their valour, and he might presume on cutting his way to the Province through all opposition. What were his ulterior views he gives us no intimation; but he left no troops in garrison behind him; nothing but the terror of his name and the deep discouragement inflicted by so many triumphant campaigns. He conducted his march without hurry or confusion, and seemed to court rather than avoid the attack of the enemy. But he abandoned the direct route through the territory of the Ædui, and repaired to the left bank of the Saone, expecting perhaps to experience from the Sequani less organized and effective resistance.

A great battle ensues; personal danger of Caesar.

Vercingetorix came up with the Roman army in the high country of the upper Saone; but, adhering still to his old tactics, delayed an engagement. For some days he followed its movements at a short distance; possibly, he distrusted the power of the Allobroges to check it on the Rhone; possibly the ardour of the Gallic chieftains was too impetuous to be withstood. In an evil hour, trembling lest his enemy should at length escape him, he, too, was carried away by the vain confidence of the national character, and gave the signal for battle.<sup>1</sup> Never, indeed, was the chivalrous spirit of a gallant people more thoroughly awakened. The chiefs engaged themselves by mutual oaths not to return from the field till they had twice ridden through the enemy's ranks. Cavalry was the force

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 67.



in which the Romans were most deficient, and in which the Gauls most boasted of their strength; for their horsemen belonged to the class of the rich and noble, better armed and equipped, and inspired with a more martial spirit than the multitudes which followed them to the field on foot. Cæsar, always found at the point where the danger was greatest, was this day engaged with the cavalry, as in his great battle with the Nervians he had done the duty of a legionary. At one moment he was so nearly captured, that his sword was wrested from him, and remained in the hands of his enemies.<sup>1</sup> The Arvernians caused it to be suspended in one of their temples, and of all military trophies this assuredly was the noblest.

The Gauls  
are defeated.

The steady Roman and the impetuous Gaul were well matched in the desperate struggle of that day. At length a dexterous movement of the German squadrons checked the hot onset of the Gaulish horse, and gave the legionaries room to open their lines and charge in their turn. The unwieldy masses of the barbarian infantry had not yet learnt to face this formidable shock. The men, hastily imagining that they were outflanked, lost their presence of mind, broke their ranks, and fled precipitately. Their careful leader had provided a retreat for them in three camps which he had fortified in the rear. The Gauls rallied, but it was only for a moment; many of their principal chieftains had been slain or taken; the panic became more than ever irretrievable; and Vercingetorix was compelled to abandon the defence of his

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 26.



CHAP.  
XII.

position, and guide the flying multitudes to the neighbouring city of Alesia. Here, besides the enclosure of the place itself, situated on the level summit of a high escarped hill, a large camp had also been constructed and fortified with every appliance of art for the reception of eighty thousand men.<sup>1</sup>

Bold resolution of Cæsar to attack the Gauls in their fortified camp at Alesia.

Thus failed the rash attempt to bring the retreating lion to bay. But even though the battle was lost, the cause might have been maintained by recurrence to the harassing system in which the Gauls had hitherto, with one exception, so steadfastly persevered. If their vast forces had been dispersed or drawn out of Cæsar's immediate reach, and the country wasted around him, he would not, we may presume, have ventured to protract an indecisive warfare under pressure of the circumstances which urged him to seek the Roman frontiers. The victory he had gained would in that case have been destitute of any decisive result. But the fatal mistake of assembling the whole Gaulish army in one spot, and there tying it, as it were, to the stake, offered an opportunity to his energetic spirit which he was not the man to forego. We can hardly imagine a bolder stroke of military genius than Cæsar's now halting on his retreat, and turning once more upon the foe, who had thus offered another chance of terminating the struggle by a single blow. At this moment Cæsar risked every thing; all the plans of conquest which he had established and matured in Gaul; all the schemes of ulterior aggrandizement over

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 69.

which he had so long brooded ; his life, his reputation, all were hazarded at this eventful crisis. For if he now escaped into the Province, he might hope to organize a future invasion ; another series of campaigns might restore him to that supremacy which he had just forfeited beyond the Rhone ; or he might leave the unfinished task to a successor, and hasten himself to retrieve his fortunes by some popular act of audacity in Rome. But he saw the whole flower and strength of Gaul self-cooped in a single encampment, and determined to abide his attack. He had thoroughly calculated his own strength. He was at the head of a larger force than he had ever mustered before ; and he collected his energies for one decisive struggle, with just confidence in a crowning success.

The preparations which Cæsar made to carry out his resolve were on a scale proportioned to its grandeur. He formed a line of circumvallation round the whole of the enemy's works, thus blockading in one sweep both the camp and the city, an army of eighty thousand men, and the population of the place swelled with an innumerable crowd of fugitives. The exultation they had felt at their late triumphs, and their indignation at their recent reverses ; the taste of blood they had obtained in the massacres of Genabum and Avaricum ; their horror at the slaughter of their countrymen at Noviodunum and Bibracte ; all they had done and all they had suffered, had combined to harden the minds of the legionaries, and divest both men and officers of the common feelings of humanity. The Gauls, too, had had their moments

He forms a  
blockade :  
exaspera-  
tion of both  
armies.

CHAP.  
XII.

---

of triumph and exasperation, of vengeance and despair; the same causes had produced on them no less frightful effects; the nerves of both parties were strung to the uttermost, and both were equally prepared for every extreme of infliction or endurance.

The Romans successful in a cavalry skirmish: they pass the blockade: desperation of the Gauls.

If it was with these feelings that the two armies faced each other from behind their breastworks, the events of the siege daily added to them fresh bitterness. Vercingetorix, discovering the fault he had committed, made an attempt to break the Roman lines by means of his cavalry. But here again the Germans turned the fortune of the day, and the Gauls, beaten back with loss into their entrenchments, suffered sore discouragement. Their leader felt increasing alarm. He knew how rapid must be the progress of scarcity in such a host as was cooped up with him, which he dared not again lead forth to combat. He dismissed a great part of his horse, with the commission to scour the country far and near, and summon tribes and cities to his assistance. But this could not be done effectively in the short period during which he might hope to maintain his post; as the operations of the enemy were pressed more resolutely and decisively, it became necessary to repel the approach of famine by extraordinary measures. The Gaulish chieftains were animated with the most desperate resolution; it was deliberately proposed to sanction the killing and eating of human bodies. For the present, indeed, this horrible counsel was rejected. But another alternative, hardly less shocking, was adopted: all the non-military popu-



lation which had crowded within the lines, the women and children, the sick and the aged, were expelled from the city and the entrenchments. The Roman general was unrelenting; he too was steelled in this last struggle against every ordinary feeling of humanity, and he ordered the helpless multitude to be driven back upon their countrymen with showers of stones and darts. Between the trenches of their friends and the bristling ranks of their enemies, the miserable victims perished by wounds or hunger.<sup>1</sup>

The Roman general, apprehending the arrival of the enemy's succours, had not only completed a line of circumvallation in front of the Gaulish fortifications, but had strongly entrenched himself in the rear also. The confederate states had hastened to send reinforcements to Vercingetorix; they had not waited for the tardy result of a general levy, which it would have required time to arm and equip, but had furnished each a contingent as far as their means allowed them. A numerous army was thus speedily collected round the circuit of the Roman entrenchments, and a ray of hope gleamed upon the ramparts of Alesia, when the signal was given for a simultaneous advance upon the invaders both from within and from without their lines. The Romans had furnished their fortifications with every implement of defence, in which art they were not less skilful than in that of attack. Pressed as they were by a great superiority of numbers, and scattered themselves along lines of immense extent, their activity and science supplied every de-

The Romans are attacked by a Gaulish army in the rear, but repulse and disperse them.

<sup>1</sup> CÆS. *B. G.* vii. 78.



CHAP.  
XII.

ficiency; and, though the danger was imminent, they eventually succeeded in repelling every assault. The conflict indeed was repeated from day to day, but always with the same result. The assailants from within, animated by despair, renewed the attack with unabated vigour; but those without, whether worse armed or led by less experienced generals, or unnerved by the means of escape always open to them, gave way before the sallies of the besieged Romans, and at last broke up their camp and retreated in disorder.

Vercingetorix offers to devote himself for his country.

The result of the original blockade was now inevitable. It could only remain a question with the Gauls, whether they should die with arms in their hands, or yield themselves to the vengeance of the exasperated enemy. Then at last did Vercingetorix come forward and offer to give himself up as a ransom for the blood of the Gaulish nation. If conquered in the open field, no terms, he knew, would be granted to the combatants or their country; but if they capitulated, even at the last moment, some conditions might, perhaps, be extorted from the prudence, if not the clemency, of the conqueror. The wrath of the proconsul might, he hoped, be appeased by a splendid sacrifice. This indeed had not been a contest between rival nations; according to the maxims of the republic the confederation of Gaul was a rebellious conspiracy. Vercingetorix himself had at one time cringed under the power of the intruding government; he was known personally to Cæsar; he had received favours from him; and he was marked out for signal vengeance for what was denominated his

treason, not less than for his bitter hostility to Rome. The ancient superstition of many nations declared that the self-devotion of the chief is accepted by the Gods as an atonement for the people; and Vercingetorix, who had been the principal instigator as well as the most conspicuous leader of the revolt, now claimed the honour of being its last victim.

The Gauls were touched with their hero's generosity. Before accepting his magnanimous offer they sent a deputation to Cæsar to negotiate the terms of a capitulation. The answer was stern and ominous. It demanded the surrender of their chiefs, the delivery of their arms, the submission of the whole multitude to the discretion of the Roman general. Vercingetorix, with all the gallant gaiety of his nation, clad himself in his most splendid armour, and mounted his noblest charger. Cæsar had drawn up his troops in front of the lines, and had seated himself to receive his captives. The Gaul caused the gates of his encampment to be thrown wide, and galloped forth into the open space, in the attitude of a warrior charging. Having approached close to the proconsul's chair, he dexterously wheeled round, and again returning to the same spot sprang to the ground, and laid his arms at the feet of the conqueror. The army was touched with a sense of admiration akin to compassion, but Cæsar himself remained cold and unmoved.<sup>1</sup>

He surrenders himself to Cæsar.

The Roman general had now broken the neck of resistance. Whatever further delay there might

Harshness of Cæsar, and cruel

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. G.* vii. 89.; Dion. xl. 41.; Plut. *Cæs.* 41.; Flor. iii. 10.

CHAP  
XII.

---

 fate of Ver-  
cingetorix.

be in the complete pacification of Gaul, a judicious mixture of forbearance and severity would disarm it of all danger. It was his habit to calculate every movement, nor at this crisis of his fortunes did he allow himself to yield to any impulse of impolitic magnanimity. To gratify the Roman populace he reserved the champion of Gaul to grace his future triumph. To appease the cupidity of his soldiers he allotted to each of them one of his captives as a slave. All the Arvernians and Æduans among them he liberated, with the view of winning back their countrymen to their former state of submission. We read of no punishment being inflicted upon the other Gaulish chieftains, and we may hope that an occasion which casts a deep shade upon Cæsar's character for generosity did not at least tarnish it with the stain of vindictiveness. Nevertheless, the worst remains to be told. At the spot where the triumphal car turned to the left to commence the winding ascent of the Capitoline hill, another path led in a contrary direction to the state prison in the rock. The noble captives who had thus far followed the wheels of the conqueror were here removed from the procession, and put to death in the fatal dungeon at the same moment that he entered the temple of Jupiter. Such had been the custom of the republic from the times of its original barbarism; hallowed by antiquity and perhaps by superstition, the progress of refinement had not availed to soften it; and thus the brave Vercingetorix ultimately suffered death, after six years of confinement.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 41.: ἀλλ' ἐν θύῃς ἐν δεσμοῖς ἔδησε, καὶ ἐς τὰ ἐπινίκια μετὰ



The lenient policy which the proconsul now adopted towards the Arvernians and the Æduans seems to have been eminently successful. The governing class in both these states had in fact been driven into the war against their own inclination; the elevation of Vercingetorix to supreme command had been a source of much bitter jealousy to the chieftains in both tribes, and they submitted again to the Roman yoke quietly, perhaps even gratefully. The spirit of resistance, however, was not quelled in other parts of Gaul. For the most part, indeed, the better organized governments declined a hopeless and ruinous struggle; but wherever the influence of any single chief was pre-eminent, or where, as among the Carnutes, the authority of the Druids was all-powerful, the smouldering flames found fuel among a restless and harassed population, and new armies continued to spring up in inexhaustible abundance. From the absence of a presiding spirit, they relapsed indeed into the same want of unity and concert which had paralysed their early efforts at defence.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar

CHAP.  
XII.

Further disturbances  
in parts of  
Gaul,  
A. U. 703.  
A. C. 51.  
Cæsar's  
eighth and  
last cam-  
paign.

τοῦτο πέμψας ἀπέκτεινε. In the same manner C. Pontius, the Samnite general, was sacrificed at the triumph of Q. Fabius Gurges, A. U. 464. Jugurtha was cast into prison and starved to death, A. U. 650. But Perseus and other conquered enemies were released. Compare Cicero (ii. in *Verr.* v. 30.): "At etiam qui triumphant eoque diutius vivos hostium duces servant, ut his per triumphum ductis pulcherrimum spectaculum fructumque victoriæ populus Romanus percipere possit; tamen quum de foro in Capitolium currum flectere incipiunt, illos duci in carcerem iubent; idemque dies et victoribus imperii et victis vitæ finem facit." It should be remarked, however, that Dion Cassius is the only authority for this fact, and that his charges of cruelty against Cæsar, where he can be confronted with the statements of others, are frequently disproved.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 1. In the eighth book of the Commentaries on



CHAP.  
XII.

flew from state to state with the extraordinary activity which always distinguished him. He crushed the Bituriges by an incursion into their territory in the depth of winter.<sup>1</sup> No sooner had he regained his quarters, than he rushed forth again upon the Carnutes, scattered all opposition, and drove the disaffected beyond their own frontiers to take refuge under the standards of the Belgians.<sup>2</sup>

Cæsar defeats and accepts the submission of the Bellovaci.

It was indeed in this quarter of Gaul, which had taken less part in the exhausting campaigns of the last two years, that the resistance to the Romans was most organized and effective. On the one hand, the Bellovaci and Suessiones combined together, and having no fortified towns to tempt them to defy the military science of their enemy, assembled in vast numbers in a position of peculiar natural strength, a hill enclosed in thick forests, and surrounded by impassable swamps. On the other, the Treviri, always proud to stand alone, defied the foreigner to set foot in their territory. Cæsar undertook the reduction of the first of these oppo-

the Gallic war we have no longer Cæsar himself as our guide. Suetonius attributes it to one of his officers, Aulus Hirtius (*Jul.* 56.). The style is formed on the model of Cæsar's, but is inferior to it both in elegance and clearness. But, like the preceding books, it is the work of an eyewitness, and seems to be equally trustworthy. In this place the author gives as a reason for the desultory warfare into which the Gauls relapsed after the loss of Vercingetorix, their despair of overthrowing the enemy in a general engagement, and their hope of wearing out his troops by attacking them in detail. It is more probable that the loss of the only leader who had ever succeeded in uniting them in a common enterprize was irreparable.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 2. He began his march the last day of the year 702: "Pridie Kal. Jan. ab oppido Bibracte proficiscitur."

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 3—6.

nents, and deputed to Labienus that of the second. He threw causeways across the swamps, drew long lines of entrenchment before the face of the enemy, drove them from one position to another to avoid his circumvallations and the fate of the victims of Alesia, and at last compelled them to join in a general combat, the crisis by which every Gaulish campaign was finally decided. Thoroughly beaten and routed, with the loss of Correus, their king, and a vast number of their fighting population, the Bellovaci hastened to excuse their revolt, under the plea that the senate could not resist the influence which their sovereign possessed with the multitude. This excuse was probably not altogether false; but it suited Cæsar to rebuke it sternly, at the same time that he made a show of clemency, by sparing the nation which he had so effectually humbled.<sup>1</sup>

Nor had Labienus in the meantime been less successful in defeating the forces of the Treviri<sup>2</sup>; so that the campaign in Belgium was speedily reduced to the irregular warfare for which the country was so well adapted. Commius, the Atrebate, at the head of a band of German cavalry, whom he maintained by the plunder of Roman convoys or stations, was constantly flitting from place to place. Ambiorix continued to stimulate the zeal of the small remnant of the Eburones, till they were finally exterminated by a second massacre. In the west of Gaul, amidst loud notes of preparation for a general rising against the Romans, an important diversion was made in their favour

The Treviri and Eburones again put down: a revolt of the Pictones quelled.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. B. G. viii. 6—22.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. B. G. viii. 25.

CHAP.  
XII.

by the adhesion to them of Duratius, one of the principal chiefs of the Pictones.<sup>1</sup> He seized and occupied Lemonum, the capital of their country, and, by so doing, kept both the Andi and the Armoricans in check. The neighbouring tribes assembled in great force to reduce him by a siege; all the troops the Romans could spare were sent to his assistance; and the result of a great battle, fought on the banks of the Loire, was the total rout of the confederate army, and the final discouragement of their hopes.

Reduction  
of Uxello-  
dunum, the  
last Gaulish  
stronghold.

Upon the dispersion of this multitude, a small band once more rallied under the standard of a chieftain named Drappes.<sup>2</sup> The Romans branded them as a handful of robbers, fugitives, and slaves, united only by the hope of plunder, and unworthy of the common rights of war. This little troop crossed the country hastily to the southward, under the auspices of Lucterius, the Cadurcan, an unwearied enemy of Rome. They were well received by his countrymen, and prepared to make a bold attack on the north-western frontier of the Province, in expectation of sympathy and aid, especially from Aquitania. But the speedy arrival of two legions in pursuit forced them to abandon this bold enterprize, and to shut themselves up in the strong fortress of Uxellodunum.<sup>3</sup> Here they made a desperate resistance; Cæsar himself hastened from the North to conduct the siege, the last important operation that now remained to be performed; and

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 26.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 30.

<sup>3</sup> Uxellodunum, le Puy or Puech d'Usolle in the Quercy, département du Lot. Thierry, *Gaulois*, iii. 195.; d'Anville.



with the reduction of this stronghold, the conquest of Gaul may be said to have been completed.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
XII.

Cæsar treats  
the enemy  
with severe-  
rity. Final  
pacification  
of Gaul.

The proconsul, whose policy it now became to soothe by forbearance the passions of the chieftains and regularly organized states of Gaul, made a severe example of the unfortunate rabble whom he captured in Uxellodunum. He did not put them to death, nor sell them into slavery; in either case their persons would vanish from the sight of their countrymen, and their example be speedily forgotten. As a more permanent memorial of their crimes, and the condign judgment by which they had been overtaken, he cut off their right hands, and threw them thus mutilated upon the compassion of their neighbours. Gutruatus, a rebellious chieftain among the Carnutes, he sacrificed to the importunate demands of his soldiers. In making these severe examples, remarks his historian, he well knew his own reputation for clemency, and was satisfied that no one would suspect him of personal cruelty.<sup>2</sup> Commius, the champion of the Atrebatæ, whose romantic adventures invest him with a greater interest than most of his fellow-chieftains, was allowed to surrender himself upon honourable terms. Labienus had acted towards him with signal perfidy. Pretending that the repeated rebellion of the Gaulish chieftain justified any act of treachery on the part of his enemies, he had sent Volusenus to meet him in an amicable

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 43.; Plut. *Cæs.* 75.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 38. 44.: "Cæsar quum suam lenitatem cognitam omnibus sciret, neque vereretur, ne quid crudelitate naturæ videretur asperius fecisse," &c.



CHAP.  
XII.

conference, and to seize the opportunity of assassinating him.<sup>1</sup> Struck on the head and almost stunned, the Gaul was saved by the promptitude of his attendants. Half through apprehension and half through indignation, he never ceased to regard the Romans with peculiar horror, and determined never again to meet one on terms of peace. The same Volusenus was afterwards employed to pursue the Atrebate from fastness to fastness: the excitement of the chase was added to the bitterness of their mutual hatred. Commius, constantly reduced to the utmost straits, still succeeded in eluding his pursuer; but Volusenus at length approached his prey incautiously; the hunted chieftain turned at bay, and pierced his enemy through the thigh.<sup>2</sup> M. Antonius, who was now commanding in Belgium, was anxious to bring these hostilities to an end; and, both parties being equally tired of the unprofitable contest, overtures of reconciliation were made and accepted, Commius only stipulating that, in the amicable arrangement of the conditions, he should never be personally brought into the presence of a Roman.<sup>3</sup>

Pictures  
from the  
ancient  
writers of  
the state to  
which Gaul  
was re-  
duced.

The last book of the Commentaries on the Gallic war is supplied by the hand of one of the proconsul's officers; nor is it likely, from the character of the record which Cæsar himself has left, that if he had completed the work with his own hand, he would have chosen to gratify our curiosity with any general delineation of the state of the province at the conclusion of his eight years' labour. A writer of a much later age has thought fit to embellish a feeble

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 23.    <sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 48.    <sup>3</sup> Auct. *B. G.* l. c.

narrative with a picture which might have struck our imagination more had the colours been less elaborate. "Let the reader conceive," says Orosius<sup>1</sup>, "the languid and bloodless figure of Gaul, just escaped from a burning fever and inflammation of her vital parts; let him remark how thin and pale she is, how helpless and nerveless she lies; how she fears even to move a limb lest she should bring on a worse relapse; for the Roman army rushed upon her as a plague stronger than the strongest patient, which rages the more, the more resistance it encounters. The thirst that consumed her was her impatience at the demand for pledges of her perpetual servitude; liberty was the sweet cold draught for which she burned; she raved for the waters which were stolen from her." Or let him turn to a passage of a very different character, the cold and dry enumeration of Plutarch, which seems to bear the impress of the very words of Cæsar himself<sup>2</sup>: "He took more than eight hundred cities by storm, worsted three hundred nations, and encountered, at different times, three millions of enemies, of whom he slew one million in action, and made prisoners of an equal number." Whichever of these two records be thought the most impressive, the reader will feel that enough has been said to account for the long prostration of the energies of Gaul from this time forward, and for the almost passive endurance with which it submitted to the establishment and development of the provincial administration.

<sup>1</sup> Oros. vi. 12.; comp. Thierry, *Gaulois*, iii. 206.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 15.

## CHAP. XIII.

POMPEIUS, AS SOLE CONSUL, UNDERTAKES THE REFORM OF ABUSES: HIS ILL SUCCESS: HE CONNECTS HIMSELF AGAIN WITH THE OLIGARCHY BY ESPOUSING THE DAUGHTER OF SCIPIO.—CÆSAR INTRIGUES TO OBTAIN THE CONSULSHIP BEFORE RELINQUISHING HIS PROVINCE.—CICERO ACCEPTS THE GOVERNMENT OF CILICIA: HIS CIVIL AND MILITARY ADMINISTRATION.—THE NOBLES SEEK TO DEPRIVE CÆSAR OF HIS COMMAND.—M. MARCELLUS INSULTS HIM BY THE HARSH PUNISHMENT OF A TRANSPADANE GAUL.—POMPEIUS FALLS SICK.—REJOICINGS FOR HIS RECOVERY.—CÆSAR CONCILIATES THE GAULS.—STRENGTH AND COMPOSITION OF HIS ARMY: HIS POPULARITY WITH THE SOLDIERS.—CHARACTER OF THE YOUNGER CURIO: HIS DEVOTION TO CÆSAR'S INTERESTS.—CÆSAR RECEIVED WITH ACCLAMATIONS IN CIS-ALPINE GAUL.—HE FIXES HIS QUARTERS AT RAVENNA.—HE OFFERS A COMPROMISE WITH THE SENATE, WHICH IT REFUSES, AND REQUIRES HIM TO RESIGN HIS COMMAND.—THE TRIBUNES INTERPOSE, ARE MENACED WITH VIOLENCE, AND THEREUPON FLY TO CÆSAR'S CAMP.—A.U. 702—704. B.C. 52—50.

CHAP.  
XIII.

---

Comparison  
of Pompeius  
and Sulla.

WHEN Pompeius entered upon his office as sole consul, he submitted his reputation as a statesman to a crowning trial. His position was in substance that of a dictator, but without the odium of the name. But, in return for the irresponsible power which formed the peculiar feature of this extraordinary charge, no less was expected from him than to direct the stream of public affairs back into the old channels which it had deserted, to repair the youth and vigour of a decaying commonwealth, and to restore the spirit of a constitution which



seemed only to survive in forms and traditions. The work of Sulla was the model which the nobles thrust under his eyes, still cherishing the vain hope that he possessed the genius no less than the desire to restore an oligarchical supremacy which the march of events had rendered impossible. But if the champion they had summoned to their side was ambitious of wielding the power of his early patron, his motives were merely personal and selfish. The dictator, indeed, had thrown himself in implicit faith upon the principles of his faction. The ascendancy of his class was the object to which his career was devoted; he was no less ready to become the martyr than the champion of his political creed. As the spirit of the two men differed, so did the comprehensiveness of their views, and the vigour of their execution. If Sulla was blinded by his original prejudices to the real evils of his times and their true remedies, he at least felt and acknowledged the responsibility which he assumed. He placed his object steadily before him, and cut out a complete constitution, such as it was, with two or three rough strokes of the chisel. It was the work of a master, complete, consistent, fulfilling its idea. But Pompeius, on the contrary, was satisfied with the tentative palliation of a few prominent abuses; he probed nothing to the bottom; he removed some scandals for the moment, but made no attempt to reach the sources of evil. In one respect only the dictator and the sole consul acted alike; neither the one nor the other submitted to the trammels to which they had subjected their countrymen. Sulla, in his zeal for

CHAP.  
XIII.

social reformation, had enacted new and severe laws against violence, immorality, and extravagance; but in his own person he was notorious for the indulgence of prodigal tastes and licentious passions.<sup>1</sup> The correctives which Pompeius applied to social abuses were subtler in their character; but he, too, scrupulous as he was in all matters of public decorum, could not restrain himself from the violation of his own laws for transient political purposes.<sup>2</sup>

Reforms  
introduced  
by Pom-  
peius.

The methods which the consul devised to protect the political tribunals from undue influence were frivolous in the extreme. The selection which he is said to have made from the three privileged orders of the persons who might be chosen by lot to exercise the functions of judges may have purified the bench from the neediest and most openly profligate of its members; but the vices of venality and partiality were common to the noblest and the most abject, and it was not by merely removing the scum from the surface that the fountains of justice could be really cleansed. The limitation of the number of advocates, and the restriction of the speech of the accuser to two and of the defendant to three hours, were trifling reforms in procedure; but the latter at least de-

<sup>1</sup> Duruy, *Hist. des Rom.* ii. 297.

<sup>2</sup> Tac. *Ann.* iii. 28.: "Tum Cn. Pompeius tertium consul, corrigendis moribus delectus, et gravior remediis quam delicta erant, suarumque legum auctor idem atque subversor, quæ armis tuebatur armis amisit." It is curious to observe the aristocrat of so late an age still clinging to the conviction that the evils of the times were not so great as Pompeius chose to represent them, and that he betrayed his party by the extent to which he carried his reforms.

serves notice from the importance subsequently attached to it as forming an epoch in the eloquence of the bar<sup>1</sup>; and it may undoubtedly be regarded as a symptom of the desire of wise and thoughtful men to diminish the undue weight of rhetorical appeals to the passions. It had moreover been a common artifice to overawe the judges by bringing forward the testimonies and protestations of distinguished men in favour of the accused. A letter of Cæsar or Pompeius expressing his regard for the culprit, his assurance of his innocence and wishes for his success, might be read in open court with no little effect upon the interested parties in whose hands the decision lay.<sup>2</sup> This was another instrument in the machinery of corruption which the consul considered a fitting object of his specious reforms. But trifling as these matters were in themselves, they

<sup>1</sup> Auctor *de Caus. Corr. Elog.* 38. Cicero himself seems to have thought the restriction reasonable and convenient (*Brut.* 94.).

<sup>2</sup> Asconius in his Commentary on Cicero's pleading for Scaurus (A.U. 700) cites, apparently from the documents of the trial, the names of the personages who used their influence in this way: "Laudaverunt Scaurum consulares novem, L. Piso, L. Volcatius, Q. Metellus Nepos, M. Perperna, L. Philippus, M. Cicero, Q. Hortensius, P. Servilius Isauricus pater, Cn. Pompeius Magnus. Horum magna pars per tabellas laudaverunt, qui aberant, inter quos Pompeius quoque; nam quod erat pro consule, extra urbem morabatur. Unus præterea adolescens laudavit, frater ejus, Faustus Cornelius, Sullæ filius. Is in laudatione multa humiliter et cum lacrymis locutus non minus audientes permovit, quam Scaurus ipse permoverat. Ad genua iudicum, cum sententiæ ferrentur, bifariam se diviserunt qui pro eo rogabant: ab uno latere Scaurus ipse, et M'. Glabrio, sororis filius, et Paulus, et P. Lentulus, Lentuli Nigri Flaminis filius, et L. Æmilius Buca filius et C. Memmius, Fausta natus, supplicaverunt; ex altera parte Sulla Faustus frater Scauri, et T. Annius Milo, et T. Peducæus, et C. Cato, et M. Octavius Lenas Curtianus."



CHAP.  
XIII.

combined to assist in breaking down the rude independence of the judicial system, in which the judges and the advocates had played into each other's hands, in defiance both of the government and of popular clamour. Notwithstanding the partial reforms which had been effected since the time of Sulla, the *questiones perpetuæ* were still the stronghold of aristocratic monopoly. Every attempt, however superficial, to amend them, contributed to reveal the unfairness of their operation. Degraded in the public estimation, they lost their ancient hold on the feelings of the citizens, and the intrusion of armed soldiers at Milo's trial, though adapted only to the convenience of the moment, and with no ulterior designs, was in fact a significant intimation that the ascendancy of the nobles had fallen for ever under the military domination of generals and dictators.

His conduct  
at the head  
of affairs.

It is not to be supposed that Pompeius was acting in these proceedings with far-sighted treachery towards the party with whose interests he had connected himself. He considered his own exalted position to rest mainly upon public opinion, and, in the discharge of his functions as state reformer, his object was to maintain the influence of the senate, as the inveterate enemy of his own rival Cæsar, just so far as he could do so without sacrificing his own popularity. He would have been content with the praise due to the specious palliatives which he had devised for long-condemned abuses, and neither aspired nor expected to lay the foundations of a new political system. He persuaded his friends that the desertion of Milo, of

whose popularity with his party and unreserved devotion to them he was jealous, was a necessary sacrifice to appearances.<sup>1</sup> But having made this specious concession to the demands of outraged law, the consul was anxious to exhibit the impartiality of his justice, and now encouraged proceedings against the friends of Clodius who were implicated in the disturbance.<sup>2</sup> Even among the nobles indeed Milo had made many enemies; the historian Sallustius resented a private affront, and had been one of the loudest in clamouring for his condemnation.<sup>3</sup> He had kept clear, however, of any act which could involve him in the guilt of sedition. Sextus Clodius, less prudent or less fortunate, was accused and condemned for the breach of the public peace; and, as soon as their year of office expired, the tribunes Pompeius Rufus and Munatius Plancus, both highly connected and adherents of the senate, were brought nevertheless to the bar of justice. The reformer took no step to avert the punishment of the first of these; but for the other he condescended to write a letter to be read before the judges, thus using his influence precisely in the way which his own enactments expressly forbade.<sup>4</sup> This indecorous proceeding gave deep offence. It was a manifest breach of the law as well as a gross

<sup>1</sup> Pompeius pretended to believe that Milo had plotted against his life. Ascon. in *Milon*. 67.; Vell. ii. 47.: "Milonem reum non magis invidia facti quam Pompeii damnavit voluntas."

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xl. 55.: διὰ τὴν τοῦ βουλευτηρίου ἐμπρησιν.

<sup>3</sup> Ascon. in *Milon*. Gellius (xvii. 18.), on the authority of Varro, tells the story of Sallustius having been discovered by Milo in adultery with his wife, and severely chastised.

<sup>4</sup> Dion. xl. 52. 55.; Plut. *Pomp*. 55.

CHAP.  
XIII.

act of partiality. Cato denounced it with all the weight of his blameless reputation.<sup>1</sup> The accused thereupon excepted against him as one of his judges; but though his challenge was admitted, he was notwithstanding condemned by a majority of voices. In this suddenly awakened zeal for purity and fair play, the criminals who excepted against Cato were generally condemned, so strong a presumption of guilt did it seem to shrink from the sentence of a judge whose integrity stood so high in public estimation.<sup>2</sup> The year of Pompeius's consulship was distinguished by the multitude of cases in which the conduct of men of all shades of political opinion was submitted to judicial scrutiny. He passed a law to compel the prosecution of all the charges of bribery with which the various candidates for office since the year 699 had been menaced.<sup>3</sup> A curious provision was adopted to stimulate the flagging zeal of the accusers. The culprit who was suffering himself under conviction for a similar crime might obtain remission of his own penalty by conducting to a successful issue a charge against another.<sup>4</sup>

His adm-  
istration

It seems, however, that the alliance of Pompeius

<sup>1</sup> Val. Max. vi. 2. 5.: "Huic facto persona admirationem ademit nam quæ in alio audacia videretur in Catone fiducia cognoscitur."

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *l. c.*, *Cat. Min.* 48.; Dion. *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 48. This was the year of Pompeius's second consulship. Appian (*B. C.* ii. 23.) makes the retrospective operation of this act extend to his first consulship in 684. Cæsar's friends are said to have complained of the indignity of bringing their patron's consulship (695) within the period thus stigmatized for its corruption, and possibly the limit was contracted on this account. Hoeck, *Römische Geschichte*, i. 149.

<sup>4</sup> This privilege continued under the emperors, and tended to multiply the number of *delators*. Tac. *Ann.* vi. 7.: "Sed Minucius et Servæus damnati indicibus accessere."



---

produces  
salutary  
effects.

with the senate, and the alienation from Cæsar which all his proceedings attested, gave new life and strength to the functions of government. Not only did the consul arm himself to enforce the execution of the laws, but by a bold and salutary measure he provided against their violation, by forbidding the citizens to carry weapons within the walls.<sup>1</sup> The riddance which had been made both of Milo and Clodius, together with many of their noisiest adherents, freed the forum from the tumultuary bands by which public business had been so long impeded. The tribunes learnt to be more cautious in their opposition, and the people, no longer caressed or menaced by rival demagogues, became good-humoured and manageable. Such was the early promise of the military tyranny which the consul and senate had virtually introduced into the city. The consul's success was obtained by favour perhaps not less than by the display of force. The commission he had received for provisioning the city gave him the opportunity and the means of distributing grain to the populace. This usage, which had originated in the legislation of C. Gracchus<sup>2</sup>, had been turned to the maintenance of the senatorial ascendancy by the astute policy of Cato. Under his direction it had served to soothe the irritation of the people on the defeat of the Catilinarians.<sup>3</sup> Fatal as it eventually

<sup>1</sup> Plin. *H. N.* xxxiv. 39. If the words are to be taken literally, he forbade even the keeping of arms: "Magni Pompeii in tertio consulatu exstat edictum, in tumultu necis Clodianæ, prohibentis ullum telum esse in urbe."

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *pro Sest.* 48.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 26.; see Hoeck, *R. G.* i. 112.

CHAP.  
XIII.

Pompeius,  
dissatisfied  
with his  
position,  
courts the  
alliance of  
the oligar-  
chy.

proved to their liberties, and even to their prosperity, it conciliated them at the time to the governments which fed them, and became a shield in the hands of the oligarchy against the attacks of demagogues, which they could not refrain from using, notwithstanding the warnings of Cicero and the more far-sighted of their statesmen.<sup>1</sup>

Nevertheless, Pompeius was not unconscious of the hollow and unsubstantial nature of the reforms he had devised. The permanence of the little good he had effected could only be assured by the military power on which it was really based. A few months must reveal the imposture, and the termination of his extraordinary office would be hailed as the dethronement of a tyrant. Great as were his abilities in the conduct of civil affairs, and free as he was from the passions which so frequently cloud the judgment of statesmen, untrammelled by avarice or sensuality, by personal hatreds or partialities, nevertheless his character had no ascendancy over others. Always artful, he had no ingenuity in concealing his artifice. He was suspected by all men, and he could impose upon none. His moral nature was as repulsive to those who came in contact with him as that of his great rival was attractive. He felt that his sole consulship was after all a failure, and he hastened to throw off the responsibility of ineffectual power. Upon the dissolution of his connexion with Cæsar by the death of Julia, he had determined to retrace his steps, and ally himself by another marriage with the heads of the oli-

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *l. c.*, *ad Att.* i. 16. : "Illa concionalis hirudo ærarii misera ac jejuna plebecula."

garchy. He offered his hand to Cornelia, the widow of the younger Crassus<sup>1</sup>, whose father, Q. Cæcilius Metellus Scipio, was one of the leading members of the senate, and a sworn enemy of the Marian faction. He now seized the opportunity of cementing this interested alliance by associating his new father-in-law with himself in the consulship for the latter half of the year. The people, if indeed they were consulted in the matter, made no difficulty in accepting his nomination, and the senate was pleased with an act of condescension to its wishes, though it probably despised the weakness which dictated it.

But in this proceeding, also, Pompeius betrayed the same disregard for the provisions of his own general policy which we have before remarked. Scipio was himself one of those over whom, as a recent candidate for the consulship, a charge of bribery was impending; and it required the consul's interference to avert the consequences of a prosecution which his own enactment had encouraged. Another instance of the reformer's inconsistency was still more flagrant, and served to crown the impatience of the people, who acknowledged in after times that Cæsar's subsequent treason was provoked by the lawlessness of his rival. It will be remembered that the consuls of the preceding year had obtained the enactment of a law whereby the curule magistrates were forbidden to

CHAP.  
XIII.

Marries  
Cornelia,  
and asso-  
ciates her  
father  
Scipio with  
himself in  
the consul-  
ship.

His incon-  
sistent and  
arbitrary  
conduct,  
and unfair-  
ness towards  
Cæsar.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. ii. 25.; Dion. xl. 51.; Plut. *Pomp.* 55., who gives a pleasing account of her character and accomplishments. The warm praises which Lucan lavishes upon her are a testimony to the traditional prejudices of the nobility in her favour.



CHAP.  
XIII.

take a province till after the lapse of five years from the termination of their office. It does not appear whether the framers of this restriction had any other object in view than to check the inordinate ambition of the aspirants to wealth and power; but when Pompeius, in the exercise of his sovereign authority, renewed and confirmed it<sup>1</sup>, his purpose was to deter Cæsar from suing for the consulship. The position of Cæsar's game was so critical, that he was compelled to keep his enemies in check at every move; if he once allowed the lead to be taken from him, he was lost. As long as he was at the head of an army in Gaul, he could despise the impotent clamour of the oligarchy; if he could obtain the consulship without previously laying down his command, he might then enter the city and return to civil life with security. From the curule chair he might descend once more to the proconsular camp, and place himself again at the head of the armies of his country. But the interval which was now appointed to elapse between the two offices which were essential to his safety, seemed to threaten him with certain destruction. Pompeius could not indeed suppose that so bold and skilful a statesman would resign himself without a struggle to the prosecutions with which his enemies threatened him, as soon as they could get him within their toils; but he calculated on his precipitating himself into a revolt against the state, and dashing himself with senseless desperation against the senate, the veterans, and the conqueror of Mithri-

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 56.

dates. Thus, presumptuously confident in his superior resources, he was unconscious of the moral force with which he furnished his rival, when, in the face of this very enactment, he retained his own proconsular appointment, and even caused it to be prolonged to him for another period of five years.<sup>1</sup>

The senate, however, exulted in the advance it had made, and believed that its path was now clear before it, and that its mortal enemy must soon fall into its hands. Cæsar, on his part, in the midst of the overwhelming cares and perils of war, kept his eye intently fixed upon the progress of affairs in the city, and saw that his only hope now lay in the errors of his antagonists. His term of government was approaching its close, while his opponents were eagerly pressing to have it cut short at once. At the moment of its expiration, as soon as he should become once more a private citizen, denuded of troops and employments, a charge of malversation would undoubtedly be preferred against him. The conduct of his proconsular government would be subjected to invidious scrutiny, the daring acts of his consulship would be branded and chastised.<sup>2</sup> He could expect neither justice nor mercy from the powers whose position in the city seemed now impregnable. But could he only obtain the consulship, he had yet another card to play, in spite of the restriction which his enemies had so craftily devised. He might employ his year of office in reviving the spirits of his own party, in recovering the affections of the people,

Critical position of  
Cæsar.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 56.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 30.

CHAP.  
XIII.

---

which had cooled, apparently, during his long absence, in infusing fresh vigour into the tribunes, in forming new alliances, and breaking the phalanx of his enemies by the numerous modes of corruption in which he was so well versed. As a last resource, he might flee from the city like Lepidus or Catilina, and raise his voice from the Alps to the veterans of either Gaul. Though better aware of the strength of his resources than his contemptuous enemies, yet it is evident that he felt the extreme rashness of throwing off his allegiance to the state while he had yet no plausible excuse for it, and that he did not decide upon that course till he had no other alternative, nor till his enemies had revealed to the world the injustice of their conduct, and to himself the weakness of their counsels.

He in-  
trigues to  
be permit-  
ted to stand  
for the con-  
sulship  
while still  
absent from  
the city.

Such then were the prognostications which Cæsar drew from the conduct of his adversaries in their enjoyment of power; such were his resources, and such his hopes. Nor did he delay to act. His first counter-move was to employ some of his friends among the tribunes to submit a law to the people, authorizing him to sue for the consulship without being present in the city; that is, without laying down his command previously. From a comparison of the various conflicting accounts, the confusion of which throws great uncertainty upon a point of considerable interest, we may conjecture that this authorization was meant to be a special exception in Cæsar's case to the general provisions of the existing law, by which the candidate's presence was required; a law which, as



we have seen, had frequently been dispensed with in similar instances; and further, that Pompeius, jealous of the tribunes' interference, took the matter out of their hands, with the promise to settle it by a declaratory enactment, in which the existing law should be confirmed with some provision for special exemptions. This enactment, it seems, had passed; it had been engraven in the usual way on a brazen tablet, and actually deposited in the public offices, before Cæsar's friends observed that the promised exception in his favour had not been distinctly made. A great clamour was raised, and Pompeius was obliged to come forward and acknowledge that an oversight had been committed. The error was reluctantly corrected, by the insertion of the name required; but the transaction could only add to the imputations of treachery and inconstancy under which the consul already suffered with either party.<sup>1</sup>

The tenor of Scipio's administration of office was quiet and unobtrusive. The only measure attributed to him was the repeal of the popular

Scipio restores the authority of the censors.

<sup>1</sup> The authorities are strangely contradictory:—

1. Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 3., says: "Pompeius contendit, ut decem tribuni plebis ferrent ut absentis ratio haberetur, quod idem ipse sanxit lege quadam sua."

2. Appian, ii. 25.: τοὺς δὲ δημάρχους ἔπεισεν (ὁ Καῖσαρ) εἰσηγήσασθαι νόμον . . . καὶ τοῦθ' ὑποτείνοντος ἔτι τοῦ Πομπηίου καὶ οὐδὲν ἀντιπόντος, ἐκέκρωτο.

3. Dion. (xl. 56.) speaks of the law as entirely the work of Pompeius, and says that the provisions for exemption were so large as to render it nugatory.

4. Suet. *Jul.* 28.: "Acciderat ut Pompeius legem de jure magistratum ferens, eo capite quo a petitione honorum absentes submovebat, ne Cæsarem quidem exciperet, per oblivionem; ac mox lege jam in æs incisa, et in ærarium condita, corrigeret errorem."

CHAP.  
XIII.

Clodian enactment which had deprived the censors of one of their most important functions, the power of degrading unworthy members of the senatorial order. But the temper of the times was unfavourable to such delegation of irresponsible power even to an ancient and venerated magistracy. Private character was no longer confided in as a guarantee for the honourable discharge of a public trust. As long as the censor was prohibited by law from noting the infamy of his fellow-citizens, his office might seem indeed shorn of its former lustre; but he was exempt himself from the jealousies which so invidious a duty must otherwise have heaped upon him. But when the restriction was removed, he had no longer an excuse for inaction; all connivance at vice was construed into fear of offending the powerful; the reputation of the censor and of his office sank together, and no man with any regard to his character coveted from henceforth a position which had once been the most honourable in the state.<sup>1</sup>

Consuls for  
the year  
703. M.  
Claudius  
Marcellus  
and Servius  
Sulpicius  
Rufus: de-  
feat of Cato.

The consuls were succeeded in the year 703 by M. Claudius Marcellus and Servius Sulpicius Rufus without disturbance or impediment. They both belonged to the party of the oligarchy: the former was animated by peculiar hostility to Cæsar; the other was a man of whom the nobles were justly proud, on account of his great reputation as a jurist.<sup>2</sup> Their influence with Pompeius was such as to secure their election against Cato, who had declared

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *pro Muren.* 10, 11, 12., *Brut.* 41.; Gell. vi. 12. &c.; Quintil. x. 1.

himself also a candidate, but whose independence of character was feared by the men in power. The candidates, it is said, abstained from bribery; authority and intimidation may have served instead. But the successful suitors for the suffrages of the tribes had put on the garb of flattery and condescension; to which Cato, who maintained all the stiffness of the antique virtue, refused to bend.<sup>1</sup> His impracticable purism sustained a fatal defeat, and he determined from thenceforth to decline all further competition for public honours, by which conduct he inflicted, probably, a serious injury upon his unfortunate country, which stood so much in need of honesty among its rulers.

The position which Cicero had lost as a political leader might be compensated to the state by the activity and success with which he applied himself to the business of a pleader in political causes. For some years there was, perhaps, no cause of importance in which his eloquence was not put in requisition for the accusation or the defence; and his name grew more and more illustrious, both for the brilliancy and the effectiveness of his harangues. On the one hand, he defended and saved Saufeius, a friend and associate of Milo<sup>2</sup>; on the other, he did not shrink from accusing Munatius Plancus<sup>3</sup>, at the risk of offending Pompeius. Nor did he quail before the threat of a public impeachment himself: once released from the persecution of Clodius, who seems to have had a greater mastery

Cicero's activity in pleading.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 58.

<sup>2</sup> Ascon. in *Milon.* p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> Dion. xl. 55.; Cic. *ad Div.* vii. 2.



CHAP.  
XIII.

His attachment to Curio, and hopes of him.

over his courage than any other of his enemies, his confidence in his own powers was unabashed, and he defied the malice of the world. Cicero seems indeed to have recovered, in these congenial occupations, some portion of his earlier spirits and sanguine temper. Though in his private correspondence he still expressed himself in despair for his country's destinies, yet that he did in fact retain hopes of better days appears from the interest he continued to take in those, among the rising generation, who seemed to give the greatest promise of goodness and wisdom.<sup>1</sup> Such seems to have been his opinion more particularly of the younger Curio, the son of Scribonius, whom the experienced statesman delighted in educating, to fill hereafter, as he fondly imagined, the highest places in the state, to the advantage of the commonwealth.<sup>2</sup> Yet this was the young patrician whom Vettius, as we have seen, had implicated in the alleged conspiracy against the triumvirs, and against whom Cicero himself had uttered expressions of no little bitterness: we cannot doubt that his early years were stained by the worst vices of his time, such as, in a more sober period at least, would have left little room for auguring from him a more useful and honourable manhood. But in those

<sup>1</sup> Abeken (*Cicero in sein. Brief.* p. 186.). It was in this year that he wrote the treatise *de Legibus*. Fischer, *Röm. Zeittäfel.* p. 260.

<sup>2</sup> The family of Curio was distinguished for its talents. Plin. *H. N.* vii. 41.: "Una familia Curionum, in quâ tres continua serie oratores exstiterunt." Schol. Bob. in *Clodian. et Curion.* p. 330. ed. Orell.: "Tres illis temporibus Curiones illustri nomine exstiterunt, atque ita in libris adhuc feruntur: Curio avus, qui Servium Fulvium incesti reum defendit, et hic, C. Curio pater qui P. Clodio affuit, et tertius ille Curio tribunitius," &c.

times of sudden change, the dissipation of youth might yet give place to better counsels and the growing strength of a manly character: the abilities of Curio were brilliant, and his disposition had some natural bias towards the good; his recent quæstorship of Asia had opened his mind to larger views of interest and duty, and his sphere of action was expanded by the death of his father, a man of considerable influence among his order. Cicero exerted himself to the utmost to develop the latent seeds of good in his favourite and pupil; and it would seem that the young man had already made some return for this care, by the zeal with which he had served his monitor in the affair of Clodius.<sup>1</sup>

Obtains a  
place in the  
College of  
Augurs.

Cicero obtained an honourable reward for the courage he had recently displayed, in the acquisition of the place in the College of Augurs rendered vacant by the death of Publius Crassus.<sup>2</sup> Hortensius proposed and Pompeius lent his countenance to this appointment<sup>3</sup>, and the only drawback to the complacency of the successful candidate was the obscurity of his competitor Hirrus. The office itself he considered one of the most dignified which a citizen could enjoy<sup>4</sup>; and his vanity could plume itself on unsubstantial dignities, when real power eluded his grasp. But the law of Pompeius, which restricted the administration of the provinces to such magistrates as had completed their term of office five years previously, left a gap in the ordinary succession to these governments,

<sup>1</sup> See Cicero's Letter to Curio, *ad Div.* ii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cic.* 36.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *Brut.* 1.

<sup>4</sup> Cic. *de Legg.* ii. 12.

CHAP.  
XIII.

Accepts  
with re-  
luctance the  
government  
of Cilicia.

which could only be filled by invoking the services of the consuls and prætors of past years, who had already served, or, perhaps, had declined to serve at a distance from Rome. Among the number of the latter was Cicero, whom the alluring temptations of the proconsulate had never yet induced to abandon that position in the city which he considered the only proper sphere for the exercise of his accomplishments. Nor was he less reluctant now to accept the commission which was thus, in a manner, forced upon him. He saw more clearly, perhaps, than others, though few were altogether blind to it, the imminence of a decisive struggle between the leaders of party; he was slackening in his attentions to Cæsar, and attaching himself more closely to the culminating fortunes of his rival; and he flattered himself, perhaps, that his own presence might supply the deficiency of public virtue which he still mournfully remarked in his patron's counsels. But to obey the call of the commonwealth was the point of honour with the Roman statesman; and when Syria and Cilicia were assigned to himself and Bibulus, the latter was the province which fell by lot to his hands.<sup>1</sup>

State of  
Cilicia.

The province of Cilicia was of considerable extent, and of no less military importance. It comprehended, besides the narrow district between the Taurus and the sea to which the appellation more properly belonged, the countries of Pisidia, Pamphylia, Isauria, and Lycaonia, together with the three districts of Southern Phrygia, distinguished

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *l. c.*



by the names of their respective capitals, Laodicea, Cibyra, and Apamea.<sup>1</sup> To these was added the neighbouring island of Cyprus. From the moment that he reached the frontiers of his government the new proconsul was called upon to exercise the military functions, so foreign to his habits and education, which the republic imposed upon the rulers of her subjects, no less than the administration of her laws. In Lycaonia he met his army, which ought to have consisted of two legions, but was reduced in numbers by the absence of some cohorts.<sup>2</sup> It was necessary to set out without an instant's delay for the eastern extremity of the province, in order to check the insolence of the Parthians, who were threatening an irruption into the Roman territory, nor less to control the disaffection of the king of Armenia, who, as we have seen, had lately formed a family alliance with the victors of Charrhæ. Cicero stationed himself at Cibystra, at the foot of the Taurus.<sup>3</sup> This place was within the frontiers of the dependent kingdom of Cappadocia, where Ariobarzanes II. occupied the throne upon which his father had been placed by the Romans. A conspiracy against him was on the point of breaking out, and it was only by the presence of the proconsul and his legions that it was repressed; but the king was with difficulty able to maintain himself against the rebellious spirit of his subjects, fostered, no doubt, by the intrigues of his Parthian neighbours. Cicero could not afford to detach any troops for the

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* xiii. 67.<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* iii. 6.<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* v. 18.

CHAP.  
XIII.

defence of his capital or person; the terror of the Roman name was all the assistance he could lend him; but this was sufficient to check the apprehended revolt. The smallness of the military force which was assigned for the support of the dependent sovereigns, for repressing the discontent of the provincials themselves, for overawing the predatory tribes of Isauria, for withstanding the encroachments of the Parthians or Armenians, cannot fail to move our astonishment. It is calculated certainly to impress us with an exalted notion of the moral influence exercised over the provinces by the vigour of the Roman administration, and the more so at a moment when a large army had so recently been lost almost within sight of the frontiers. It must be remembered, however, that Cicero himself complains of the inadequacy of his forces; and his friend Cælius brands the uniform misconduct of the senate in leaving its generals in the provinces miserably ill-provided for the services they had to perform.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar and Pompeius were already draining the ordinary resources of the state, and diverting the flower of the Roman youth into their own camps. The proconsul was obliged to make a levy of Roman citizens in his province, while he trusted to the goodwill of Deiotarus, the king of Galatia, to double his numbers with auxiliary troops. But the expedient of enlistment did not answer his wishes; the number of the Romans in those parts was small, and they were reluctant to quit their lucrative employments for the perils

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* v. 18., and Cælius to Cicero, *ad Div.* viii. 5.

of military service. Bibulus, who made the same complaint in his government of Syria, relinquished the attempt as wholly unprofitable.<sup>1</sup>

The apprehensions of a Parthian invasion which the proconsul of Cilicia entertained were relieved by the high spirit with which Cassius Longinus defied it in Syria with the remnant of the army of Crassus.<sup>2</sup> After his general's fatal discomfiture, Cassius had retired to Antioch, resolving to provide for the safety as well as the internal administration of the province until he should be superseded by the arrival of a new proconsul. In the preceding year he had repulsed some Parthian squadrons which had ventured to cross the frontiers of the Roman territory. While Cicero was still advancing leisurely from Rome to assume his command in Cilicia, Pacorus, the son of Orodes, appeared again with larger forces, and in a more determined attitude, almost before the walls of the Syrian capital. Cicero claims the merit of having emboldened Cassius by his proximity to bring the enemy to a decisive engagement; but a comparison of dates clearly shows that the victory which the latter now obtained was some weeks previous to Cicero's arrival at the foot of the Taurus.<sup>3</sup> Nor did Bibulus appear in time to reap any share in his lieutenant's laurels. The Parthians seem to have been sufficiently discouraged by their succes-

The aggressions of the Parthians checked by Cassius.

<sup>1</sup> See Cicero's complaints in an official despatch to the consuls and senate (*ad Div.* xv. 1.).

<sup>2</sup> *Liv. Epit.* cviii.; *Dion.* xl. 29, 30.; *Vell.* ii. 46.; *Joseph. Ant. Jud.* xiv. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Fischer, *Röm. Zeittäfel.*, p. 260.; comp. *Cic. ad Att.* v. 20. with *ad Div.* xv. 4.



CHAP.  
XIII.

sive defeats; they refrained from any further demonstrations of hostility; and to pursue them into their own country demanded greater forces, and perhaps bolder leaders, than the Roman power in the East could at that moment furnish. Accordingly, the new proconsul abstained from the prosecution of any military enterprize against the enemy; but he kept a watchful eye upon their affairs, and fomented a family quarrel in the Parthian court, which resulted in the revolt of Pacorus against his father.<sup>1</sup>

Military exploits and civil administration of Cicero.

The citizens of Rome seem to have derived some novel amusement from contemplating the situation of their peaceful philosopher, in the heart of a country swarming with banditti and half-reclaimed pirates, and with clouds of Parthian cavalry rolling in his front. But Cicero was ably supported by his brother and other officers; and when the more serious danger had passed away, he was far from shrinking from the safer though less glorious warfare which the state of his province demanded. He chastised the marauders of the mountains in more than one expedition<sup>2</sup>; his soldiers complimented him with the title of Imperator, and the senate rewarded him with the honour of a supplication.<sup>3</sup> For his own part he was so much dazzled by his own exploits as to fix his heart on the guerdon of a triumph.<sup>4</sup> Indeed we may reasonably feel at a loss whether most to

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 30.

<sup>2</sup> See Cicero's official despatch (*ad Div.* xv. 4.); comp. Plut. *Cic.* 36.

<sup>3</sup> Cælius to Cicero (*ad Div.* viii. 11.).

<sup>4</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vi. 6.: "Amicorum literæ me ad triumphum vocant." Comp. *ad Att.* vii. 1., *ad Div.* xv. 6.

admire the ability of the man who could thus acquit himself with credit in a career so alien from the studies of his life, the excellence of the training which enabled his countrymen ordinarily to exchange without disadvantage the gown for the breastplate, the forum for the camp, or again, the perfection of the military system, which seemed to require no more than good sense and firmness in the general to insure the success of his arms. Nor did the moderation and wisdom of Cicero's civil administration belie the lessons of public virtue of which he had been so conspicuous a teacher. On the one hand, we may be assured that the man who resisted the importunities of M. Brutus, seconded by the instances of his own personal friends<sup>1</sup>, would exercise a wholesome severity in checking the extortion of less distinguished and less powerful subordinates; on the other, we learn that the expenses of the government were reduced to a scale of the most scrupulous economy<sup>2</sup>, and that a troop of disappointed parasites groaned over the ample surplus which was poured into the national coffers.<sup>3</sup>

Meanwhile, the consulship of Sulpicius and M. Marcellus was attended with continued tranquillity in the city. The rival parties were intently watching each other, and calculating their next moves with breathless anxiety, and it seemed agreed that the game should be played out by an effort of skill

State of parties during the consulship of Sulpicius and M. Marcellus.  
A.U. 703.  
B.C. 51.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* v. 21., vi. 1—3. See above, Vol. I. p. 379.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* v. 16.; comp. Plut. *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 1.: "Ingemuit nostra cohors omne illud putans distribui sibi oportere."

CHAP.  
XIII.

---

and coolness. The commencement of Cæsar's proconsulate dated from the first of January, 696, and the original provisions of the Vatinian law had been extended, by the good offices of Trebonius, to a second term of five years, commencing from the beginning of 701. Accordingly, in the middle of 703 his government had still two years and a half to run. At this moment the wars of Gaul, as we have seen, were almost brought to a close; but the remainder of the term he might still advantageously employ in consolidating his influence both in the Province and among the needy politicians of the capital. The senate had just carried the election of two of its partizans, L. Æmilius Paulus and C. Claudius Marcellus, who were to enter upon the consulship at the commencement of the ensuing year. It was for a still distant vacancy that Cæsar reserved his pretensions. During the interval he remained entrenched, as it were, behind the provisions of the law which had been extorted from Pompeius, and depended on the exertions of his party to carry his election in the city while he still retained the command of his legions in Gaul. Among the nobles, indeed, there were not a few who felt the obligation to respect so recent and clear an enactment. Others, less scrupulous perhaps on this point, were still unwilling to strip him of his power while his rival, of whom they were hardly less jealous, continued to wield the military government of Spain. Cato himself, exasperated at the slight he had sustained from the creatures of Pompeius, would willingly have pulled down both the rivals together from



their proud elevation. But Marcellus and the more violent section of the party were for pushing their attack upon the popular leader without disguise, and disregarded all further considerations. The consul audaciously proposed that Cæsar's term should be cut short at once by the appointment of a successor. Pompeius masked the approaches by which he hoped to storm his rival's position by assurances of his implicit deference to the will of the senate, at the same time that he affected moderation, and interrupted its deliberations by absenting himself from the city when it was proposed to bring the matter to a solemn debate. At this moment all eyes were turned towards the tribunitian bench, where some were known to be devoted to Cæsar, and determined to exercise their fatal veto in any case of direct attack upon his rights. A correspondent of Cicero reveals to us the feelings with which the election of young Curio to the tribuneship was regarded by the nobles. Already it was surmised that one so giddy in temper, and so needy as he was known to be, might easily be corrupted by the arts of the most accomplished of intriguers; but they trusted in a slight which he was said to have received from Cæsar, and still clung to the hope that he would continue faithful to the policy of his family and friends.<sup>1</sup> They declared boldly that if any tribune protested against the removal of the proconsul of

Renewed intrigues for depriving Cæsar of his province.

The younger Curio elected tribune.

<sup>1</sup> Cælius to Cicero (*ad Div.* viii. 4.): "Curio . . . nihil consilio facit, incutit multis magnum metum, sed ut spero et volo et ut se fert ipse, bonos et senatum malet . . . quod eum Cæsar . . . valdè contempsit."

CHAP.  
XIII.

---

Gaul, they had partizans on the same bench pledged to frustrate the appointment of a successor to any one of the provincial governors, and thus bring matters to a crisis which would demand the intervention of a dictator.<sup>1</sup>

Decree of  
M. Mar-  
cellus about  
the assign-  
ment of  
provinces  
aimed di-  
rectly  
against  
Cæsar;

At length, on the last day of September, M. Marcellus came forward and proposed that, on the first of March ensuing, the consuls who should have then entered upon office should proceed to the usual assignment of the provinces of the republic.<sup>2</sup> The first two months of the year were appropriated to the reception of foreign ambassadors and the regulation of external affairs. The first of March was apparently the ordinary day for assigning the provinces, the most important business connected with the internal economy of the state.<sup>3</sup> Marcellus had made no express mention of Cæsar's province; but it was well known that he was in reality aimed at, and a second decree was fulminated against any tribune who should venture to impede the proceedings of the senate. It was further provided that the claims of Cæsar's veterans should be taken into immediate consideration; and it was evidently hoped that they might thus be seduced from their allegiance to their beloved commander. Three tribunes protested, notwithstanding, and even Sulpicius expressed his disapproval of his colleague's proposition; but the majority of the senate did not

disapproved  
by the mo-  
derate  
party, but  
supported  
by Pom-  
peius.

<sup>1</sup> Cælius to Cicero (*ad Div.* viii. 5.).

<sup>2</sup> *Ad Div.* viii. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Cic. *de Prov. Cons.* 15.: "Ex Kal. denique ei Martiis nascetur repente provincia." Perhaps this was a provision of the Sempronian law for the assignment of consular provinces before the consuls' election.

hesitate to confirm it, and Pompeius intimated with solemnity that obedience to the senate was the first duty of a citizen. Hitherto, he said, he could not have interfered to abridge Cæsar's term of government, but now his scruples vanished. "What then would he do," asked Marcellus, "if the tribunes should interpose, and forbid the law for assigning his provinces to a successor?" "It would make no difference," he replied, "whether Cæsar refused to obey the senate himself, or prompted his creatures to do so." "And what," urged another, "if Cæsar should persist in suing for the consulship, and refuse to abdicate his command?" "What," he returned, "if my son should raise his stick against me?"<sup>1</sup> These words were not regarded as sufficiently explicit. They might, indeed, imply a contempt for the restless intriguer too great to condescend to so monstrous a supposition; but, whatever language Pompeius might hold, his intentions were never free from suspicion; and on this occasion there were not wanting some to surmise that he had still a private understanding with the common enemy. Cæsar appears to have remonstrated against the injustice of the proceeding, and even, if we may believe the testimony of one writer, to have offered to resign the Transalpine and Illyrian provinces, retaining only the Cisalpine.<sup>2</sup> But the senate gave no heed to him. Exasperated to a pitch of unusual

Cæsar offers  
to resign  
the Trans-  
alpine and  
Illyricum.

<sup>1</sup> Cælius to Cicero, *l. c.*

<sup>2</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 25. It may be suspected that Appian anticipates in this place an offer of the kind, which Cæsar undoubtedly made at a later period.



CHAP.  
XIII.

---

warmth, he could no longer refrain from intimating his resolution to preserve himself, if necessary, by an appeal to arms. When the news was conveyed to him of the determination at which the senate had thus arrived to deprive him of his government on the appointed day, he laid his hand on his sword and exclaimed, "This, then, shall keep it."<sup>1</sup>

M. Marcellus insults Cæsar by the ill-treatment of a Transpadane Gaul.

It still remained to be seen whether these bold assailants would have the courage to abide by this resolution when the time came to put them to the proof. It was, perhaps, the object of a section at least of the party to anticipate the risk of failure by driving the popular leader at once to violence. Such seems to have been the aim of a brutal insult with which the consul Marcellus now provoked him. Cæsar had constituted himself the patron of the Transpadane Gauls, and, among other acts by which he had confirmed his interests in that country, he had founded a colony at Novum Comum. The Transpadanes had already obtained the Latin franchise from the republic through the influence of Pompeius Strabo<sup>2</sup>; a privilege which, as is well known, conferred upon all who had held a pro-

<sup>1</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 26. Plutarch, however, attributes this sally to one of his soldiers.

<sup>2</sup> Strab. v. 1. 6.; Ascon. in *Pisonian.* p. 3. ed. Orell. Novum Comum was the name given to Comum, now Como, when Cæsar founded a second colony there. Drumann thinks that as the first colony of Pompeius Strabo received the *jus Latii*, the second had the complete Roman franchise. There is no authority for such a supposition, and it can only be adopted with the idea that it is required for the point of the story before us. But the act of Marcellus was sufficiently irritating to Cæsar, without supposing a direct violation or denial of a citizen's privileges.

vincial magistracy the full rights of Roman citizenship. Scourging was a punishment from which a Roman citizen, in the fullest sense, was legally exempt. This immunity was considered as a distinction, and guarded with jealousy. Marcellus caused a freeman of Novum Comum to be seized, upon some pretence, and beaten with rods. The man, it appears, had not served a magistracy<sup>1</sup>; he could not legally claim exemption; but the act was not the less offensive to the patron of his countrymen, who felt that it was intended to disparage his influence. It was branded by the good sense and moderation of Cicero as an act of wanton hostility towards one who deserved at least honourable regard from every citizen of the republic. The indignity was redoubled, when the consul bade the man go and show his scars to the patron who was powerless to relieve him.

It is not improbable that the precarious position in which the proconsul was at this time supposed to be, may have inspired his enemies with courage to hurl this insult at his head. It was reported at Rome that his cavalry had been destroyed in a disastrous engagement; that the seventh legion had

Supposed  
peril of  
Cæsar's po-  
sition in  
Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> Such are Cicero's express words: "Marcellus fœde de Comensi: etsi ille magistratum non gesserat, erat tamen Transpadanus" (*ad Att.* v. 11.). Appian (ii. 26.) and also Plutarch (*Cæs.* 29.) assert the contrary, but Cicero's authority is of course to be preferred. He goes on to complain of the act as disrespectful to Pompeius, whose father had given the *jus Latii* to the Transpadanes. It could hardly be represented as such, if Marcellus had merely denied Cæsar's power to confer a higher right than had been conceded to his predecessor. Middleton, I observe, makes bad Latin of the passage, reading *gesserit* (it should be *gessisset*) for *gesserat*, in a futile attempt to reconcile it with Appian and Plutarch

CHAP.  
XIII.

suffered a severe defeat; that in his expedition against the Bellovaci he had been cut off with a small detachment from the rest of his forces: whispers as to his fate were circulating in the ranks of the nobility; Domitius put his finger to his lips with a significant look, which our informant declines to interpret.<sup>1</sup> But Pompeius at least had more confidence in his rival's ability to extricate himself from his difficulties. When Marcellus proceeded still further, and proposed to send the proconsul's successors into his provinces, even before the time appointed, he interfered with expressions of moderation and respect for so noble a champion of the commonwealth.<sup>2</sup> At the same time, however, he insisted, without disguise, that the senate should take up the matter in due season, and assume the right of deciding peremptorily upon his claims.

Pompeius  
falls sick at  
Neapolis.

At this crisis, while the more wary among the nobles might still distrust their ability to resist the enemy whom the more violent were driving to desperation, an incident occurred which served to confirm their uncertain hopes, and raised them to the highest pitch of temerity. The health of Pompeius was far from robust: he was wont to suffer periodically from the autumnal fevers, which appear in all ages to have been the bane of the Tyr-

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* viii. 1. Cælius writes to Cicero, in Cilicia, on the first of June: "Quod ad Cæsarem crebri et non belli de eo rumores, sed susurratores duntaxat veniunt: alius equitem perdidisse, quod, opinor, factum est: alius septimam legionem vapulasse; ipsum apud Bellovacos circumsederi, interclusum ab reliquo exercitu: neque adhuc certi quicquam est, neque hæc incerta tamen vulgo jactantur: sed inter paucos, quos tu nosti, palam secreto narrantur: at Domitius, — quum manus ad os opposuit —"

<sup>2</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 26.



rhénian coast. Towards the close of the year 703 he was prostrated by severe sickness at Neapolis, and his life was for a time despaired of. He had now reached the culminating point of his political career, and, having enjoyed, and, still more, having surrendered the sole consulship, there remained nothing within the sphere of the laws which could increase his reputation either for power or moderation. The only legitimate boon which fortune might still bestow upon her favourite was an honoured and tranquil old age; but the storms which were gathering in the horizon forbade the hope of so happy a consummation. At such a moment, said the Roman moralists, the gods, in their foresight, offered to remove the great Pompeius beyond the sphere of human change; but the cities and the nations interposed with prayer, and preserved their beloved hero for defeat and decapitation.<sup>1</sup> The people of Neapolis and Puteoli were the first to make a public demonstration of grief and despair. Vows and sacrifices were offered for the sick man's recovery. He was saved, and the same people expressed their delight with festivals and dances, and crowned their heads with chaplets. These, indeed, Cicero might have said, were only Greeks<sup>2</sup>; but the reserved and sober Italians were no less in ardent

Enthusiasm  
of the  
Italians on  
his reco-  
very.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Tusc. Qu.* i. 35., from whence the celebrated lines of Juvenal (x. 283.) are taken: "Fortuna ipsius et Urbis Servatum victo caput abstulit;" a sentence of most pregnant brevity. Comp. also Vell. ii. 48.; Senec. *Cons. ad Marc.* 20.; Liv. ix. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *L. c.*: "Coronati Neapolitani fuerunt, nimirum etiam Puteolani: vulgo ex oppidis publicè gratulabantur: ineptum sane negotium et Græculum."

CHAP.  
XIII.

their adulation. The roads were thronged; the villages were crowded like cities; the harbours could not contain the vessels which brought strangers from beyond the sea to salute the popular idol as he was transported slowly from place to place on his way to Rome. Pompeius from his litter contemplated this movement of the people with lively satisfaction; he regarded it as a crowning proof of the depth to which his influence had penetrated, as a gauge of the inexhaustible resources of his popularity.<sup>1</sup> Rooted on a foundation so broad and immovable, what should he fear from Cæsar or Cæsar's veterans? There was no one at his ear to whisper how hollow these demonstrations were, to foretell that Italy would surrender to his rival without a blow, and that the voices now loudest in the accents of devotion to him would welcome the conqueror of Gaul with no less fervent acclamations. "But what," exclaimed a shrewder observer, "are the prospects of a party whose champion falls dangerously sick at least once a year?"<sup>2</sup>

Cæsar's  
mild and  
conciliatory  
treatment  
of the  
Gauls.

The termination of the conquest of Gaul found the work of pacification already far advanced. The policy of Cæsar was essentially different from that of his predecessors in provincial administration. The provinces on either side of the Alps had been bound to the car of the republic by the iron links of arms and colonies. Large tracts of land had been wrested from the conquered people, and conferred upon such Roman citizens as would ex-

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 57.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 2. : "In unius hominis quotannis periculose ægruantis anima positas omnes spes nostras habemus."

change for foreign plunder the security of their own homes, and maintain the outposts of the empire in the midst of prostrate enemies. The military spirit which animated these colonists, their discipline, intelligence, and valour, sufficed to overawe the natives almost without the presence of regular troops. But such a system could not possibly be extended to the vast territories which the state was now suddenly invited to organize. Nor was it Cæsar's wish to bring Rome thus, as it were, into the provinces; his object was, on the contrary, to approach the Gaulish provincials to Rome, to give them an interest and a pride in the city of their conquerors. The first step towards making citizens of the Gauls was to render the Roman yoke as light as possible. Accordingly, Cæsar established no colonies throughout the vast region which he added to the empire. The form of a province which he gave to it was little more than nominal. As Cisalpine Gaul was distinguished by the title of *Togata*, the "gowned," to indicate its peaceful character and approximation to the manners of the city, so the Province, otherwise called the *Narbonensis*, was contrasted with it by the epithet *Braccata*, or "trousered," from the uncouth habiliments of its people. So, also, to the whole of the immense country between the Rhone, the Ocean, and the Rhine, the acquisition of Cæsar himself, another term of distinction was applied, and it was called *Comata*, from the long wild hair of its native barbarians. But, on the other hand, the conqueror allowed the appearance at least of their original freedom to most of the



CHAP.  
XIII.

states within these limits. He was not afraid to trust the most spirited of the Gallic tribes with this flattering boon. Not only the Arverni, the Ædui, the Bituriges, but even the fierce and intractable Treviri, were indulged with the name of free states.<sup>1</sup> They had their own magistrates, senates, and deliberations, guided no doubt by Roman agents; and, as we hear in later times that the subjects of discussion were appointed by the government, and the topics and arguments of the speakers strictly controlled<sup>2</sup>, so it is probable that Cæsar did not cease to exercise jealous vigilance over the assemblies he permitted to exist. Other states were taken into the alliance of the victorious republic.<sup>3</sup> The tribute which the provincials paid was softened by the name of military contribution<sup>4</sup>, and that it might not press heavily upon them, the annual sum was definitely fixed at the moderate amount of forty millions of sesterces.<sup>5</sup> Upon both cities and chiefs he showered a profusion of honours and more substantial benefits.<sup>6</sup> But, after all, the manner of the magnanimous Roman won as many hearts as his benefactions. When he saw his own sword suspended, as has been mentioned, in the temple of its Arvernian captors,

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 59.; Plin. *H. N.* iv. 31. 33.

<sup>2</sup> Tac. *Ann.* iii. 43.; Ukert, *Geog. der Gr. und Röm.* iii. 255.

<sup>3</sup> Tac. *Germ.* 29.

<sup>4</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 25.; Thierry, *Gaulois*, iii. 211.

<sup>5</sup> Computing the sestertius at 2*d.* and a fraction, this sum will represent about 350,000*l.* of our money.

<sup>6</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 49.: "Itaque honorifice civitates appellando, principes maximis præmiis afficiendo." Dion's account, indeed, is not so favourable: τοὺς μὲν ἐταπείνωσε, τοὺς δὲ ἡμέρωσε (xl. 43.).

He conciliates the adherents of the senate in the Province.

he refused to reclaim it, saying, with a gracious smile, that the offering was sacred.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar, indeed, had another enemy in the southern part of his province, the Pompeian faction, whom he feared more than the Gauls themselves, and it was in order to strengthen himself against these that he paid his court to the nations which he had subdued. The stronghold of this party lay in the Narbonensis, where Pompeius had established the base of his operations against Sertorius, and which he had filled with his legionaries and dependents. Narbo Martius, the principal city in the west of the province, was devoted to the interest of the chief of the nobles; nor was Massilia less attached to the cause of the Roman aristocracy, to which it had looked for alliance and protection during the period of its struggle with the neighbouring tribes. The presence of Marius in those regions for a period of some years had, indeed, introduced relations with the party of which he was the victorious champion; and when that party had been trampled down by Sulla in Italy many of its proscribed adherents had taken refuge in the Gaulish province. It was there that Lepidus had hoped to muster allies for his futile attack upon the Roman oligarchy; it was from thence that Perperna had brought powerful reinforcements to Sertorius in Spain; but after the triumph of Pompeius the South of Gaul was reorganized as a dependency of the ascendant class by a system of cruel confiscations and proscriptions. Milo selected Massilia

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 26.: *ἱερὸν ἡγοούμενος*. Possibly a feeling of superstition was mingled with this generosity.

CHAP.  
XIII.

for his place of retreat, as being a stronghold of his order. For the same reason, perhaps, Catilina pretended to go into banishment there, as a pledge to the senate that he had no views opposed to their interests. Pompeius, after his return to Rome, had still continued in fact to govern the Province through the agency of Fonteius and other pro-consuls, up to the moment of Cæsar's arrival. But the new governor was intently occupied in undoing the work of his predecessors. He exerted himself to recover the favour of the Massilians by doubling the benefits which his rival had already conferred upon them. He extended the limits of their territory, and increased the tributes which they derived from it.<sup>1</sup> The project, at least, of building a city and forming a naval station at Forum Julii may be attributed to Cæsar, though it is uncertain whether he actually completed it.<sup>2</sup> With the ulterior designs which he had in view he could not follow the example of Sulla and Pompeius in disbanding his veterans, and establishing them in colonies throughout the country; but we hear of the settlement of a division of the tenth legion at Narbo, of the sixth at Arelate, of the seventh at Biterræ, of the eighth at Antipolis<sup>3</sup>; and it is probable that he made at least the commencement of an assignment of lands at those places, which was afterwards completed by Augustus.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 35.: "Bello victos Salyas attribuit, vectigaliaque auxit." The Massilians acknowledged that they had received *paria beneficia* from Cæsar and Pompeius.

<sup>2</sup> D'Anville, *Notice sur la Gaule, in voc.*

<sup>3</sup> Mela, ii. 5.; Plin. *H. N.* iii. 4.; Ukert, *Geog. der Gr. und Röm.*; Guischard, *Mém. Milit.* iii. 16.



If the clemency which the Gaulish cities experienced at his hands should fail to effect their acquiescence in the ascendancy with which Rome seemed to be content, the proconsul adopted other means to deprive them of the power of contesting it. He placed himself at the head of the military spirit of the people, and converted the flower of their youth into one great Roman army. The legions with which he had effected the reduction of the country had been principally of Gaulish blood and language; the republic had furnished him with no Italian troops.<sup>1</sup> The tenth legion was raised by Pomptinus in the transalpine province to combat the Allobroges. The seventh, eighth, and ninth, which Cæsar found in the Cisalpine, were probably the levies of Metellus in that region, when he was commissioned to close the Alps against the retreat of Catilina.<sup>2</sup> The eleventh and twelfth were the proconsul's hasty conscription in his province at the commencement of his first campaign. The thirteenth and fourteenth were raised from the same countries to oppose the great confederacy of the Belgians. Of these, the latter had been cut to pieces by the Eburones<sup>3</sup>; but another fourteenth and a fifteenth also were afterwards levied in the

Cæsar attaches to himself the military spirit of the Gauls.

Composition of his legions.

<sup>1</sup> Guischard, *Mém. Milit.* iii. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. C.* viii. 8.: "Tres veterrimæ legiones." The legions which Pompeius maintained in Spain bore the numbers one to six. The numbers were given according to the date of conscription; but even at this early period the armies of the East and West had no reference to each other, and the legions of Syria were numbered independently of those of Spain and Gaul. Guischard, *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Two legions are said to have been destroyed on that occasion; probably there remained enough of them to be drafted into a single legion.

CHAP.  
XIII.

Gaulish provinces. Even the legion which Pompeius had lent to his rival had been raised by him in the Cisalpine, by the order of the senate. Only a small portion of these soldiers could have been of genuine Roman or Italian extraction, with the full franchise of the city; they were levied, no doubt, from the native population of the numerous states which had been endowed with the Latin rights.<sup>1</sup> It was contrary to the first rule of military service to admit mere aliens into the ranks of the Roman legion, or to form supplemental legions of the unenfranchised provincials. But each of these divisions was attended by an unlimited number of cohorts<sup>2</sup>, which, under the name of *Auxilia*, were equipped, for the most part, in the same manner as itself, and placed under the same discipline and command. The common dangers and glories of a few campaigns side by side had rendered the Gaulish auxiliary no less efficient than the legionary himself. Cæsar surrounded himself with a large force of this kind, and swept into its ranks a great number of the men of note and influence in their respective cities.<sup>3</sup> One entire legion, indeed, he did not scruple to compose of Gauls alone; and of all his audacious innovations, none, perhaps, jarred more upon the prejudices of his countrymen. But in so doing he was carrying out his policy of amalgamation; and he acted on the same principle,

<sup>1</sup> Sigon. *de Jur. Ant. Ital.* iii. 2., *de Jur. Prov.* i. 6.

<sup>2</sup> The thirty-second cohort of the second legion is mentioned on a medal. Harduin. *ad Plin.* iii. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 39.: "Nominatim ex omnibus civitatibus nobilissimo et fortissimo quoque evocato."

when, at a later period, he gave to this whole body the Roman franchise. The soldiers who composed this legion were distinguished by a helmet with the figure of a lark or a tuft of its plumage on the crest, from whence it derived its name *Alauda*.<sup>1</sup> The Gauls admired the spirit and vivacity of the bird, and rejoiced in the omen. Fond of the excitement of a military life, vain of the consideration attached to the profession of arms, proud of themselves and of their leaders, they found united in Cæsar's service all the charms which most attracted them. No captain ever knew better how to win the personal affection of his soldiers, while he commanded their respect. The general severity of his discipline enhanced the favour of his indulgence. Even the studied appearance of caprice, and the rudeness which he could mingle seasonably with his refined accomplishments, hit the humour of the camp, and delighted the fancy of his followers.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, he enjoyed popularity among his troops such as seldom fell to the lot of the Roman generals, who maintained discipline by the terror of punishment alone. Throughout his Gaulish campaigns there was no single instance of an open act of insubordination; even the raw recruits of his earliest campaign quailed at the first words of his rebuke. The self-devotion manifested in moments of peril by men and officers astonished even the ample experience of the Ro-

---

Cæsar's  
Gaulish  
legion  
named  
*Alauda*.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 24.; Plin. *H. N.* xi. 44.; Cic. *ad Att.* xvi. 8.; comp. Drumann, iii. 235.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 65. and foll., where he gives several instances of the kind.



CHAP.  
XIII.

---

mans. It was impossible to make his soldiers, when captured, turn their arms against him; and the toils and privations they endured in their marches and sieges even more appalled the enemy than their well-known bravery in the field.<sup>1</sup> This was the secret of their repeated triumphs over numbers and every other advantage; the renown they hence acquired charmed away the malice or patriotism of the Gauls, and precipitated them once more upon Italy, under the banners of their conqueror.

Character  
and conduct  
of C. Scri-  
bonius  
Curio.  
A. U. 704.  
consuls,  
L. Æmilius  
Paulus and  
C. Claudius  
Marcellus.

C. Scribonius Curio had succeeded, through the favour of the senate, though not without the misgivings of some at least of the party, in obtaining the tribuneship. He had been noted, not long before, as one of the most rabid partizans of the oligarchy; but his character was unstable; his friend Cicero was absent; above all, his resources were notoriously exhausted by profligacy and profusion. The Pompeians hastened to brand with the name of corruption every expression of sentiment adverse to their patron's ascendancy, and doubtless the Gaulish gold had flowed like a stream of molten metal into every crevice of the city. The guilt of Curio, even at the time, admitted of no disproof; at the present day it would be idle to attempt to allay the prevalent suspicion.<sup>2</sup> There was nothing, however, in his proceedings which might not admit of a more favourable con-

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul. l. c.*

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C. ii. 26.*; Dion. *xl. 60.* Velleius, however, who is generally very temperate and judicious in regard to charges of this kind, declines to express an opinion. "Id gratis an accepto HS. centies fecerit, ut accepimus, in medio relinquimus."

struction. There were others besides himself who insisted that equal measure should be dealt to Cæsar and Pompeius. Curio proposed that both the rivals should lay down their arms simultaneously, and thus restore the senate to its legitimate supremacy. The nobles embraced his views with alacrity. When C. Marcellus, the consul, moved, on the first of March, that Cæsar should be disarmed by the appointment of a successor, the tribune interposed his amendment, and obtained, on a division, the overwhelming majority of three hundred and seventy to twenty-two. The people whose affections he had already secured by the promise of measures to relieve them from the charge of their own subsistence, as well as from the ordinary burdens of civil government<sup>1</sup>, eagerly applauded him, and strewed the ground before him with flowers, as before an athlete returning victorious from the arena.<sup>2</sup> Pompeius was absent at the moment, and this discomfiture stunned him. He hastened to appear in the senate, and there made specious professions of his willingness to obey the recent vote and expressed will of the assembly. "But Cæsar," he interposed, "is my friend and connexion; I know that his wishes are for retirement and peace; his eyes are turned towards the city, where his name is held in such deserved

<sup>1</sup> Cælius to Cicero (*ad Div.* viii. 6.): "Levissimè transfugit ad populum et præ Cæsare loqui cœpit; legemque viariam, non dissimilem agrariæ Rulli et alimentariam, quæ jubet ædiles metiri, jactavit." Comp. Cic. *ad Att.* vi. 1. 25.: "Vedius venit mihi obviam cum duobus essedis et rheda equis juncta et lectica et familia magna: pro qua, si Curio legem pertulerit, HS. centena pendat necesse est."

<sup>2</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 27.; Plut. *Pomp.* 58., *Cæs.* 30.

CHAP.  
XIII.

honour, where nothing awaits him but congratulations and triumphs. Let us at once invite him among us by decreeing him a successor; I have given my promise to do my part hereafter towards the pacification of all jealousies and troubles.”<sup>1</sup> It was not difficult to penetrate this flimsy disguise, and Curio insisted more loudly than ever that, unless both the rivals obeyed at once and together, both should equally be declared enemies of the republic. Pompeius retired, baffled and indignant; yet he could afford to smile at the threat, for the senate had not a legion within a thousand miles of Rome, and it could not put down either Cæsar or himself without the assistance of the one against the other. This it felt, and eventually shrunk from a decision; the tribune broke up the assembly.<sup>2</sup> One decree, indeed, it passed, possibly from the very sense of its defenceless state, and to this it took care to give an external semblance of justice. It commanded each of the proconsuls to surrender one legion for the service of the commonwealth in Syria, where it was proposed to muster a large force to oppose the Parthians. Then it was that Pompeius had the assurance to demand back from Cæsar the legion which he had lent him three years before, in addition to that which he was required to furnish to the senate. Nor did Cæsar hesitate to accede to either requisition.<sup>3</sup> He was assured that the

The senate requires both Pompeius and Cæsar to surrender one legion.

<sup>1</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 28.

<sup>2</sup> Appian, *l. c.* 29.; Auct. *B. G.* viii. 53.: “*Senatus frequens in alia omnia abiit.*” Cælius in a letter to Cicero uses precisely the same words.

<sup>3</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 54.: “*Neque obscure hæ duæ legiones uni Cæsari detrahuntur.*” Comp. Appian; Dion.



soldiers would not soon forget the general who had covered them with immortal glory, and he confirmed their fidelity by a present of a thousand sesterces to each.<sup>1</sup> The Parthian war was a mere pretext; as soon as the legions arrived, the senate quartered them at Capua, and flattered itself for a moment that it could now hold the balance between the rivals with a firm and fearless hand.

The cause of Cæsar, however, was not left solely to the defence of the eloquent but profligate Curio. Sulpicius also had lent the whole weight of his authority among his order to the interests of equal justice, and the consul Æmilius Paulus, who built, with the price, it was said, of his treachery<sup>2</sup>, the basilica which has immortalized his name, aided in thwarting the Pompeians at every step. But the blindness of his enemies worked better for the advantage of Cæsar than any exertions of his friends. Appius Claudius, one of the censors, was a furious partizan of Pompeius, and he deemed that he served the interests of the oligarchy by rigorously purifying the list of the senate. He instituted a severe examination into the revenues, the extraction, and the personal merits of its members, and pounced with instinctive sagacity upon the knights, freedmen, or impoverished nobles, whose exclusion he thought would benefit his own party. But he only confirmed and embittered the Cæsarian partialities of his victims. Among others, he proscribed Sallust, the historian, on a charge of

Appius Claudius disgusts some of the senatorial party by the severity which he exercises in the censorship.

<sup>1</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 29.

<sup>2</sup> He received fifteen hundred talents according to Plutarch, *Cæs.* 29.; Appian, *B. C.* ii. 26.; comp. Suet. *Jul.* 29.; Cic. *ad Att.* vi. 3.

CHAP.  
XIII.

profligacy, which was, as far as it went, no doubt fully established. But the insulted rhetorician considered himself no worse than those around him, and revenged himself by joining the ranks of the enemy.<sup>1</sup> If his hand was not strong, nor his purse heavy, there were other means he could use in the service of his new patron, and he has branded the Roman aristocracy with eternal infamy in a series of pungent satires, under the garb of history.

Abortive attempt to expel Curio from the senate. Marcellus and the oligarchs appeal to Pompeius for support.

It was of more importance to sacrifice, if possible, the busy demagogue himself, and Appius would have noted Curio among the unworthy, had not his colleague L. Piso, Cæsar's father-in-law, though timid in opposing the party to which he was generally attached, resisted this extreme proceeding. Appius contented himself with gravely pronouncing the unworthiness of the tribune in the senate, and the tribune retorted by tearing his robes, in token of the insult done to his sacred office.<sup>2</sup> The consul, C. Marcellus, was not daunted by this demonstration, but put the question of his rejection to the vote of the assembly. Curio defended himself with address, and affected moderation; the senate faltered, and refrained from sanctioning his expulsion. Stung with vexation, the nobles clothed themselves in mourning, and made all the parade of a great national calamity.<sup>3</sup> They attended their champion Marcellus to the suburban retreat to which Pompeius had retired, under the plea of his proconsular command. They there thrust upon him the guardianship of the city

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xl. 63.<sup>2</sup> Dion. xl. 64.<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 59.

and placed at his disposal the two legions at Capua.<sup>1</sup> The cautious statesman required that this charge should be confirmed to him by the sanction of the consuls designated for the ensuing year. These were C. Claudius Marcellus<sup>2</sup>, a brother of M. Marcellus, the consul of the year 703, and L. Cornelius Lentulus Crus. They both expressed their full concurrence in the voice of their party<sup>3</sup>, and promised their future support to its chosen protector. It was vainly hoped, from the reports which were said to come from Cæsar's camp, that the proconsul's army would refuse to fight for him, and even that he might be overpowered and destroyed by the indignation of his own troops.<sup>4</sup> Pompeius was still blindly persuaded that his own position was unassailable, and when pressed to make further levies, contemptuously rejected the advice. "I have only to stamp with my foot," he said, "when the occasion requires, to raise legions from the soil of Italy."<sup>5</sup>

Such is the infatuation which seems generally to attend the counsels of a proud and dignified aristocracy assailed by a revolutionary leader. Wrapped in their own tranquil composure, they fail to take account of the contagiousness of an aggressive and lawless spirit. They never make due allowance for the restlessness and excitability of troops who have been debauched by a long career of plunder and power. They calculate on the mere instruments

Infatuation  
of the oli-  
garchs.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 31.; Dion. xl. 64.

<sup>2</sup> He was cousin to C. Claudius Marcellus, the consul of 704.

<sup>3</sup> Dion. xl. 66.

<sup>4</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 29., *Pomp.* 57.

Plut. *Pomp.* 57.



CHAP.  
XIII.

of a selfish leader being at last dissatisfied with their own unequal share in the combination, and on their willingness to secure their gains by turning against him. But the genius of the successful adventurer is chiefly shown in the ascendancy he gains over his adherents, filling them with his own hopes, moulding them to his own feelings, and imbuing them with the sense of being actual partakers in his triumphs. It is this transcendent operation of mind upon mind which can only be fully understood by the same genius which can exert it.

Cæsar's  
triumphant  
reception  
in the Cis-  
alpine pro-  
vince.

Having ascertained the security of his conquests by a residence beyond the Alps through the winter and spring of this year, Cæsar set out in the summer to make a tour of inspection in the Cisalpine province.<sup>1</sup> His immediate object was to solicit the suffrages of the Roman citizens in those regions in favour of his quæstor, M. Antonius, who was a candidate for a vacant seat in the College of Augurs. The zeal with which this accomplished officer had seconded his operations in Gaul, as well as his intrigues in the city, merited the proconsul's warm support; at the same time he was aware that the nobles had determined to sacrifice Antonius to their hatred of himself. When he learnt, before his arrival on the Po, that the suit of his adherent had been crowned with success<sup>2</sup>, he did not discontinue his journey. With his eye steadily fixed

<sup>1</sup> A. U. 704, B. C. 50; Auct. *B. G.* viii. 50.

<sup>2</sup> Antonius was elected to the seat in the College of Augurs vacated by the death of Hortensius, which took place in April. Cælius to Cicero (*ad Div.* viii. 13.); comp. Cic. *ad Att.* vi. 2.; and see Fischer, *Röm. Zeittäfelu.* The nobles put forward L. Domitius Ahenobarbus to contest the honour, but Curio's influence with the tribes secured

on the consulship, though still in the distance, he wished to make the first essay of his popularity, as the conqueror of Gaul, among the municipia and colonies to which his deeds were most familiar. Nor was he disappointed in his anticipations of the esteem in which he was held among them. Wherever he went the roads were crowded with enthusiastic worshippers. The gates of the cities were opened with acclamations, or crowned with triumphal chaplets; victims were sacrificed in token of thanksgiving for his success and safety; the populace was feasted in every market-place, as if in anticipation of the solemn triumph which he had so gloriously earned. The rich spared no profusion in honour of what he had done; the needy thronged around him in hopes of what he might yet do. Having thus traversed the whole of the Cisalpine province, and ascertained the place he held in the affections of its people, he returned to his quarters at Nemetocenna<sup>1</sup>, and assembled all his forces for a grand review. All eyes were turned towards Italy; the progress of hostilities between the rival parties was confessed to the world, and the army, confident in its prowess, devoted to its general, regardless of its moral ties to a city which it only knew by name, awaited with eager expectation the first signal to advance. Thus meeting for the

Enthusiasm  
of Cæsar's  
veterans.

the success of Cæsar's nominee. The election took place in the summer: see Cælius to Cic. *ad Div.* viii. 14.

Velleius (ii. 49.) speaks in glowing language of the good fortune of Hortensius and Lucullus in dying before the breaking out of the civil war. The latter had died soon after Cicero's return from exile. Comp. Cic. *de Prov. Consul.* 9.

<sup>1</sup> Nemetocenna, the Nemetacum of the Itineraries, afterwards Atrebatæ, modern Arras. D'Anville, *in voc.*

CHAP.  
XIII.

first time all together, and recounting their several exploits, the legions burned with hardly controllable excitement. But the time was not yet come. Their ardour was tempered to the proper point by promises and flattery, and their attention was amused by moving from place to place, for the alleged convenience of abundant or healthy quarters. Meanwhile, Cæsar deputed Labienus to administer the Cisalpine province, as a faithful friend on whom he could rely for advancing the interests which he had already excited there in his favour. Rumours did not fail to reach him of the attempts his enemies were making to shake the allegiance of his well-tried lieutenant as well as of his soldiery; but these he despised or disbelieved. He boldly asserted the justice of his claims as a future candidate for the consulship, under the sanction of the privilege accorded to him, and he maintained, with specious confidence, that the senate would not dare the flagrant iniquity of depriving him of his command.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar  
stations  
himself at  
Ravenna,  
whither  
Curio be-  
takes him-  
self.

Towards the close of the year the proconsul withdrew once more into Italy, and stationed himself at Ravenna, with a single legion, the thirteenth, for his immediate protection.<sup>2</sup> The rest of his troops were divided in winter quarters between the Æduan and the Belgian territories. He had been thus far secured from a hostile vote of the senate by the ability with which Curio had maintained his interests, and the election of Antonius and Q. Cassius Longinus, another of his friends<sup>3</sup>, to the

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 51, 52.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. 54.

<sup>3</sup> Quintus was brother to C. Cassius.



tribunate for the ensuing year seemed to furnish him with the legitimate means of prolonging his defence. But the act of the consul in delivering to Pompeius the guardianship of the city was in fact a declaration of war. How long would the safeguard of the laws be extended to one who was thus all but openly denounced as a public enemy? Curio's term of office was on the point of expiring, and his personal safety also was compromised. The tribune made a last appeal to the people; he proclaimed aloud that justice was violated, that the reign of law was over, that a military domination reigned in the city; he entreated the citizens to resist this tyranny, as their fathers had done before them, by refusing military service<sup>1</sup>; and when he had made this final effort he suddenly left the city, and betook himself without a moment's delay to the camp at Ravenna<sup>2</sup>, as the only asylum of persecuted innocence.

Pompeius, meanwhile, was content to keep in its scabbard the sword which the consul had offered to him. His conduct was incomprehensible to his fiery adherents. He shunned the councils of the nobles, and kept aloof from the city, pleading the state of his health or his military command as an excuse for moving from place to place, while he left his party to maintain without a leader the wordy contests of the forum and the curia. They complained of his apparent inactivity in the bitterest language.<sup>3</sup> But he gave no heed to their

The nobles dissatisfied with Pompeius's inaction.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 31.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xl. 66.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 5.: "Quos ego equites Rom., quos senatores vidi! qui acerrime quum cætera tum hoc iter Pompeii vituperarent."

CHAP.  
XIII.

dissatisfaction, nor deigned to reply to the still fiercer denunciations of his whole career, from his first appearance in public life, with which Antonius commenced his term of tribunitian licence.<sup>1</sup> It was just at this time that Cicero returned from Asia, where his correspondents had flattered him to the last with hopes of peace, and indulged him in the idea of claiming a triumph. His services, indeed, though not splendid or striking, were fully adequate to sustain such a claim<sup>2</sup>; and it might be supposed that the nobles would have been glad to attach another imperator firmly to their side by the gratification of a fair ambition. But either his views were not sufficiently decided for the satisfaction of the party generally, or private jealousies prevailed over the common interests of the class. Even Cato urged formal objections with more than his usual stiffness<sup>3</sup>: but whatever might have been the result under other circumstances, the impending crisis occupied men's minds to the exclusion of all other business, and the claim was put aside for a future opportunity of discussion, which never arrived.

Cicero's re-  
turn to  
Italy, Jan.  
A.U. 704.  
B.C. 50.  
Consuls,  
C. Claudius

Cicero appeared in Italy in the military garb, attended by his lictors with laurelled fasces. He could not enter the city, where he would fain have thrown himself at once into the current of affairs;

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 8.: "Antonii concionem . . . in qua erat accusatio Pompeii usque a toga pura," &c.

<sup>2</sup> Abeken (*Cicero in sein. Brief.* p. 242.) shows that Cicero's claim was reasonable. Lentulus had enjoyed a triumph for precisely similar exploits in the same province. Cic. *ad Att.* v. 21. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cato to Cicero (*ad Div.* xv. 5.). He had resisted the claim of Appius Pulcher to a triumph from the same province.

but he was imperfectly informed of the real state of things, and his views regarding them were unsettled. He repaired immediately to Pompeius at his Alban villa, and was received with an appearance of cordiality, and encouraged to persist in his suit for the much-coveted honour.<sup>1</sup> At the same time Pompeius advised him not to embark in the discussions of the senate, if it should be convened outside the walls, ostensibly lest he should get entangled in a quarrel with the tribunes, and so prejudice his chance of success; but in reality, perhaps, lest he should attempt to mediate between parties, and interfere for the re-establishment of concord. Cicero, he knew, was still in correspondence with Cæsar, and the Gallic proconsul's letters breathed nothing but sentiments of moderation and public virtue. Cicero himself could hardly be persuaded that a rupture was inevitable; but his cherished hopes were overborne by the honour of Pompeius's confidence, and he resigned himself to the general conviction of his order, that the power of Cæsar must be controlled by force. He unburdened his feelings to Atticus in unavailing lamentations over the infatuation of his party in allowing that power to grow through nine years of victory, when it might have been crushed in its germ.

In the position which he was about to assume, of actual aggressor in a civil war, Cæsar felt the immense advantage of having appearances in his favour. He availed himself, therefore, of every opening which the violence of his enemies gave

---

CHAP.  
XIII.

---

Marcellus,  
L. Cornelius  
Lentulus  
Crus.

He confers  
with Pom-  
peius on  
the state of  
affairs.

Cæsar sends  
Curio to  
Rome with  
the offer of  
a compro-  
mise.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 4., and comp. foll.



CHAP.  
XIII.

---

him for representing the justice of his claims and the innocence of his designs in the mildest language. He prevailed on Curio to return to Rome at the opening of the new year as the bearer of a message of peace.<sup>1</sup> He offered to surrender at once the Transalpine province, together with all the troops by which its submission was secured; all that he requested was permission to retain the Cisalpine and Illyricum, with the moderate force of two legions.<sup>2</sup> He must have been aware that the passions of his enemies had been lashed into such fury that they would lend no ear to any compromise; they were resolved that Cæsar should not be consul again; the bitterness of his quæstor Antonius in the tribuneship warned them of what they might expect from the proconsul himself in a still higher place.<sup>3</sup> But the conditions which Cæsar offered were a specious bait for the acclamations of the people, and the consuls were very unwilling to suffer them to be publicly known, while Curio and Antonius took care to communicate them to the world, at the same time that they laid them before the senate.<sup>4</sup>

The senate  
refuses  
Cæsar's  
offers, and  
requires  
him to re-  
sign his  
command.

In the debate which followed the consuls diverted the discussion to the question of the general safety. They denounced Cæsar's imputed designs as treason undisguised. The ordinary powers of the commonwealth, said Lentulus, are paralysed;

Cæs. *B. C.* i. 1.; Appian, *B. C.* ii. 32.; Dion. xli. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. G.* viii. in fin.

<sup>3</sup> This was the remark of Pompeius himself to Cicero. Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 8.

<sup>4</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 1.; Dion. xli. 1.; Plut. *Pomp.* 59., *Cæs.* 30.

for once let forms give way to wholesome violence.<sup>1</sup> Nothing remained, he urged, but that Cæsar should surrender his command on a day to be appointed by the senate, and come as a private citizen and sue in the regular course for the suffrages of the tribes. The indulgence which had before been granted him in this particular must bow to the public necessity. It was in vain that voices were still raised for delay, some urging that their party was not yet armed; others, that if Pompeius would depart for his distant province all would be well<sup>2</sup>; there would be no danger of collision between the electric clouds which were about to set the world in a blaze. The decree was put to the vote; the tribunes in Cæsar's interest, Antonius and Q. Cassius, interposed, on the ground of the privilege already accorded him by the people; but their objection was overruled, and the decree was passed triumphantly.<sup>3</sup> The tribunes protested against its illegality, and proclaimed aloud that they were coerced in the exercise of their official functions. Their opponents retorted by once more declaring the state in danger, and by putting on, as a sign of alarm, the black robes of national mourning. The consuls felt that they had already passed the limits of law, and nothing now remained for them but to carry out their violence with a high hand.

The tribunes interpose, but are overruled.

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar says (*B. C. i. 5.*): "Aguntur omnia raptim atque turbate."

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C. i. 2.*

<sup>3</sup> The vote ultimately was almost unanimous. *Dion. xli. 2.* This rapid fluctuation of majorities marks the habitual deference of the Roman assemblies to the opinions of their leaders, which is equally conspicuous in the proceedings of the senate and of the centuries.

CHAP.  
XIII.

They leave  
the city and  
repair to  
Cæsar's  
camp.

The senate was again convened to determine what punishment should be inflicted upon the refractory tribunes; and when it was intimated to them that they would be expelled from the council-hall by force<sup>1</sup>, they wrapped themselves hastily in pretended disguise and fled, together with Curio, as if for their lives. The act of leaving the city was in itself a declaration that they threw up their outraged and defenceless office, for the tribune was forbidden to step outside the walls during the term of his service. Arrayed in all the dignity of violated independence, they knew that they should be eagerly received in the proconsul's quarters, and paraded through the camp as the cause and justification of war.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 5.: "De sua salute septimo die (Jan. 7.) cogitare coguntur." Dion. xli. 3.: ὁ Λεντοῦλος ὑπεξελθεῖν σφισι παρήνεσε. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 33.: ἐκέλευον τοῖς ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἀντώνιον ἐκστῆναι τοῦ συνεδρίου, μή τι καὶ δημαρχοῦντες ὅμως πάθοιεν ἀτοπώτερον. Liv. *Epit.* civ.: "Urbe pulsi." The tribunes quitted Rome on the night of Jan. 6—7. = Nov. 18—19 of the corrected calendar.



## CHAP. XIV.

THE CONSULS PREPARE TO WITHSTAND CÆSAR'S CLAIMS BY FORCE.—CÆSAR CROSSES THE RUBICON.—CONSTERNATION OF HIS ENEMIES.—THEY ABANDON ROME, AND RALLY ROUND POMPEIUS IN CAMPANIA.—CÆSAR ADVANCES TRIUMPHANTLY.—THE SENATE AFFECTS TO NEGOTIATE.—POMPEIUS FALLS BACK UPON LUCERIA.—DOMITIUS MAKES A STAND AT CORFINIUM: IS BETRAYED AND DELIVERED UP BY HIS SOLDIERS: PARDONED BY CÆSAR.—EFFECT OF CÆSAR'S CLEMENCY.—POMPEIUS IS BESIEGED BY CÆSAR IN BRUNDISIUM.—ESCAPES ACROSS THE SEA WITH HIS TROOPS, THE CONSULS AND THE SENATE.—EXPLANATION OF THE APPARENT PUSILLANIMITY OF HIS CONDUCT. (JAN.—MARCH A.U. 705.)

As long as the claims which Cæsar advanced were supported by champions invested with the prerogatives of the Tribunitian office, the senate, composed of men of every party and various shades of opinion, had acted, as we have seen, with extreme vacillation. Though it had permitted itself to be swayed violently from one extreme decision to another at the bidding of its most resolute and turbulent members, yet it had shown, at least on many occasions, a disposition to treat both the rival leaders with equal justice. But the abrupt departure of the tribunes, compelled, as they proclaimed, by the ascendancy of the most violent section of the oligarchical faction, changed at once the position of parties, and decided the place of the wavering and neutral. If any voice was now raised for negotiation or even reflection,

### CHAP. XIV.

---

Success of  
the vi-  
gorous  
measures of  
the senate.

CHAP.  
XIV.

it was drowned by the din of applause which hailed the indignant reclamations of Scipio, Lentulus, and Cato.<sup>1</sup> From this moment the staunchest of the proconsul's adherents in the senate were reduced to silence. If the sacred office had failed to protect the tribunes, what should divert the violence of the consuls from the head of a private partizan? The law had declared itself against Cæsar in the person of its chief organs, the authorities and great council of the state; and the Marian party, the strength of which certainly did not lie in the eminence of its leaders in the city, had neither the courage nor the power to defy it. At the same time, as might be expected, and as doubtless was calculated, the success of violent measures swept along the more moderate councillors, such as Cicero, in the wake of the triumphant leaders of their common party. Even those who had obstinately maintained a neutral position, such as Cato; those who detested and feared both the rival chiefs equally, found themselves reduced to the necessity of embracing the side on which the state had declared itself. In supporting Pompeius at the head of the republic they were compelled to concede to him all his claims, and that entire independence of law and constitutional practice which Cæsar had so plausibly contrasted with the severe treatment he had himself received.

The consuls review their forces, in the prospect of war.

Accordingly, when the consuls convened the senate for the day succeeding the flight of the tribunes, they invited Pompeius to attend at their deliberations, which were held outside the walls of

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 3, 4.

the city, in the temple of Bellona.<sup>1</sup> Lentulus was roused to action by the pressure of his debts, the prospect of military command, and the lavish bribes administered to him by Eastern potentates, impatient for the commencement of anarchy. He boasted among his friends that a second Cornelius was destined to resume the pre-eminence of Sulla. Scipio, as the father-in-law of the general, expected at least to share his distinctions. Pompeius himself was impelled to the arbitrement of arms by the consciousness of his own equivocal position as the proconsul of a province at the head of an army in Italy.<sup>2</sup> The nobles were charmed at the echo of their bold defiance, and were prepared not to relax in the vigour of their policy at the moment when it had gained the ascendant. They listened with satisfaction to the sanguine calculations their leader made of the forces at his disposal. Ten legions he had under arms; seven of these, indeed, were in Spain, where one had been lately levied, in addition to those which the senate had assigned to the proconsul; one only he had in immediate attendance upon his orders in the neighbourhood of Rome, and two more were stationed at Capua, being the same which the government had lately extorted at his bidding from Cæsar. But his strength lay not so much, he affirmed, in the magnitude of the preparations he had made, as in the expectations on which he might confidently rely. A vast portion of the soil of Italy had been parcelled out among the veterans of Sulla, and every motive

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 6.; Dion. xli. 3.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 4.



CHAP.  
XIV.

of gratitude and interest would still attach both them and their descendants to the party which inherited the dictator's principles and obligations. It was on the temper of his rival's forces, however, that Pompeius chiefly relied for the triumphant issue of a struggle he had determined to provoke. The conquerors of Gaul, it was said, were wearied with war, satiated with plunder, discontented with their restless general, dismayed at the prospect of raising their hands against their beloved country.<sup>1</sup> It is not improbable that notions of this kind were disseminated by members of the great families of whom Cæsar kept so many about his own person throughout his campaigns. Certain of these might be in correspondence with his enemies, and not disinclined to betray him, at least if his affairs should seem desperate. Some doubtless who, up to this time, had been most distinguished in foreign fields, declined to follow his banners in the unnatural contest of civil war. Among his chief lieutenants there was one at least who was on the point of abandoning his camp, and arraying himself in arms on the other side. So strong was the conviction upon this point entertained in the circles of the senatorial party, that few of them believed that Cæsar would really venture to throw away the scabbard. But there was no more fatal mistake throughout their proceedings than their confidence in the existence of general disaffection to their leader among the officers and soldiers of the Gallic legions.

Assignment

The senate, though far from expecting the actual

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar. *B. C. i.* 6.; Plut. *Pomp.* 57.

CHAP.  
XIV.

---

of the provinces to  
the leaders  
of the  
senate.

collision of arms, decreed its war-measures with ostentatious energy. Orders were issued for the immediate levy of fresh troops; but, at the same time, so secure did it feel of its position and resources that it made no provision for bringing over the large division of its forces quartered in Spain. It was presumed, indeed, that Cæsar could not venture to withdraw his army of occupation from the conquered provinces of Gaul, and the Iberian legions might be left to menace the forces which, if he invaded Italy, he must leave behind him in the West.<sup>1</sup> In the assignment of provinces which was made at the same sitting of the senate, no respect was paid to the regulations which had been so recently sanctioned by its own decree. The enactment which required an interval of five years between the discharge of office in the city and the assumption of a provincial government was utterly disregarded. Scipio, the consul of the year 702, received Syria, the most important military command in the East. L. Domitius Ahenobarbus was selected to be Cæsar's successor in the Further Gaul, a province which had heretofore been generally reserved for the most devoted partizans of the oligarchy. The Cisalpine Gaul, one of Cæsar's principal strongholds, was confided to Considius; Sicily, Sardinia, and Africa, the three granaries of the city, were entrusted to the vigilance of Cato, Cotta, and Tubero. Cilicia,

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* xvi. 12.: "Putabamus illum metuere, si ad urbem ire cœpisset, ne Gallias amitteret, quas ambas habet inimicissimas præter Transpadanos: ex Hispaniaque sex legiones et magna auxilia habet a tergo."

CHAP.  
XIV.

which secured the alliance of the dependent kings of Asia Minor, was placed under the control of P. Sestius. A trifling and inglorious charge, that of the Campanian coast, satisfied the demands of Cicero. He was extremely unwilling to leave the immediate neighbourhood of Rome, where he conceived that his real sphere of usefulness lay.<sup>1</sup> Cato was no less reluctant to relinquish the contests of the forum, in the danger and excitement of which he delighted, for the grave responsibility of arming in a civil contest. He would have resisted every entreaty or menace of Pompeius, but the voice of the consuls spoke to him with an authority which he could not withstand, and his assuming an active share in the war-measures of the senate gave the stamp of justice to its cause in the eyes at least of an admiring posterity.<sup>2</sup>

Men and  
money  
raised by  
arbitrary re-  
quisitions.

The personages who were selected for these important charges were for the most part distinguished as the boldest and haughtiest champions of aristocratic ascendancy. Marcius Philippus, who was a connexion of Cæsar, and M. Marcellus, who had given offence by his prudent advice not to rush into war, at least until preparation was fully made, were passed over in the distribution of provinces, though both were entitled to them from their consular dignity.<sup>3</sup> The appeal to the people for the Lex Curiata, by which alone the proconsul

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* xvi. 11, 12., *ad Att.* vii. 14.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 53. ; Lucan. i. 128. :

“Victrix causa Deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.”

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 6. : “Philippus et Marcellus privato consilio prætereuntur.”



received legitimate authority for the levy of troops, was omitted in all these appointments, as a superfluous condescension to the privileges of the commonalty. The treasury was freely opened to the requisitions of the generalissimo of the republic, and not in Rome only, but throughout Italy contributions were extorted, and even the temples plundered, to expedite the collection of the materials of war which had been so long neglected.<sup>1</sup>

These measures were the vigorous, or rather the feverish work of a single day. It was not by Curio and the fugitive tribunes, who had left the city the preceding night, that the news of the nobles' defiance was brought to Cæsar's camp. The couriers who set out from Rome one evening later with the account of the next day's debate seem to have outstripped the progress of the private party; and it was upon the receipt of the intelligence which they brought to Ravenna, if we are to believe Cæsar's apologetic statement, that he first determined to draw the sword.<sup>2</sup> He did not fall in with Curio, as we shall see, till some days later, and one stage nearer to Rome. Doubtless he had calculated every step beforehand: his arrangements were made, his preparations complete, nor did he at the last moment waver. It was apparently on the

Cæsar  
harangues  
his troops  
and pro-  
claims his  
wrongs.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *l. c.*: "Tota Italia dilectus habentur, arma imperantur, pecuniæ a municipiis exiguntur, e fanis tolluntur, omnia divina humanaque jura permiscuntur." Comp. Dion. xli. 6.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 7.: "Quibus rebus cognitis," that is, the resolutions of the senate for the division of provinces, by which he was himself superseded, Cæsar harangued his soldiers: it was not till some days later that he met the tribunes at Ariminum (c. 8.). But I am inclined to think that the notices of date here are purposely confused.

CHAP.  
XIV.

eleventh of January, as soon as the news reached him, that he assembled and harangued the thirteenth legion, which was all the force he had with him at Ravenna.<sup>1</sup> The statement of his claims and wrongs was received by the soldiers with expressions of the warmest indignation; though he did not even yet indicate publicly the course he had determined to adopt, he felt the pulse of his followers, and satisfied himself once more of their devotion to him. The officers were attached to him from love, hope, and gratitude, and the great mass of the common soldiers, of provincial or foreign birth, had no sympathy with the country whose name only they bore. He had already doubled their pay<sup>2</sup>, while yet in comparative poverty; what might they not expect from his munificence when the riches of the world should be at his disposal?

Cæsar prepares to invade Italy.

The city of Ravenna, at which Cæsar had fixed the quarters of his scanty band, though lying out of the direct line of the Æmilian way, the prin-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 7. Appian (*B. C.* ii. 32.) says that Curio reached Rome in three days from Ravenna. We must suppose that couriers left Rome with the news of the debate which took place in the senate on the following day, in the evening of the 7th, and arrived at Ravenna within a similar period. Cæsar's address to the soldiers could hardly be later than the next day, that is, the 11th: yet it does not appear that he crossed the Rubicon before the night of the 15th—16th, if we may depend upon the accuracy of Plutarch's calculation of 60 days from thence to the taking of Brundisium.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 26.: "Legionibus stipendium in perpetuum duplicavit." He does not state the exact time, but mentions this among the various artifices by which Cæsar attached different classes of the citizens to his rising fortunes. The legionary's pay in the time of Polybius was two obols, equivalent in round numbers to five ases (Polyb. vi. 39.). Tacitus (*Ann.* i. 17.) mentions ten ases as the ordinary stipendium in his day. See the note on Suet. *L. c.* ed. Baumgarten-Crusius, from Lipsius and Gronovius.

cipal communication between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, was the chief military station of that province. It was connected with this main trunk by a secondary route, which branched off from Ariminum, and skirted the coast of the Adriatic, passing through Ravenna to Aquileia. About ten miles from Ariminum, and twice that distance from Ravenna, the frontier of Italy and Gaul was traced by the stream of the Rubicon.<sup>1</sup> This little river, red with the drainage of the peat mosses from which it descends<sup>2</sup>, is formed by the union of three mountain torrents, and is nearly dry in the summer, like most of the watercourses on the eastern side of the Apennines. In the month of November the wintry flood might present a barrier more worthy of the important position which it once occupied<sup>3</sup>; but the northern frontier of Italy had long been secure from invasion, and the channel was spanned by a bridge of no great dimensions.<sup>4</sup> Cæsar seems to have made his last arrangements in secret, and concealed his design till the moment he had fixed for its accomplishment. On the morning of the fifteenth he sent forward some cohorts to the river, while he remained himself at Ravenna, and showed himself at a public spectacle throughout the day. He invited company to his table, and entertained them with his usual ease and affability. It was not till sunset

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 31.; Plut. *Cæs.* 20.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan, i. 214.: "Puniceus Rubicon." The name of the stream is evidently derived from its colour.

<sup>3</sup> The 15th of January, A. U. 705, corresponded with Nov. 27. B. C. 50.; Fischer, *R. Z.*

<sup>4</sup> Suetonius (*l. c.*) calls it *ponticulus*.



CHAP.  
XIV.

that he made an excuse for a brief absence, and then, mounting a car yoked with mules, hired from a mill in the vicinity, hastened with only a few attendants to overtake his soldiers at the appointed spot. In his anxiety to avoid the risk of being encountered and his movements divulged, he left the high road, and soon lost his way in the by-paths of the country. One after another the torches of his party became extinguished, and he was left in total darkness. It was only by taking a peasant for a guide and alighting from his vehicle that he at last reached his destination.<sup>1</sup>

The passage  
of the Ru-  
bicon.

The ancients amused themselves with picturing the guilty hesitation with which the founder of a line of despots stood, as they imagined, on the brink of the fatal river, and paused for an instant before he committed the irrevocable act, pregnant with the destinies of a long futurity. Cæsar, indeed, in his Commentaries, makes no allusion to the passage of the Rubicon, and, at the moment of stepping on the bridge, his mind was probably absorbed in the arrangements he had made for the march of his legions, or for their reception by his friends in Ariminum. We may feel an interest, however, in remarking how the incident was coloured by the imaginations of its first narrators; and the old tradition recorded by Suetonius is too picturesque and too characteristic of the Italian cast of legend to be passed by without notice. "Even now," Cæsar had said, "we may return; if we cross the bridge, arms must decide the contest." At that moment of suspense there appeared suddenly the

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul. l. c.*; Plut. *Cæs.* 32.

figure of a youth, remarkable for comeliness and stature, playing on a flute, the pastoral emblem of peace and security. The shepherds about the spot mingled with the soldiers, and straggled towards him, captivated by his simple airs; when, with a violent movement, he snatched a trumpet from one of the military band, rushed with it to the bank of the river, and blowing a furious blast of martial music, leapt into the water, and disappeared on the opposite side. "Let us advance," exclaimed Cæsar, "where the gods direct, and our enemies invite us. Be the die cast." The soldiers dashed across the bridge or the ford, and, giving them not an instant for reflection, the bold invader led them straight to Ariminum, entering its undefended walls with the first break of dawn.<sup>1</sup> It was there that he met Curio and the fugitive tribunes. They had no occasion to disclose their grievances. While they had lingered on their way, inflaming perhaps the indignation of their adherents in the towns through which they passed, by the recital of the proceedings in Rome, the champion of the commons had already heard the story of their wrongs, and had taken up arms ostensibly to avenge their violated sanctity.

The occupation of Ariminum was an explicit declaration of war; but Cæsar was not in a con-

Consternation of the city.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 32.; comp. Appian. ii. 35.; Plut. *Cæs.* 32. Lucan (i. 186.) introduces on this occasion the apparition of the goddess Roma. In his times, it should be remembered, the idea of Rome as a living abstraction began to take the place of the conceptions of the popular mythology. The famous Prosopopœia of the Genius of the Cape, whom Camoens summons to address the Portuguese navigators, has far less connexion with the ideas of real life.

CHAP  
XIV.

dition to push forward immediately. It was from thence, he tells us, that he despatched orders for the movement of his troops<sup>1</sup>; one legion, the twelfth, reached him within a fortnight, and another, the eighth, within a month from that time. These, together with the thirteenth legion, which he had with him, were the forces with which he had determined to confront the army of the consuls; for Cæsar also had made his calculations regarding the disposition of the Italians, and the fidelity of the troops opposed to him, and reckoned upon deriving his most copious resources from the enemy's own camp. Three of his legions were led to the neighbourhood of Narbo, under the command of Fabius, in order to check the advance of the Pompeian lieutenants from Spain. The remainder of his forces were withdrawn perhaps gradually from their winter-quarters and concentrated in the south of Gaul, to support either the right or left wing of his position. But for some days the position of the invader, with a mere handful of soldiers about him, was extremely precarious. Had the three legions of Pompeius been arrayed in his front, and led against him by officers in whom they confided, a prompt attack could hardly have failed to destroy him. But these troops were divided and distant; perhaps their officers knew, what at least was carefully concealed from the public, that they could not be relied on; and the counsels of the nobles had relapsed once more into

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar. *B. C.* i. 8.; Lucan. 396.:

“Deseruere cavo tentoria fixa Lemano,” &c.



feebleness and vacillation. They had indulged in incredulity to the last, and the news that Cæsar had actually crossed the frontier came upon them like a clap of thunder. The conqueror of the northern world was marching, as they believed, upon them. He who had climbed the Alps and bridged the Rhine and bestridden the ocean<sup>1</sup>, was daily, so the rumour ran, achieving his twenty miles on the broad and solid footing of their own military way. Nor was it only the Cæsar of the Curia and the Forum who was rapidly approaching their walls. Bold and reckless as he had shown himself in the civic contests of the gown, he had learnt cruelty by habitual shedding of blood; he had become, they were assured, in his nine years' intercourse with the barbarians, more ferocious than the Gauls themselves. Even his legions were not of pure Roman extraction, but filled with the fiercest warriors of the races he had subdued.<sup>2</sup> The name of the half-clad savages of the North was still a sound of panic dread to the populations of Italy. The Romans quailed before a second apparition of the bearded and brawny victors of the day of Allia, much as the citizens of London shuddered at the approach of the Highlanders, the shock of whose charge had overthrown horse and man at the rout of Gladsmuir. For such, they believed, were the

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. i. 369. :

“ Hæc manus ut victum post terga relinqueret orbem  
Oceani tumidas remo compescuit undas,  
Fregit et Arctoo spumantem vortice Rhenum.”

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. ii. 535. :

“ Gallica per gelidas rabies effunditur Alpes.”

CHAP.  
XIV.

followers of the patrician renegade, who were even now thundering down the Flaminian Way, bursting through the defiles of the Apennines, and choking the valleys of the Tiber and Nar with clouds of barbarian cavalry.<sup>1</sup>

The chiefs  
of the senate  
evacuate  
Rome.

At this moment Cæsar, as we have seen, was waiting with only a few cohorts at Ariminum for the arrival of the succours, without which, bold as he was, even he would have deemed it madness to advance against the city. But the elements of his strength were magnified into colossal proportions by the excited imaginations of the men who, only a week before, had most affected to despise them. They counted his eleven legions, his indefinite resources of Gaulish cavalry, the favour of the Transpadanes, the zeal of the city mob, the fanatic devotion to him of the depraved and ruined of all classes. He had secured the favour of the publicani by his successful vindication of their claims; the money-lenders were dissatisfied with the sumptuary reforms which Pompeius had encouraged; and, lastly, the agriculturists of Italy were indifferent to the empty names of freedom and the republic, and would have lent their weight to the maintenance of a kingly tyranny if only they could avert the calamities of war. In the midst of this general panic, the consuls and the senate, with

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. i. 475. :

“Qua Nar Tiberino illabitur amni  
Barbaricas sævi discurrere Cæsaris alas.  
Ipsam omnes aquilas collataque signa ferentem  
Agmine non uno densisque incedere castris.  
Nec qualem meminere vident; majorque ferusque  
Mentibus occurrit, victoque immanior hoste.”

their friends and adherents, turned anxiously for counsel and encouragement to Pompeius. But the hero had withdrawn from the neighbourhood of the city immediately on the arrival of the fatal news. He imparted his views and plans to no one. He had an interview with Cicero at Formiæ; but the orator, irresolute and desponding himself, could get no intimation from his leader of the tactics by which he meant to oppose the invader. The streets of Rome were crowded with an agitated multitude of all ranks and classes. Consulars and patricians descended from the steps of their palaces and led the long procession of fugitives down the Appian way to Capua and the South.<sup>1</sup> Such was the confusion of the moment that the rulers of the state left the city without removing the public treasure in the coffers of the temple of Saturn.<sup>2</sup> They were not less negligent of their own private possessions, all of which they abandoned to the risk of pillage by the mob, even before the public enemy should arrive to seize them. Many indeed of the nobles still retained their blind confidence in Pompeius, and calculated on a speedy return, as the result of some deep-laid schemes which they supposed him to have planned in secret. But his flight operated in general to increase the terror, and no sacrifice was thought too great to make for the safety of their bare lives.

At the moment when great political principles meet in decisive conflict, it may be observed that the inclinations of the mass of the honourable and

The calumnies against Cæsar deter many

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xli. 7, 8.; Lucan. i. 486.; comp. Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 10—12.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 15.; Cæs. *B. C.* i. 14.



CHAP.  
XIV.

---

well-intentioned men from embracing his cause.

well-intentioned, who constitute perhaps generally the numerical strength of a party, are swayed in favour of the side which seems to embrace the men of highest renown for patriotism and probity. It is much easier to distinguish who are the most honest men, than to discover which are the soundest principles; and it seems safer to choose the side which boasts of philosophers and patriots in its ranks than that which is branded as the refuge of spendthrifts and apostates. It was with an instinctive sense of this bias of the human mind that the nobles had studied all along to represent the followers of their enemy's fortunes as none other than the needy and rapacious, the scum of all orders of the community. They did not affect to insinuate that their vileness made them less dangerous, but they were such, they maintained, as no man who wished to keep up the appearance of public virtue could decently associate with. We may remember that Cæsar, as he appeared to the eyes of the Roman nobility at this period of his career, was an adventurer of dissolute manners and the loosest principles. For many years all his actions had been blackened by the systematic calumnies with which he was assailed, even beyond the common measure which fell to the lot of contemporary statesmen. It required more than usual candour, particularly in his avowed enemies, to divest the mind of a peculiar prejudice against him. Nevertheless, his conduct as a statesman and warrior in his foreign governments might have served to disabuse public opinion of its grossest errors in this respect. Assuredly none

could fairly deny that he had formed to himself friends and admirers from among men of the best families, and the highest principles. A Cicero, a Crassus, a Brutus, had been his most devoted partizans. The connexions of his own family, the Cæsars, the Pisos, the Marcii, held a high place in the estimation of their countrymen. But, in spite of the plainness of this fact, the charge was constantly reiterated; the men whom the arch-traitor could attach to himself could be none, it was insisted, but monsters of vice, cruelty and profligacy. The lie prevailed by repetition; and the waverers, unable to see clearly for themselves through the cloud of interested sophistry, were frightened, if not convinced, and learnt to shrink with horror from a cause which was thus atrociously misrepresented. Cicero himself, of all men the most easily deceived by the colouring of political partizans, was deluded by this clamour. Much as he hated and feared the nobles, from whose victory he expected nothing but violence and illegal usurpation, he had not the firmness fairly to review the cause and objects for which Cæsar was in arms. If the invader's personal aim was self-aggrandizement, the same was at least equally true of his opponent. If Pompeius, on the other hand, had refrained hitherto from acts of violence, every one was ready to acknowledge that he was deterred by no principle; it was only because the necessities of the senate had compelled it to throw its powers unreservedly into his hands. The event of the impending contest would undoubtedly place him, if successful, in the position he had long coveted,

CHAP.  
XIV.

of a military tyrant. The power of the oligarchy, upon which he leaned, hemmed in on all sides by the encroachment of popular influences, could only be maintained by arms, and arms could not fail to raise their bearer to the despot's throne. But Cæsar's success would not be confined to himself personally; it would be the triumph of the classes from whose fresh blood and simple habits the renovation of the commonwealth might not unreasonably be hoped. The Transpadanes, for instance, claimed the boon of citizenship; and, setting aside blind prejudices, no pretender to a statesman's foresight could deny the advantage of thus converting lukewarm allies into zealous members of the commonwealth. The principle for which their patron contended was ripe for extension to other communities similarly circumstanced, and it was apparent that a vast but bloodless revolution might be effected under the auspices of a Marian dictatorship. The interest which the moneyed classes took in Cæsar's success was another proof that the victory of the oligarchy could only lead to more hopeless embarrassments, while that of the popular faction might establish peace upon a solid foundation.<sup>1</sup> The native races of Italy, notwithstanding all the intrigues and violence of the long ascendant faction, still retained their old sympathy for the popular side; and they too had

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 7. § 5., written xiii. Kal. Jan. A. U. 704.: "An publicanos (bonos putas?) qui nunquam firmi, sed nunc Cæsari sunt amicissimi: an fœneratores? an agricolas? quibus optatissimum est otium. Nisi eos timere putas, ne sub regno sint, qui id nunquam dummodo otiosi sint, recusarunt."



claims of justice which they had long despaired of urging upon the dominant oligarchy. The soil on which the forces of Pompeius were standing was mined beneath their feet. So far from his being able to raise legions by stamping on the ground, the first call of the old general upon his veterans throughout the peninsula was answered, as we shall see, by the open defection of cities and colonies. Surely these were signs of the times upon which the true patriot ought to have meditated, before he enlisted on the side against which was arrayed such a mass of interests and affections. It is not the province of the historian to condemn or absolve the great names of human annals. He leaves the philosophic moralist to denounce crimes or errors, upon a full survey of the character and position of the men and their times; but it is his business to distinguish, in analysing the causes of events, between the personal views of the actors in revolutions and the general interests which their conduct subserved, and to claim for their deeds the sympathy of posterity in proportion as they tended to the benefit of mankind. He may be allowed to lament the pettiness of the statesmen of this epoch, and the narrow idea they formed of public interests in the contest between Cæsar and his rival. Above all, he must regret that a man to whom we owe so much affection as Cicero should have been deceived by a selfish and hypocritical outcry; for Cicero succeeded in persuading himself that the real patriots were all on the side of the oligarchy, and that it was his duty as a philo-

CHAP.  
XIV.

Political  
mistake of  
the nobles  
in abandon-  
ing Rome.

sopher to follow, not the truth, but the true men, not right judgment, but honourable sentiment.<sup>1</sup>

The consuls and senate, as we have seen, had abandoned the city on the first rumour of Cæsar's advance to Ariminum. The political effects of this rash step seem to have been little considered by them; but, in fact, in the view of the great mass of the Roman people, the abandonment of the city was equivalent to an abdication of all legitimate authority.<sup>2</sup> Once only, in the history of the nation, had a Roman emperor, in the centre of his camp, assumed to represent the majesty of the republic, and refused to obey the convention of a coerced and beleaguered senate. But the example of Camillus was justified by his success; and it was only in the expectation of a speedy and triumphant return that the magistrates of Rome could hope to retain their authority at a distance from the Forum and the Capitol. Cæsar saw how fatal a blunder his opponents had committed. A great change had taken place in the temper of the people since the last civil wars. In the contest of Sulla and Marius the whole population was divided into two hostile camps; now the great mass was quiescent; its predilections were not strong enough to rouse it to vigorous action in behalf of either. Its instinct taught it that another civil war could only present

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* xiv. 18.: "Illud me movet quod video omnes bonos abesse Roma." *Ad Att.* vii. 20.: "Ad fugam hortatur amicitia Cnæi, causa bonorum, turpitudine conjungendi cum tyranno" (viii. 1.).

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 11.: "Non est inquit (Pompeius) in parietibus respublica: at in aris et focis: fecit idem Themistocles . . . at idem Pericles non fecit . . . Nostri olim, urbe reliqua capta, arcem tamen retinuerunt."

it with a choice of masters. Whichever of the rival chieftains first occupied Rome, he would secure the acquiescence and apparent approbation of the citizens, and obtain the most specious sanction to his usurpation.

The consuls retired along the Appian way instead of advancing upon the Flaminian. Such was their first false step, and it is possible that it saved Cæsar from immediate destruction. Yet he could not venture to move southward without reinforcements, while to halt at the first moment of invasion might seem a sign of weakness and an omen of discomfiture. The second move of his enemies relieved him from this difficulty. Pompeius had the weakness to keep up the farce of negotiations by sending L. Cæsar, a young kinsman of the pro-consul, to solicit a final declaration of his demands.<sup>1</sup> To complicate the matter still more, and give further pretence for procrastination, the young ambassador was instructed to speak particularly of the good feeling of Pompeius towards his rival, and his personal wish to accommodate matters in a liberal way; as if a feud so ancient, and lately grown so deadly between the Marian camp and the Sullan, could be resolved into an affair of private and personal jealousy. Pompeius indeed had his own reasons for wishing to gain time to complete the preparations he contemplated in Italy and throughout the provinces; but he lost by delay far more than he gained, for the activity of his rival could profit more by an hour than his own stately movements by a day. To these over-

Pompeius  
negotiates  
with Cæsar  
in order to  
gain time.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 8.



CHAP.  
XIV.Defection of  
Labienus.

tures, the insincerity of which was too obvious to deceive, Cæsar replied with an energetic exposition of the claims he had repeatedly advanced, the sum of which was his demand that equal measure should be dealt to Pompeius and himself, and the armies of each imperator disbanded simultaneously. Such was the ultimatum with which the envoy was dismissed; and this was the moment which Labienus seized for the defection which he had been meditating.<sup>1</sup> The desertion of so able an officer at this juncture seems to prove how precarious, in a military point of view, the position of his leader must have appeared. But Labienus could only see what was immediately before him; he could not appreciate the more remote resources on which Cæsar calculated, or the signs of distraction and imbecility already half disclosed by his opponents. It was on the twenty-second of January that the fugitive was received by Pompeius in his quarters at Teanum.<sup>2</sup> Cæsar contemptuously sent his baggage after him<sup>3</sup>; but the nobles stomached this affront, and vied with each other in hailing the accession to their side with rapturous anticipations of triumph. Even Cicero, who had been plunged into the most abject despondency, and was only thinking how best to reconcile his position as a leader of the

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 11., *ad Div.* xiv. 14.: "Labienus rem meliorem fecit. Adjuvat etiam Piso quod ab urbe discedit, et sceleris condemnat generum suum." Dion. xli. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 13.: "Labienus Teanum venit, a. d. ix. Kal. Febr." See Fischer, *R. Z.* It must be remembered that January, before the Julian correction, had only 29 days. Drumann, Billerbeck, Arnold, and others make this day the 24th.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 34.

senatorial party with the means of recovering the favour of the enemy, now broke into exulting vituperation of the new Hannibal, the plunderer of Italy.<sup>1</sup> He was well pleased to think that his commission in Campania gave him the readiest access to his beloved city; but Cato murmured loudly against his own destination to Sicily, at a time when all eyes were turned towards Rome, and the first question to be debated in the senate would be the acceptance or rejection of Cæsar's submission.<sup>2</sup>

But L. Cæsar had hardly returned to headquarters before the news arrived of further aggressions on the part of this audacious rebel. Cæsar's advance more than counterbalanced the impression made by his lieutenant's defection. Three great roads converged upon Ariminum from the south. One led from Etruria to the confines of the Gallic province, through the passes by which Brennus had penetrated to Clusium; another, the famous Way of Flaminius, was the direct route from Rome; a third led from Brundisium and the southern districts of the peninsula, taking the line of the Adriatic coast from Ancona. Arretium, Iguvium, and Auximum were important fortresses for the defence of these roads respectively against an invader from the north. Their occupation

Cæsar advances and takes Iguvium, Arretium, and Auximum.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* l. c.: "Utrum de Imperatore populi Romani an de Hannibale loquimur? O hominem amentem et miserum qui ne umbram quidem unquam τοῦ καλοῦ viderit!"

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 15.: "Cato enim ipse jam servire quam pugnare mavult. Sed tamen ait se in senatu adesse velle quum de conditionibus agatur . . . Ita quod maxime opus est in Siciliam ire non curat; quod metuo ne obsit, in senatu esse vult."

CHAP.  
XIV.

would enable Cæsar to advance upon either of the three positions which the enemy might adopt; for Pompeius might either concentrate his forces to cover Rome, or withdraw to the right towards Brundisium to keep open his communications with the eastern provinces, or to the left to maintain himself at Centumcellæ, while he recalled to his standard the legions in Spain. Cæsar's forces were still limited to a single legion. Antonius with five cohorts seized upon Arretium, which was undefended. At the same moment Thermus, to whom the senate had entrusted Iguvium and the country of Umbria which it covered, first abandoned his post, rendered untenable by the disaffection of the inhabitants, and was straightway abandoned by his own soldiers; Auximum, meanwhile, rose against Varus, and compelled him to a hasty retreat, while it opened its gates to Cæsar in person.<sup>1</sup>

The senate attempts again to negotiate, and breaks up Cæsar's band of gladiators at Capua.

The senate, though alarmed and irritated at the progress of an enemy who gave his opponents not a moment to breathe, still indulged the hope that he would suffer himself to be persuaded to withdraw from the places he had occupied, and come to Rome, after disbanding his forces, there to discuss, as a private citizen, the wrongs of which he complained. This was still the only condition upon which the consuls would condescend to treat, and it was with corresponding instructions that L. Cæsar was sent a second time to the quarters of the invader.<sup>2</sup> Meanwhile the levy of troops on the part of the senate proceeded slowly and with

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. i. 11—13.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. B. C. i. 10.



little success. The reluctance of the Italians to enlist became alarmingly apparent. The magistrates of the towns showed the strongest disposition to hail the approach of Cæsar's troops as a deliverance from the tyranny of the dominant class.<sup>1</sup> From the moment that the consuls left Rome there was no further prospect of enlisting in the capital for the service of the state.<sup>2</sup> Lentulus would have stooped to a measure which revolted the pride of his associates. He proposed to draft into the legions of the republic the gladiators, some thousands in number, whom Cæsar kept in training at Capua.<sup>3</sup> But his followers remonstrated so warmly against this proposal, which was, indeed, highly impolitic as well as illegal, that he was compelled to relinquish it. It was a difficult matter, however, to dispose of a large body of swordsmen, skilful and well-armed, and accustomed to regard Cæsar as their patron; and the more so, as he might have no scruple himself in employing them in his own service. The numerous legionary force which would be requisite for controlling them, while collected in one spot, could not possibly be spared for such a service. After much deliberation it was resolved to distribute them in small parties among the households of the principal nobles, and break their strength and spirit by dispersion.

Attius Varus, Thermus, Lentulus Spinther, Faustus Sulla, and Libo, with their soldiers or

Pompeius  
falls back  
upon Lu-  
ceria.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 15. He mentions particularly the case of Cingulum, a town on which Labienus had conferred great benefactions.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 14. : "Dilectus intra urbem intermittuntur."

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *l. c.*

CHAP.  
XIV.

abandoned by them, were now in full retreat from Picenum towards Apulia.<sup>1</sup> Pompeius appointed Larinum, on the frontier of the latter province, as the rallying point for one division of his forces, while another, under Domitius, was posted in advance at Corfinium, there to collect the new levies from the centre of Italy.<sup>2</sup> He left Teanum in Campania at the end of January for Larinum, and from thence despatched pressing orders to the consuls to return to Rome, and carry off the public treasure which had been left behind.<sup>3</sup> The want of money was felt not less severely than that of men; but the consuls did not choose to risk falling into Cæsar's hands by a retrograde movement, and refused to obey their general's orders. Pompeius himself, shocked perhaps at the arrival of his lieutenants from Picenum with the account of their disasters in that quarter, fell back upon Luceria; and it was now evident that his eyes were turned towards Brundisium, and that he contemplated the abandonment of Italy altogether rather than oppose the public enemy in the field.<sup>4</sup> The first suspicion of this intention called forth from his partizans a storm of indignant remonstrance. Cowardice or treachery, they conceived,

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. ii. 461. foll. :

"Gens Etrusca fuga trepidi nudata Libonis,  
Jusque sui pulso jam perdidit Umbria Thermo.  
Nec gerit auspicis civilia bella paternis  
Cæsaris auditæ conversus nomine Sulla.  
Varus ut admotæ pulsarunt Auximon alæ," &c.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 15.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 21., writing from Cales, a. d. vi. Id. Feb.=Feb. 8.

<sup>4</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 23., writing from Formiæ, iv. Id. Feb.=Feb. 10.

alone could have dictated it, and the bravest of their leaders broke into open disobedience to the commands of a champion of whose perfidy they were now convinced.

CHAP.  
XIV.

---

The arrival of the twelfth legion having given Cæsar the means of acting against larger forces, he advanced upon Corfinium early in February. He hardly condescended to notice the terms now brought by his kinsman for the second time, for every succeeding day had disclosed to him the weakness of the enemy and the increasing strength of his own arms. He speedily overran Picenum, taking the fortresses of Cingulum and Asculum, on his way, without opposition. But before Corfinium the Pompeian forces were assembled in formidable numbers, and were commanded by an officer of tried conduct and firmness. Domitius, whose zeal in the cause was inflamed by his recent appointment as Cæsar's successor in the Further Gaul, was determined to make a stand for the defence of Italy.<sup>2</sup> He hated the person of his leader, he despised his policy, and his command to retreat he threw to the winds. At the same time he sent pressing messages to the consular camp, urging Pompeius to advance to his assistance, and representing the smallness of the enemy's forces, the number and confidence of his own. At Corfinium and in the neighbourhood he had assembled thirty cohorts: of these many indeed were raw levies, and his oldest veterans had seen perhaps no other service than the beleaguerment of the forum during

Domitius  
makes a  
stand at  
Corfinium.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 16. foll.; Dion. xli. 10, 11.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 38.; Lucan. ii. 478. foll.



CHAP.  
XIV.

Milo's trial.<sup>1</sup> But Pompeius, dismayed at the repeated defection of his troops, had no confidence in his lieutenant's assurances. He declared that he could not in prudence advance to his succour, that in the present temper of the army Italy was untenable, and that to hazard a general engagement with Cæsar would be to rush into certain ruin.

Cæsar be-  
leaguers  
Corfinium,  
which the  
Pompeians  
betray into  
his hands.

Domitius was not to be discouraged even by his leader's desertion; but the disposition he made of his troops was unskilful. He weakened his force by trying to extend protection to Sulmo and the neighbouring towns, and lost one division after another, until he found himself blocked up in Corfinium by an enemy whose strength and audacity were increased by these bloodless successes. A third legion, the eighth, now reached Cæsar's quarters, attended by twenty-two cohorts of Gaulish auxiliaries, and a detachment of cavalry from Noricum. The siege was vigorously pressed; for the delay of a few days was galling to him, while Pompeius, with diminished forces and fast ebbing courage, was evidently preparing to escape from his hands by flight across the sea. But Corfinium could not be left behind; and, indeed, it was a prize second only in richness and importance to Luceria or Brundisium. For besides the military stores amassed in it, and the vaunted strength of

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. *l. c.* :

“Tua classica servat  
Oppositus quondam polluto tiro Miloni.”

These recruits were the levies Pompeius had made ostensibly for his service in Spain.

its numerous garrison, Domitius had received into his citadel many of the knights and most distinguished senators, who sought refuge from the invader under the protection of a favourite leader. Domitius himself made every exertion to justify their confidence. He conducted the war as an affair of personal interest, promising his soldiers large assignments of land from his own private possessions, after the manner of a principal rather than a subordinate lieutenant.<sup>1</sup> But his exhortations to the soldiery were at first coldly received, and soon slighted altogether. Disaffection was rife within the walls of Corfinium, as before at Iguvium and Asculum. The heart of the old Italian confederacy throbbed at the presence of Cæsar and the banners of Marius. The rumour spread that Pompeius dared not advance, and had abandoned his followers to their fate. Secret intercourse was held with the besieger, and after a few days the conspiracy broke out into open mutiny, the troops proclaiming their determination to surrender the place, with all that it contained, into the enemy's hands. The nobles, alarmed for their lives, could obtain no other indulgence than permission to make terms for themselves by special application to Cæsar. Lentulus Spinther, who was one of the number, acted as their spokesman; and he rightly conceived that to expatiate on the favours he had formerly experienced was the surest means of propitiating a generous conqueror. The time had now come for Cæsar to dispel the fears of massacre and proscription which had driven a

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. i. 17.; Dion. xli. 11.

CHAP.  
XIV.

large proportion of the senatorial party into arms against him.<sup>1</sup> His reply was full of mildness and condescension; he apologized for the necessity in which he was placed of asserting his rights by an act of violence against the state, while he insinuated, emboldened by success, that his opponents were a factious minority, and himself the real champion of freedom and the commonwealth.<sup>2</sup>

Cæsar  
grants life  
and liberty  
to Domitius  
and the  
Pompeian  
leaders.

Domitius expected to be himself marked out as the special object of the conqueror's vengeance. Cæsar was determined to render him a signal instance of his clemency. On the eve of surrender the Pompeian leader applied to his physician for poison, and even, it was said, compelled him with his drawn sword to administer a potion. But the draught had not produced its anticipated effect, when he was informed that the victor was disposed not only to spare the lives of his prisoners, but to treat them with marked indulgence. He now, in the most abject manner, lamented his precipitation; but the physician had deceived him with a narcotic, and he lived to enjoy, and afterwards abuse, his captor's clemency.<sup>3</sup> Cæsar, if we may believe his own direct statement in contradiction to an obscure rumour related by Cicero, went so far in his generosity as to restore to Domitius the large treasure in his military chest<sup>4</sup>; an act which

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 23.

<sup>2</sup> Cæsar was seven days before Corfinium, Feb. 14—21.: "Septem dies ad Corfinium commoratur." Cæs. *B. C.* i. 33.

<sup>3</sup> This story is told by Suetonius, Seneca, Pliny, and Plutarch. See Drumann, iii. 22.

<sup>4</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 23.; Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 14. Appian (*B. C.* ii. 39.) confirms Cæsar's statement. Some of Cæsar's adherents seem not to



is rendered credible by the proconsul's natural wish to show the Roman people that they had no more to fear from his want of money than from his thirst for blood. He then pressed his prisoners to acknowledge his claims and share in the brightening prospects of his enterprize. This offer the men of note steadily declined, but the fresh Italian recruits hailed the summons with enthusiasm, and speedily ranged themselves under the banner which they regarded as their own.

The effect of this clemency, hitherto unexampled in the civil wars of the Romans, became immediately apparent. Cicero bears unwilling testimony to the consummate adroitness of the enemy's proceedings.<sup>1</sup> He had killed nobody, he had taken nothing from anybody; if he proceeded thus he would become the object of universal love and enthusiasm. Such was the feeling springing up among the population of Campania; the people of the country towns discoursed with Cicero on the state of public affairs; and he saw but too plainly from their conversation that the heart of Italy was estranged from the consuls and senate: peace was the general wish even among those who had no Marian predilections, and the tranquil possession of property outweighed the antiquated names of law and liberty.<sup>2</sup> And then the philosopher sighed

Salutary  
effects of  
this clemency.

have admired their leader's clemency. See the letter of Cicero's witty correspondent Cælius, *ad Div.* viii. 15. But Cælius was personally hostile to Domitius: comp. *ad Div.* viii. 12.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *l. c.*: "Multum mecum municipales homines loquuntur, multum rusticani. Nihil prorsus aliud curant, nisi agros nisi villulas nisi nummulos suos."

CHAP.  
XIV.

It offers a  
favourable  
contrast to  
the fero-  
cious threats  
of his ad-  
versaries.

to think how much the errors and vices of his party had contributed to bring about this state of political indifference.

But, in truth, the conduct of Cæsar was set off in brighter colours from its contrast with the opposite disposition manifested by his opponents. The senate had proclaimed him a public enemy, and his adherents and followers in arms were naturally included in the same sentence. Nor was this enough. At the moment of leaving Rome, it determined, at the instigation of the ferocious Domitius, to drive the neutral and the waverers into the Pompeian camp by terror. It declared that every citizen who remained behind at Rome should be deemed a Cæsarian, and thus provided itself with a pretext for the extreme measures against the city which it seems to have already contemplated.<sup>1</sup> Not only were the young nobles loud in their denunciations of proscription and massacre; the older and more dignified were already parcelling out among themselves in imagination the spoils of the commonwealth. Pompeius himself had the name of Sulla always in his mouth: "Sulla could do this, why should not I do the same?"<sup>2</sup> was his constant argument. To propose the great dictator for his model was to threaten a complete revolution and reorganization of the state. It was surmised with inexpressible alarm and disgust that Rome had been abandoned when it might have been defended, in order that it might be involved in Cæsar's guilt; and, when the

<sup>1</sup> Appian, *B. C.* ii. 37. : ἀπειλήσας τοῖς ἐπιμένουσι.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 10. : "Sulla potuit : ego non potero?"

day of vengeance should arrive, be subjected to all the horrors of a war of reprisal, to famine, and fire, and pillage, and massacre.<sup>1</sup>

When Domitius refused, or was no longer able, to obey his leader's injunctions, and withdraw from Corfinium to the head-quarters at Luceria, Pompeius saw the ruin his lieutenant had drawn upon himself, and felt that his own position in Italy was no longer tenable. But the rashness of the rear-guard saved the main body of the retreating column, for so rapid were Cæsar's movements, that but for this seven days' delay, Pompeius would undoubtedly have been overtaken. He now sheltered himself in Brundisium<sup>2</sup>, and charged the consuls and other magistrates to accompany him across the sea. When this command reached Cicero in Campania, the road into Apulia was no longer open. Cæsar was eager to recover the time he had lost before Corfinium. But the harbour of Brundisium was crowded with transports and vessels of every description. The consuls and the greater part of their army, which now amounted to five legions, effected their embarkation, and were already far on their way across the Adriatic; but Pompeius, with a division of the army, still lingered in the town when Cæsar's advanced guard appeared before the walls. Intercepted in his meditated flight by the celerity of these movements, Cicero hesitated to take ship at Naples and encounter before the close of winter the dangers of the straits and the Ionian sea. Filled with dark

Pompeius  
retreats to  
Brundi-  
sium, and  
prepares to  
cross over  
into Epirus.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* iv. 14., *ad Att.* viii. 11., ix. 7. 10, 11. See below.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 24, 25.



CHAP.  
XIV.

forebodings as to the designs of his leader, whose abandonment first of Rome and then of Italy he regarded as part of a long matured scheme for the destined subjugation of his country, he was not sorry, perhaps, that circumstances now placed a barrier between them. But he was still indisposed to anticipate Cæsar's success, as well as indignant at his rebellion against prescriptive authorities. In his sullen retirement at Formiæ, the orator was plied by solicitations and flatteries on the part of Cæsar himself and his friends Balbus and Oppius. The strongest assurances were given him of the conqueror's good intentions and conservative principles; but these representations failed to assuage his fears or lighten his melancholy, and he continued to pour his griefs and distractions into the ear of his chief adviser Atticus.<sup>1</sup>

Pompeius  
evacuates  
Brundi-  
sium, and  
makes his  
escape from  
Italy.

Cæsar arrived before Brundisium on the ninth of March.<sup>2</sup> The forces with which he formed the siege amounted to six complete legions, together with their auxiliary Gaulish cohorts. Of these legions, three consisted of his veterans; the others were made up partly of new levies and partly of the Pompeians whom he had drafted into his own ranks. But these did not include the battalions he had recently enrolled at Corfinium; for these zealous allies had been despatched in all haste to secure the possession of Sicily. It was impossible for Pompeius with the twenty cohorts, which were

<sup>1</sup> See particularly Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 11—13., and the correspondence of Cicero with Cæsar and his partizans therein communicated.

<sup>2</sup> March 9. A. U. 705=Jan. 17. B. C. 49. Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 3.: "Erat hic dies vii. Id. Mar. quo die suspicabamur aut pridie Brundisium venisse Cæsarem." So Cæsar, in Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 13 A.

all he retained, to hold the place against this overwhelming force. But Cæsar, on the other hand, was entirely destitute of ships; the sea was open, and the transports had received orders to return and bear away from Brundisium the remnant of the consular army. The port of the city is approached by a narrow passage leading from an outer into an inner basin<sup>1</sup>, and the shore on either side of this passage was occupied by the besiegers. But the outlet could only be obstructed by the erection of immense earthworks, and Pompeius trusted to the depth of the water to frustrate or delay the accomplishment of so great an undertaking.<sup>2</sup> Full of this confidence, he refused to listen to the proposals of accommodation which Cæsar continued to offer. He declared that he was only the lieutenant of the consuls, and could not act without their concurrence. Cæsar sank vessels and drove piles in the channel, while Pompeius exerted himself to impede these operations, and succeeded in keeping it open for the transports, which in due time made their appearance.<sup>3</sup> Upon their arrival, the troops were embarked without delay, a few soldiers being left on the walls to deceive the enemy with a show of resistance to the last moment. The streets had been carefully barricaded to obstruct his progress upon first entering the undefended city. But the

<sup>1</sup> The localities are carefully described by Keppel Craven, *Tour in the Kingdom of Naples*, p. 149.

<sup>2</sup> Cæsar in a letter to Balbus, communicated to Cicero (*ad Att.* ix. 14.), speaks of his operations before Brundisium: "Pompeius se oppido tenet. Nos ad portas castra habemus. Conamur opus magnum et multorum dierum propter altitudinem maris. Sed tamen nihil est quod potius faciamus. Ab utroque portus cornu moles jacimus."

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 25. 28.; Dion. xli. 12.

CHAP.  
XIV.

inhabitants were eager to display their zeal in the cause of a triumphant and perhaps irritated conqueror, and guided his troops with alacrity to the haven. The last of the Pompeians were already safe on board; the flotilla glided rapidly down the harbour, and broke through every obstruction at the outlet, with the loss of only two vessels, which struck against the head of the embankment. These were immediately grappled to the shore with irons, boarded by the enraged Cæsarians, and their crews cut to pieces. This was the first blood shed in the civil war.

Rapidity of  
Cæsar's  
success.

Cæsar had made himself master of Italy in sixty days.<sup>1</sup> Never, perhaps, was so great a conquest effected so rapidly and in the face of antagonists apparently so formidable. Every step he advanced was a surprize to his enemies; yet at each step they predicted more confidently his approaching discomfiture. But at the first blast of his trumpets every obstacle fell before him, and the march of his legions could hardly keep up with the retreat of his boastful adversaries. The consuls abandoned Rome before he was competent to approach it; their lieutenants, deserted by their troops,

<sup>1</sup> Pompeius embarked March 17=Jan. 26. B. C. 49, and Cæsar entered Brundisium the day following. Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 19. Plutarch says (*Cæs.* 35.): γεγονώς ἐν ἡμέραις ἑξήκοντα πάσης ἀναιμωτὶ τῆς Ἰταλίας κύριος. Assigning twenty-nine days to January, and twenty-eight to February, the sixty days would extend from Jan. 16—March 18, inclusive. If this calculation is to be taken strictly, the passage of the Rubicon would take place on the night of Jan. 15—16.; but I am inclined to place it a few days earlier. The interval between the flight of the tribunes, Jan. 6., and the passage of the Rubicon, Jan. 15—16., seems too long, while more time is required for the events which were crowded into the following days.



plundered of their treasure, and denuded of the materials of war, found themselves alone and defenceless in their camps before the invader appeared in sight. The interest which Sulla had fostered in his colonies melted away like a dream; old hopes and hatreds revived in the breasts of the Italians; the magistrates of every city flung wide their gates and hailed the Roman traitor as their hero and deliverer.<sup>1</sup> The captain, second only to Pompeius in the camp and councils of the senate, was dragged a prisoner into Cæsar's presence; and Pompeius himself retreated from one position to another without a single attempt to rally, and finally crept out of the country like a hunted fox.

All this time the nobles had been growing more and more clamorous to be led against the invader; in vain did they mutter, and scowl, and heap reproaches upon their chosen champion. He was not to be diverted from his plans, whatever they might be, but he would make no disclosure of them; to their remonstrances he coldly replied by ordering the murmurers to follow him under pain of proscription. To the last they hoped that he would still make a stand on the sacred soil of Italy; when he finally deceived their anticipations and wafted the last band of his military followers from the port of Brundisium, confusion and despair prompted many among them to throw themselves upon the generosity of the conqueror. The Appian Way was again crowded with knights and senators; but this time their faces were turned

Indignation  
of the no-  
bles at the  
conduct of  
Pompeius.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 12. : "Municipia vero et rustici Romani illum (sc. Pomp.) metuunt, hunc adhuc diligunt."

CHAP.  
XIV.

towards the city. Dragged so long against their will at the wheels of Pompeius' chariot, they vowed from henceforth to renounce the war, and sought the protection of the chief who alone permitted neutrality.<sup>1</sup> Many of these belonged, no doubt, to the class of indolent and selfish voluptuaries, who had been beguiled into a momentary relinquishment of their pleasures by the assurance that they should be soon reinstated in them more securely and triumphantly. But many also were better citizens, who foreboded some undefined evil to the state from the apparent treachery of Pompeius, and would no longer lend their support to his cause, though they might scruple to turn their arms against the sacred names of consuls and senate. They left it to the needy and reckless, the disappointed adventurers and patrician spendthrifts, to cling still to Pompeius' fortunes, and gloat over their visions of an abolition of debts, a confiscation of properties, and a reconstruction of the government. Whatever stains there might be on the character of many of the most prominent of Cæsar's adherents, it was now fully evident that the leader of the oligarchy was surrounded by a crew not less dissolute and unprincipled.

Explanation  
of the  
secret po-  
licy of  
Pompeius  
in abandon-  
ing Italy.

It is probable that Pompeius witnessed the departure of the more moderate and high-minded of his partizans with no great dissatisfaction. There can be little doubt as to the game he had all along been playing. It is impossible to suppose that a captain so consummate and a statesman so ex-

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 8. (March 6.): "Urbem quidem jam refertam esse optimatum audio . . . Hinc vero vulgo vadunt."

perienched should have let the cards drop from his hands, as he had done throughout, except with a deliberate policy. Whether he admitted the consuls themselves into his confidence may remain uncertain; but it is clear that he deceived to the last the main body of his adherents, even within the camp, by a pretended defence of Italy, while it had long been his intention to surrender every post successively, and make his exit from the peninsula as fast as, with a decent show of resistance, he could.<sup>1</sup>

The eastern and western portions of the empire stood to each other in peculiar contrast, and the views which influenced Pompeius at this crisis may be traced to the nature of the resources respectively offered by them. The Italian peninsula, stretching far into the midland sea, divided the Roman world into two hemispheres, rivals for the regard of the warrior and statesman, not less distinct in their social and political character than in their geographical position. The contrast between them was more strongly marked at this period than at any subsequent era. For both the east and the west were still instinct with the life peculiar to each, and though both equally within the reach and under the control of the same iron arm, were nevertheless as completely alien from one another in their principles, interests, and feelings, as if they had been two rival empires and not parts and provinces of the same.

Contrast  
between the  
eastern and  
western  
portions of  
the Roman  
Empire.

On the one hand, the great province of Spain Spain more

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 10.: "Hoc turpe (de fuga cogitare) Cnæus noster biennio ante cogitavit."



CHAP.  
XIV.

completely  
Romanized  
than any  
other pro-  
vince.

was already Romanized more thoroughly than any other part of the dominions of the republic. Though some districts were not yet fully subdued, and much lawlessness and disaffection still existed in others, yet the manners of the conquering people had been introduced from an early period, and definitively adopted throughout a large portion of the country. The language of the Italians was achieving rapid conquests in every quarter, and consolidating the municipal institutions which were lavished so freely upon the natives in no other part of the empire. These results had been rendered permanent by the influence of Sertorius, who had taught the Spaniards to regard the discipline and habits of their foreign masters as the true secret of their irresistible success. The subjugation of Spain had occupied one hundred and fifty years of almost constant warfare. Step by step had Rome made her way into the heart of a country, in which every mountain and desert had been defended with the same inveterate love of freedom. But she had never been compelled to retreat from an inch of ground once occupied, and the roots of her power struck the deeper into the soil from the tempests which had so long repressed its growth. The condition of the native races had been one of unmitigated barbarism; the southern and western coasts alone were slightly tintured with the spirit of Greek and Phœnician culture. But, in the absence of civilization, the Spaniards had no social institutions which could retain their vitality under the blight of a foreign conquest. Innumerable strongholds, dignified by the Roman writers with the name

of cities, had been razed to the ground; the elder Cato had destroyed, it is said, not less than three hundred.<sup>1</sup> Deprived of every fastness, except those which the nature of the country continued to offer in some isolated districts, the Spaniards, once thoroughly subdued, had no retreat in which to cherish the remnants of their nationality. The character of the people was, however, essentially warlike, and this temper the crafty conquerors did not suffer to ferment in inaction. The Iberian peninsula was the Switzerland of the ancient world. Its hardy clans had for ages supplied the infantry of Carthage; they had defeated the Romans themselves at the Trebia and Cannæ, and had enlisted under the banners of Antiochus for a second invasion of Italy. Accordingly, the rude chieftains whom the arts of peace could not soften, were more easily broken to the yoke of military discipline. It was in Spain that the Romans first adopted from their rivals the practice of enlisting hired bands of their foreign subjects.<sup>2</sup> The colonization of the Peninsula, especially in the south, by Roman citizens, had been carried on systematically, and the admission of natives to the Roman franchise had been more liberal there than in most of the provinces. The way was already paved for the much larger enfranchisement which followed at a later period. It was thus that at the opening of the civil wars the spirit of the Spanish provinces

<sup>1</sup> See Plutarch, Polybius and Strabo, referred to by Mannert, i. 241.; Liv. xxviii. 1., xxxiv. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Liv. xxiv. 49.: "Mercenarium militem neminem ante quam tum Celtiberos Romani habuerunt." This was in the second Punic war, A.U. 539.

CHAP.  
XIV.

was more thoroughly Roman than any other; the political feelings and interests of the people, no less than their social habits, had become nearly identified with those of the dominant race. In no part of the empire beyond Italy itself were the ancient traditions and prejudices of patrician and plebeian held more sacred. Spain was rather a healthy offshoot from the parent state than a conquered dependency. Strong in her indomitable character and her military resources, she was calculated to form the firmest bulwark of the republic and of the party which at this period prevailed in its counsels.

Progress of  
Roman sentiments in  
Gaul.

The process of civilization in Spain had been commenced by the Scipios and Catos of earlier generations, and carried on by a Metellus and a Pompeius. The colonists and the natives were attached to the senatorial party by all the ties which the policy of the conquerors could devise. We have seen how in Gaul, on the other hand, the two rival factions had been alternately in the ascendant, and that the result had been to leave the old province, for the most part, Pompeian in feeling, but to create a strong Cæsarian interest throughout the later conquests. The genius and activity of Cæsar seemed to have effected in nine years in Gaul beyond the Cevennes the moral and social transformation which it had taken a century and a half to mature in the Iberian peninsula. We have already remarked the extent to which the conqueror had availed himself of the military spirit of the northern nations; how, by enlisting



the chieftains under his banner, he had so far gained their affections as to be able to leave them most of the forms at least of their ancient freedom. He thus succeeded in inspiring both their warriors and their magistrates with Roman feelings, and the desire to emulate the spirit of Southern civilization. The two great nations of the West were thus rendered the allies of the republic, rather than her subjects. Either of them furnished a field on which her quarrels might be fought out, in the midst of a native population hardly less Cæsarian or Pompeian in their sympathies than the conquering race itself.

But in the eastern half of the Roman empire the ideas of the dominant people had received no such development, and felt no interest in the domestic quarrels of the city. The earlier and finer cultivation of the East still regarded with contemptuous indifference the struggles of the Roman mind to obtain an ascendancy over the subject races. The Greek populations were at this period almost exhausted by war, bad government, and the decay of their commercial prosperity. They submitted to the conqueror with an apathy from which nothing could rouse them, and, while they were forced to cast their institutions in Roman moulds, refused to imbibe any portion of their spirit. But beyond the Grecian provinces no attempt was made to infuse the political ideas of the republic into the dependent or tributary kingdoms on the frontier. The races of Asia acquiesced in their own immemorial despotisms, to which they had

The eastern provinces indifferent to the principle involved in the civil war, and regard only the persons of the leaders.

CHAP.  
XIV.

been abandoned by Sulla and Pompeius. To them the names of Liberty and Equality, invoked in turn by each of the Roman factions, were unintelligible. They had no conception of the nature of the contests, the rumour of which reached them across so many seas and continents. The sympathies of the Orientals centred always in men, and never in governments. A Cyrus, an Alexander, an Arsaces, commanded all their devotion; for them the foundations of law lay in the bosom of the autocrat. If summoned to take up arms in behalf of either party, it was upon the leader alone that they would fix their eyes, to his triumph the sphere of their interests would be limited. The accession of their wealth and numbers would strengthen the hands of the chief even against his own followers; to the common cause a victory obtained by their aid might be not less dangerous than a defeat. Accordingly, the introduction of such allies into a civil war could only be regarded by the genuine and high-minded among her children, as an insult to the dignity of the republic.<sup>1</sup> The party chief who should divest himself of the support of the national sentiment, and rally around his standards the blind obsequiousness of Egypt and Syria, the rude devotion of Colchis and Armenia<sup>2</sup>, would forfeit the respect of the true

<sup>1</sup> The true Roman sentiment is expressed by Lucan (vii. 526.):

... "Civilia bella

Non bene barbaricis unquam commissa catervis."

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 10.: "Getarum et Armeniorum et Colchorum copias ad eum adducere." ix. 11.: "Nuntiant Ægyptum et Arabiam ἐβδαίμονα et Μεσσοποταμίαν cogitare." Dion. xli. 13.

patriot as much as if he had put himself at the head of a foreign invasion.

That this, however, was the course Pompeius had determined to adopt, from the moment that he saw the contest with his rival inevitable, seems sufficiently proved by the whole tenor of his subsequent conduct. He hated the oligarchy of which he was the leader. At an earlier period, while placing himself ostensibly at its head, he had laboured to depress and degrade it. Jealous of the rival whom in self-defence it had raised against him in Cicero, he had used Cæsar, as he thought, as an instrument to crush this attempt to control him. But the instrument cut the workman's hand. The next turn in the wheel of fortune showed him in close alliance with this same party, to defend themselves against a common adversary. Pompeius, however, was well aware that these hollow friends would seize the moment of victory to effect his overthrow. If they worsted Cæsar, it would not be to submit once more to himself. He feared the hostile influence of the consuls and magistrates in a camp of Roman citizens, and felt that, in the event of a struggle with them, his title of Imperator would not weigh against their superior claims to the soldiers' allegiance. For the armies of which he was now the nominal leader were raised within the bounds of Italy; they were not debauched like the legions of Sulla, of Marius, of Cæsar, or those which he had himself led from Asia, by long absence from the city and habits of military licence. In order to strengthen his own

Pompeius places himself at their head, in order to counter-balance the authority of the senate.



CHAP.  
XIV.

exalted position, or even to maintain it after the defeat of the invader, he required a military force of another description. It was necessary that his anticipated victory should be gained, not on the soil of Italy, nor by the hands of Lentulus and Domitius, and that his return to Rome should be a triumph over the senate no less than over Cæsar.

With this view he abandons Italy and disregards Spain.

Thus only can we account for Pompeius having made no arrangements for maintaining himself at Rome, or at least in Italy, while there was yet time to have brought to his succour the legions in Spain; for his abandoning Domitius with his strong detachment in the face of so inferior an enemy; and, above all, for his carrying the war to the East instead of to the West, when compelled to escape from the shores of the Peninsula.<sup>1</sup> It was in Spain that the great strength of his party lay after it was expelled from the hearths of the republic; there was no region where the sacred names of Rome and the senate could meet with so favourable a response in the breasts of the provincials. Twelve legions of Roman soldiers, backed by the resources of so warlike and opulent a country, might be matched with advantage against any force Cæsar could bring against them; and it was more probable that they would have crossed the Pyrenees to engage their antagonists in southern Gaul, than have awaited his assault within their own

<sup>1</sup> It was at first expected that Pompeius, if driven from Italy, would have retired into Spain. Cic. *ad Att.* vii. 18.: "Tempori pareamus, cum Pompeio in Hispaniam eamus." This letter was written Feb. 3. Appian, *B. C.* ii. 38.: καὶ παρασκευῆς εἶχεν ὡς ὀρμήσων ὅπη ποτ' ἀν αἱ χροῖται καλῶσιν.

limits. In the meantime Scipio would have brought up the resources of the East and all that could be spared from the armies of the Syrian frontier, and the two ponderous masses might have met in Italy, and crushed Cæsar between them.

But Pompeius had no intention of sharing his victory on equal terms with the great men of his party, or reinstating in their ivory chairs the old chiefs of the aristocracy. There was now no disguise as to his designs, no doubt as to the attempt he would make to obliterate every vestige of ancient liberty. Some, indeed, of the nobles might still expect to impose a check upon him by their presence in his camp, but many even of the most distinguished among them were already corrupted by the hope of plunder. War against Italy, war against Rome, was the open cry of the most daring and profligate. We will starve the city into submission, we will leave not a tile on a house throughout the country, was echoed by Pompeius himself.<sup>1</sup> Such was the ominous language which resounded in the senatorial camp as soon as it was pitched in Epirus, and the opposite shores assumed the character of a foreign and a hostile strand. The consuls listened to it without a murmur, for it was their own chosen champion who avowed it. "He left the city," says Cicero, "not because he could not defend it, and Italy, not because he was

He exalts himself above the chiefs of his party, and proclaims war against Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 7. : "Primum consilium est suffocare urbem et Italiam fame, deinde vastare agros, urere, pecuniis locupletum non abstinere . . . Promitto tibi, si valebit, tegulam illum in Italia nullam relicturum." Comp. *ad Att.* xi. 6., *ad Div.* iv. 14.

CHAP.  
XIV.

driven out of it; but this was his design from the beginning, to move every land and sea, to call to arms the kings of the barbarians, to lead savage nations into Italy, not as captives but as conquerors. He is determined to reign, like Sulla, as a king over his subjects; and many there are who applaud this atrocious design.”<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 11., comp. viii. 16., ix. 9.: “Mirandum in modum Cnæus noster Sullani regni similitudinem concupivit. Εἰδώς σοι λέγω. Nihil ille unquam minus obscure tulit.” ix. 10.: “Sullaturit ejus animus et proscripserit diu.”



## CHAP. XV.

CÆSAR REPAIRS TO ROME AND CONVENES THE SENATE.—HIS MODERATION AND CLEMENCY.—HE PLUNDERS THE TEMPLE OF SATURN.—HE PROCEEDS TO ATTACK THE POMPEIAN ARMIES IN SPAIN.—DOMITIUS ENCOURAGES THE MASSILIANS TO SHUT THEIR GATES AGAINST HIM.—HE LEAVES A FORCE TO BESIEGE THEIR CITY, AND CROSSES THE PYRENEES.—THE POMPEIAN LIEUTENANTS OCCUPY ILERDA.—MILITARY OPERATIONS BEFORE THAT PLACE.—OVERFLOW OF THE SICORIS AND PERIL OF CÆSAR.—BRUTUS GAINS A NAVAL ADVANTAGE OVER THE MASSILIANS.—THE POMPEIANS COMPELLED TO EVACUATE ILERDA.—FURTHER MILITARY OPERATIONS, ENDING IN THE CAPITULATION OF THE POMPEIAN ARMIES. A. U. 705, B. C. 49.

CÆSAR now occupied without an antagonist in sight the centre of his enemies' position. Their line of operations was fairly cut in two, and he might determine at his leisure against which of the wings of their army he should first proceed to concentrate his forces. Moreover, he found himself in possession of the hostile camp, well stored with the moral and material resources of war, and thronged with deserters from their flying ranks. Rome threw her gates wide open to receive him, and he fully appreciated the immense advantage in a civil war of being able to issue his mandates from the centre of law and order. He was, however, entirely unprovided with the requisite armaments for transporting his army across the Adriatic; nor, in any case, would he have ventured

## CHAP. XV.

---

The consuls' abandonment of Italy gives Cæsar a great moral advantage.

CHAP.  
XV.

an encounter with the gigantic resources of the East at the head of only three legions. Another grave consideration at the same time pressed upon him, the protection of Rome and Italy from the scarcity which threatened them, so long as Sardinia, Sicily, and Africa were held by Pompeian lieutenants.

He expels  
the forces of  
the senate  
from Sar-  
dinia and  
Sicily.

Accordingly, while he quartered a portion of his forces on the Apulian coast to prevent the enemy's return<sup>1</sup> or the exit of his Italian partizans, he sent detachments in all haste to effect the conquest of these important positions. The appearance of a legion off the coast of Sardinia encouraged the natives to rise in arms and expel the garrison placed there by the senate.<sup>2</sup> Curio, who now occupied the place of Labienus in the confidence of his leader, and whose brilliant abilities seemed to merit the most important military charges, received orders to wrest Sicily from the Pompeians, and from thence cross over the sea, and contest with them the possession of Africa.<sup>3</sup> The island was held for the senate by M. Cato, who had reluctantly obeyed its command to defend so obscure a dependency, for he deemed that his services could be better employed in Italy, or wherever the consuls might pitch their camp. Accordingly, he seems to have made little preparation for the ungrateful task of

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 15. : "Ille (Cæsar) ut ad me scripsit legiones singulas posuit Brundisii, Siponti, Tarenti. Claudere mihi videtur maritimos exitus : et tamen ipse Græciam spectare potius quam Hispanias."

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 30.

<sup>3</sup> Appian (*B. C.* ii. 40.) supposes Asinius Pollio to have been first in command; but that Curio was the superior appears from the sequel.

arming the Sicilians to harass his beloved Rome. The sudden approach of the Cæsarian forces, consisting of four legions<sup>1</sup>, in a flotilla of unarmed transports, found him unable to cope with the invasion, and the news of the abandonment of Italy by Pompeius so shocked and dismayed him, that he determined to shed no blood in a desultory and provincial skirmish. He was satisfied with demanding of the intruder whether it was by the decree of the senate, or under the orders of the people, that he presumed to encroach upon the province of an independent governor. "The Master of Italy has sent me," returned the Cæsarian lieutenant<sup>2</sup>, and Cato bowed to the insulting summons, relinquishing the island without a blow, and seeking the head-quarters of the consuls beyond the sea.<sup>3</sup>

Meanwhile Cæsar, on his part, repaired straightway to Rome, ingratiating himself at every step with men of all parties, who listened with admiration and favour to the plausible explanation he could give of his conduct, as well as to his gracious promises to restore security and order. He invited the timid and the wavering in the most courteous terms to meet him in the Capitol, and to aid him with their counsel on the affairs of the

Cæsar repairs in person to Rome,

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *l. c.*

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Cicero (*ad Att.* x. 12—16.) speaks with a good deal of bitterness of the apparent pusillanimity of Cato's behaviour: "potuisse certe tenere illam provinciam scio." But his judgments on these points were formed with the utmost levity. Cato left Sicily (*Cic. ad Att.* x. 16.) April 23, A. U. 705, which corresponds with March 2, B. C. 49.; comp. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 41.; Dion. xli. 18.; Plut. *Cato*, 53.; Oros. vi. 15.; Flor. iv. 2. 22.



CHAP.  
XV.

and seeks  
an interview  
with Cicero  
on the way.

commonwealth. With Cicero he had a personal interview at Formiæ, and an animated conversation ensued between them. The orator had already been reassured, by the correspondence he kept up with friends of the proconsul, as to any fears he might entertain for his own person. He did not shrink from meeting the victorious invader, and his demeanour was not wanting in a show of firmness and dignity. Cæsar urged with all the persuasiveness of his eloquence that the refusal of so popular a statesman to return to Rome would be a cause of hesitation to others. Anxious as he was to place his interests under the shadow of legitimate authority, he invited the senate to resume its functions in its proper seat, and tender its advice to its faithful soldier.<sup>1</sup> But Cicero obstinately refused to give ear to these flattering solicitations. He pleaded his sense of personal obligation to Pompeius, and his long and intimate connexion with the fugitive party, whose threats of proscription were still sounding in his ears. He ventured to declare that, if he opened his mouth in the senate house, it must be to denounce the attack which Cæsar was meditating on the Pompeian legions in Spain, and the expected transport of his army into Greece, in defiance of those whom he was still bound to consider the constituted authorities of the state. Cæsar replied abruptly that he would not suffer his conduct to be thus publicly

<sup>1</sup> Luc. i. 202., vii. 264. :

“Cæsar ubique tuus, liceat modo, nunc quoque, miles.”

“Non mihi res agitur, sed vos ut libera sitis

Turba precor, gentes ut jus habeatis in omnes.”

animadverted upon; and he was obliged, at last, to break up the conference with the cold expression of a hope that his friend would reflect further upon the matter. To this Cicero returned a civil answer; and so, he says, much to his relief, the interview ended.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
XV.

---

Cæsar had reached Rome by the first of April, and his first care upon arriving there was to convene a council which should represent to the citizens the image of their venerated senate. Members of that body had already returned in sufficient numbers to give the appearance of a legitimate assembly; the absence of the consuls, by whom its meetings should properly have been convoked, was supplied by the tribunes, Antonius and Cassius, who revived, for the occasion, the obsolete prerogatives of their office.<sup>2</sup> The demeanour of the conqueror was studiously mild: he reiterated, in set phrases, the complaints which he had so repeatedly addressed to the consuls themselves. He proposed that a new negotiation should be opened with his inveterate enemies: but he may be suspected of himself throwing obstacles in the way of its being carried into effect. It may be true, as he alleges, that it was difficult to find persons willing to bear the flag of truce into the camp of Pompeius, who had vowed to treat as enemies even such as merely remained neutral at Rome.<sup>3</sup> But it was

Cæsar convenes a senate: his conduct studiously moderate.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 18. (iv. Kal. Apr. = March 27.): "Damnari se nostro iudicio, tardiores fore reliquos si nos non venerimus, dicere . . . Tum ille, Ego vero ista dici nolo . . . Summa fuit, ut ille quasi exitum quærens, ut deliberarem. Non fuit negandum. Ita discessimus."

<sup>2</sup> Drumann, iii. 443.

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 33.: "Pompeius enim discedens ab urbe in senatu

CHAP.  
XV.

His difficulty in satisfying the demands of his soldiers

observed that, when the affair dropped, and Piso, Cæsar's father-in-law, mooted it a second time, he received a rebuke for his officious interference.<sup>1</sup>

The restoration of the families of Sulla's victims to their civil rights was a measure of equal justice against which no exception could in fairness be taken.<sup>2</sup> But the adherents of the party which was now in the ascendant began to press other claims which could not be so easily satisfied. Cæsar had taken the precaution of leaving his army behind him when he entered Rome. His soldiers had encouraged themselves to anticipate enormous plunder from the conquest of Italy; and he could not venture to bring them within reach of the spoil of the capital. But the populace of the city itself demanded a reward for their long-tried devotion to his cause, and their murmurs at the prospect of their licentious expectations being disappointed already raised the hopes of his enemies once again.<sup>3</sup> Their champion was obliged to pay the price of his popularity in solid coin; and the largess which he promised on this occasion was an acknowledgment that his power was founded on the will of the mul-

dixerat eodem se habiturum loco qui Romæ remansissent et qui in castris Cæsaris fuissent."

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xli. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Dion (xli. 18.) states that this restoration took place at this time; but Plutarch (*Cæs.* 37.) places it after the Spanish war. I think with Drumann that the later date is the correct one, in which case it was one of a series of connected measures. But such an enactment was probably talked of at this time, and the legal disqualifications virtually set aside.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* x. 8.: "Nullo modo posse video stare illum diutius . . . quippe qui florentissimus ac novus, vi., vii. diebus ipsi illi egenti ac perditæ multitudini in odium acerbissimum venerit."



titude. Cæsar had already pledged himself to give five minæ to each of his soldiers<sup>1</sup>; he now proffered three hundred sesterces to every citizen. The fulfilment of these engagements would have greatly embarrassed him, for he had renounced the resources of proscription and confiscation to which previous conquerors had so readily resorted. But his enemies, in the haste and trepidation with which they had abandoned the city, had neglected the precaution of removing the hoards which were stored in the deepest recesses of the Temple of Saturn under the Capitol. This sacred treasure, as it was pompously denominated, was principally derived from the proceeds of a duty on the enfranchisement of slaves; but a portion of the spoils of war had also from time to time been accumulated there. Once only, in the most disastrous crisis of the Punic wars, had a quantity of gold, amounting to four thousand pounds in weight, been withdrawn by the solemn decree of the senate from this cherished deposit; but, in later times, it had been impiously rifled, both by the elder and the younger Marius, during the licence of civil commotion. Undoubtedly the consuls Marcellus and Lentulus would not have spared it, if in the general panic of their flight from Rome they had had presence of mind to forecast the consequences of their pusillanimity. Pompeius had required them to retrace their steps from Campania, for the purpose of retrieving their blunder; but it was then too late, and this abandonment of the public treasure was one of the

He plunders  
the sacred  
treasure in  
the temple  
of Saturn.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 47; five minæ may = 2000 sestertii, nearly = 16*l*.

CHAP.  
XV.

follies against which Cicero had most bitterly inveighed. Cæsar easily obtained authority from his subservient senate to appropriate these resources. One voice was raised against the proceeding, that of the tribune Metellus, a bold as well as a bitter opponent of the Marian party, whose courage at least deserves honourable record. His official veto on the decree of the senate was contemptuously disregarded; but he placed himself before the door of the temple, and vehemently protested that the spoiler should not enter but over his body. He tried to enlist the popular feeling on his side by appealing to an old tradition, according to which this treasure included the actual ransom of the city, which Brennus had been carrying off, and which was recovered by the valour of Camillus. A solemn curse, it was said, had been denounced against the sacrilegious hand which should remove it for any purpose whatsoever, except to repel a Gallic invasion. "The fear of a Gallic invasion," retorted Cæsar, "is for ever at an end; I have subdued the Gauls."<sup>1</sup> The anger of Cæsar was terrible, and Metellus quailed before the menaces of one whose blows, it was well known, were swifter than his words. The keys had been carried off by the consuls, and the door was broken open with pickaxes. This violent measure was undoubtedly one of extreme necessity, otherwise Cæsar would not have risked by it the character for moderation he so studiously affected. The pretended champion of tribunitian inviolability

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 35.; App. ii. 41.; Dion. xli. 17.

was obliged to plead the exigency of civil war, in excuse for the violation of a tribune's dignity.<sup>1</sup>

The nobles, indeed, had relied upon these conquered Gauls to make a diversion in their favour. When Cicero expresses the general expectation that the invader would be checked in his career in Italy by the revolt in his rear of the provinces he had only half pacified, it is no feeling of patriotic devotion to the interests of the state that he thereby attributes to Cæsar. A revolt in Gaul would have cut off the sources of his military strength, and it might reasonably be calculated that he would rather fall back upon the basis of his operations, than throw himself headlong into the centre of his enemies without a reserve behind. But the pro-consul had so effectually conciliated the vanquished barbarians, that his absence beyond the Alps was attended by no hostile movement among them in any quarter. It was not from the Gauls that his plans experienced any interruption; but the fickle and disaffected government of the Greek Massilia seized the opportunity to make a demonstration of its sympathy with the Pompeian party, with which it had always been closely connected.

CHAP.  
XV.

Massilia declares itself in favour of the Pompeian party.

The real or affected generosity of the conqueror had allowed his inveterate enemy Domitius

Domitius betakes himself to Massilia.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. (*ad Att.* x. 8.) says, pertinently enough: "Qui duarum rerum simulationem tam cito amiserit, mansuetudinis in Metello, divitiarum in ærario." Cæsar seems to have carried off his violence with a sarcastic taunt. Plut. *Cæs.* 35.: παρρησιᾶς γὰρ οὐ δέεται πόλεμος. Lucan (iii. 138.) conveys the idea even more pointedly:

"Non usque adeo permiscuit imis  
Longus summa dies, ut non, si voce Metelli  
Serventur leges, malint a Cæsare tolli."



CHAP.  
XV.

to escape unharmed at the surrender of Corfinium. But the latter, burning with personal as well as political hatred to his benefactor, was not of a temper to be soothed or secured to his interests. On the contrary, he abused the liberty thus accorded him by engaging again without scruple in the intrigues of the faction to which he had devoted himself. But, indignant as he felt at the coolness with which his leader had abandoned him, he made no effort to join the consular ranks. He failed even to communicate with his friends in Epirus, and for a time neither party knew what were his projects or where he had betaken himself.<sup>1</sup> But while the Cæsarian troops were taking possession of the Italian peninsula from north to south, and establishing themselves in quarters at Brundisium and Tarentum, at Ariminum and Placentia, he continued to elude observation while equipping a small naval armament at Cosa, on the Etruscan coast.<sup>2</sup> From this point he opened communications with Massilia, and as soon as he heard that the government of the little Greek republic was resolved to declare its adherence to the senate, he set sail without hesitation for that harbour of refuge.<sup>3</sup> He was well aware how important a diversion might be created for the interests of his party by securing so strong and opportune a position in the enemy's rear. The Province, moreover, to which, in a military point of view, Massilia was the key, had been the

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* viii. 14., ix. 1. 3.<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 6.<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 34.

theatre of his own family glories, and he hoped, by force or favour, to acquire actual possession of it, as the government to which he was rightfully entitled by the decree of the senate.

We have seen that Cæsar had not the means of following the flying enemy across the Adriatic; but a few days had sufficed to put him at the head of the senate and people of Rome, to recruit his military chest by the plunder of the treasury, and thus gather into his hands all the resources which his enterprize required. He could not content himself with acting on the defensive in Italy. The supineness and apparent timidity of his adversaries emboldened him to leave the city almost unprotected, while he hastened in person across the Alps and Pyrenees to crush the left wing of their forces in Spain. He was confident of success. The character of the generals opposed to him, of Afranius at least and Varro, was not such as to inspire him with any apprehension of defeat. He left, as he said, a general without an army, to attack an army without a general.<sup>1</sup> M. Antonius was appointed to watch over his patron's interests in the city, while the government of Italy was confided to M. Lepidus.<sup>2</sup> Cæsar joined three legions of recruits at Ariminum<sup>3</sup>, and marched them with his accustomed celerity across the Alps. Under the

Cæsar leaves  
Rome to  
attack the  
Pompeian  
lieutenants  
in Spain.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 34. : "Professus inter suos ire se ad exercitum sine duce, et inde reversurum ad ducem sine exercitu."

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Anton.* 6. ; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 41.

<sup>3</sup> Oros. vi. 15. ; comp. Cæs. *B. C.* i. 36. : the three legions he mentions must have been new levies, for the few veterans he had had with him in Italy were left there in garrison, or transported into Sicily, and the remaining Gallic legions had not crossed the Alps.

CHAP.  
XV.

walls of Massilia he met his lieutenant Trebonius, with reinforcements from the cantonments in the north of Gaul. In the course of this rapid march he first learnt the resistance he had to expect from the Massilians, whose harbour and naval resources, weak as he was in that arm, were of the greatest importance to him. Pompeius, at the moment of his flight into the south of Italy, had had the presence of mind to bestow a parting exhortation on the agents of the Greek republic in Rome, reminding them of the benefits he had conferred upon their state, and desiring them to return home, and confirm the dispositions of their countrymen in his favour. The Massilians, in consequence, had closed their gates, amassed ample stores of provision, and enlisted on their side the mercenary services of the neighbouring tribes. At the same time Cæsar received information of the enterprize upon which Domitius was bound, he learned also that Vibullius Rufus, another of the pardoned captives of Corfinium, had been sent by Pompeius into Spain, to convey instructions to his lieutenants there.<sup>1</sup>

He arrives  
before Mas-  
silia, which  
shuts its  
gates against  
him, and  
receives  
Domitius.

Immediately on his arrival the proconsul demanded an interview with the council of fifteen in whom the government of the Massilian commonwealth was vested. They went confidently to confer with him in his camp, and, in answer to his invitation to acknowledge the authority of Italy legitimately pronounced through a senate in Rome, rather than submit to the dictation of a private citizen, they replied that the republic, as they understood, was divided in the interests of a

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 34.



Cæsar and a Pompeius, to both of whom they owed great public benefits; and, as they could not presume to decide between such competitors, they conceived it to be their duty to close their gates equally against both. But no sooner had they returned from the presence of the proconsul, than Domitius appeared with his little squadron at the mouth of the harbour, and was at once admitted into the city with open arms.<sup>1</sup> A bold and experienced general was all that the Massilians needed; arms, money, ships, provisions, they possessed in abundance, and the enthusiasm of the people equalled their resources.

Cæsar was intent upon his expedition into Spain, where, if a blow was to be struck, it must be struck without delay. It was commonly rumoured that Pompeius intended to embark his legions in Greece, or even to march through Mauretania, to reinforce his lieutenants in the West.<sup>2</sup> Time was of more importance to Cæsar than men. He chose rather to leave three legions behind him to conduct the siege of Massilia, than delay his own progress until the place should be reduced to submission. He gave orders for the hasty equipment of a fleet to assist in the operations against the town, and appointed Trebonius and Decimus Brutus to the

Cæsar leaves his lieutenants to reduce Massilia, and hastens into Spain.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 34. 36.; Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 39. Another report indeed, at which Cicero eagerly caught, was that he was already directing his course through Illyricum and about to enter Italy by the route of the Cisalpine province, but this Cæsar no doubt discredited. Cic. *ad Att.* x. 6. (10 Kal. Mai = 22 April): "Pompeium pro certo habemus per Illyricum proficisci in Galliam." He writes again May 3: "Pompeium cum magnis copiis iter in Germaniam per Illyricum fecisse."

CHAP.  
XV.

command of the land and naval force respectively. In the interval which these hurried arrangements required, he despatched orders to C. Fabius to move from Narbo with the three veteran legions under his command there, and occupy the passes of the Pyrenees; while the troops still quartered in remoter parts of Gaul were directed to follow as rapidly as possible. Auxiliary cohorts were levied throughout Aquitania, and the bravest of the native chieftains enrolled themselves with alacrity. Pressed for money to conduct these operations, Cæsar had the address to borrow it from his own officers, and he congratulated himself on the success of an artifice which bound them to his cause by the additional tie of pecuniary interest.

The Pompeian lieutenants, Varro, Afranius, and Petreius.

Eight years had elapsed since the senate had assigned the province of Spain together with Africa to Pompeius. The course of his intrigues nearer home had not permitted him to repair thither in person, but he had taken a lively interest in its military organization, foreseeing the importance of such a magazine of men and arms in the event of a civil war. The republic had previously maintained in the Peninsula a force of four legions. The new proconsul withdrew two more from Africa to strengthen this armament, and these six legions, composed of veteran troops, formed together the finest army of which Rome could boast. To these a seventh legion was added by the enlistment of provincial colonists, and the entire force under the proconsul's orders was augmented by the contingents of the allied states and large bodies of hired auxiliaries. The Peninsula was divided into

three governments, each having a military establishment of its own. In the northern and eastern region, the consular Afranius commanded with three legions. Petreius was stationed with two others in Lusitania, a district which comprised the recent conquests of Cæsar in his prætorship. The southern province, from Castulo, on the Bætis, to the mouth of the Anas, the flower of the Roman possessions in the West, was appropriately assigned to M. Terentius Varro, one of the most consummate specimens of Italian culture.<sup>1</sup> The literary genius of this illustrious man was the most universal of his day: his knowledge of the history and antiquities of his country remained long unrivalled; in the dignified profession of philosophy and the lighter pursuits of poetry he obtained an honourable distinction among his contemporaries; while his proficiency in the most practical and useful of arts was evinced by his treatise on rural economy, which has descended to modern times. For military command, indeed, he seems to have shown little aptitude; but he, in fact, alone of the three lieutenants was not heartily attached to his general, and his principal care was to contrive to appear a partizan of whichever should become the winning side. The character of Afranius is already known to us, as a zealous adherent of the senate, but a man of little energy or prudence in political life. As an officer, however, he had served with distinction in the war against Sertorius, and had

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 38. There seems to be some corruption or transposition in the text, but there can be no doubt that this is the writer's meaning.



CHAP.  
XV.

gained laurels in Asia under the eye of Pompeius. Petreius, perhaps, alone of the three was worthy of the conspicuous post he was called upon to fill. He was a sturdy veteran, whose unshaken loyalty and courage had been long before approved in the destruction of Catilina.<sup>1</sup>

They pre-  
pare to  
meet Cæsar  
in the field.

As soon as the proconsul's orders arrived for preparing to encounter Cæsar, the three lieutenants concerted their measures together. To Afranius, as farthest in advance, was assigned the task of preventing, if possible, the threatened irruption into the peninsula. Petreius was first to summon to his standard the hordes of savage warriors with which his half-reclaimed province swarmed, and then directed his march with all speed along the line of the Durius or the Tagus, and effect a junction with his colleague beyond the Iberus. Meanwhile, the government of all the South and West was deputed to Varro, who retained with him two legions to keep the province in subjection, and constitute a reserve for future emergencies. The force thus rapidly concentrated in the north of Spain to check Cæsar's advance, consisted of five veteran legions and a body of eighty cohorts of auxiliaries, amounting in all, perhaps, to seventy thousand men.<sup>2</sup>

Military  
route across

The armies of the Scipios and Catos, in former

<sup>1</sup> Sallust speaks of him as even at that time a veteran of thirty years' standing, and pays a high tribute to his experience in his profession (*B. C.* 59., see above, Vol. I. p. 144.).

<sup>2</sup> *Cæs. B. C.* i. 39. These auxiliaries were partly heavy armed (*scutatæ*), partly light armed (*cetratæ*). The former were drawn from the Hither, the latter from the Farther province. The proper complement of the legionary cohort was 600, but the numbers of the auxiliary cohorts seem to have varied considerably. In one place Cæsar makes particular mention of cohorts of 600 men (*B. C.* iii. 4.).

times, had been transported into Spain by sea; but the conquest of the southern coasts of Gaul had gradually extended the military roads of the republic from the foot of the Alps to the summit of the Pyrenees, and from thence in various directions across the whole peninsula. Pompeius had devoted himself, in the war with Sertorius, to completing the communication between Gaul and Spain. The route which he opened led from Narbo, through Ruscino and Illiberis, to Ficaria, Girona and Barcino.<sup>1</sup> This is precisely the line of the modern road across the Col de Pertuis, on the most eastern spur of the Pyrenees. It was at the highest point of this road that Pompeius had erected the trophy which long continued to bear his name, and recorded upon a triumphal arch his achievements in the West. The great Roman way from Gaul skirted the coast from Barcelona to Tarragona, and thence branched out in two directions; the one to Lerida and the north-west, the other to Tortosa, Valencia, and the South. In modern times, the French armies have frequently penetrated into Spain by the route of Puycerda and Urguel, along the valley of the Segre<sup>2</sup>; but this more direct line was not adopted by the Romans. The Pompeian generals, therefore, could not have been uncertain as to the direction of the enemy's advance; and with ordinary foresight and activity, they might doubtless have occupied every defensible position along his route.<sup>3</sup> But the energy of

<sup>1</sup> The modern Roussillon, Elne?, Figuera, Gerona, and Barcelona.

<sup>2</sup> Guischart, *Mém. Milit.* i. 28.

<sup>3</sup> Livius Salinator, an officer of Sertorius, had successfully defended

CHAP.  
XV.

---

Rumours  
of Cæsar's  
unpopula-  
rity in  
Rome and  
Italy.

Cæsar imparted itself to his lieutenants, while the leaders opposed to them were no less tardy and undecided than their own chief. Fabius pressed forward from his quarters at Narbo, crossed the mountains without any serious resistance, closed the ports of Emporiæ and Barcino against reinforcements from the camp of Pompeius, and, taking the road to the right of Tarraco, reached the valley of the Sicoris, and confronted the united forces of Afranius and Petreius before Ilerda.<sup>1</sup>

The spirit with which Fabius pushed forward to encounter a superior enemy was the first omen of Cæsar's ultimate success. A second was the supineness, and indeed the hardly dissembled treachery of Varro, in excusing himself from joining his colleagues in the north of Spain, nor even sending the fleets of Gades to co-operate with them, or to assist the defenders of Massilia. But, on the other hand, there were circumstances which seemed to throw great gloom over the prospects of the invader. The resistance of the Massilians, beyond all hope and expectation, and with little apparent chance of success, conveyed to the friends of Pompeius the impression that they had some stronger grounds of confidence than such as were generally manifest, and their example served to confirm many dubious waverers in Italy. The rumoured unpopularity of

this pass against the prætor, C. Annius. *Plut. Sert.* 7. All the ships Cæsar could build or collect were employed before Massilia, so that many weeks or months might be expected to elapse before he could throw his invading armies upon the coast. Besides, the Pompeian forces in Spain were sufficiently numerous to occupy all the ports on the Mediterranean.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i, 37. Ilerda, mod. Lerida; Sicoris, mod. Segre.



Cæsar himself with the mob of Rome, and the supposed disaffection of his new levies, was another topic of mutual encouragement among this class of politicians. The gross and ostentatious profligacy of his principal adherents, if we are to believe the stories current regarding it, was expected to alienate the favour of the more sober citizens. It seemed impossible that men of sense could acquiesce in a domination of which, however specious were its present pretences to moderation, a speedy lapse into tyranny and proscription might be so confidently predicted. Intrigues were set on foot for raising the standard of the senate in the south of Italy. These, indeed, proved utterly abortive; it was not likely that a conspiracy conducted by a Cicero, and confided to an Atticus, should succeed in the face of such men as Cæsar and Antonius.<sup>1</sup> But it was with an uneasy sense of his increasing difficulties, and of the necessity of obtaining a splendid victory for the maintenance of the position he had acquired, that Cæsar hastened in the track of his lieutenant, and brought a chosen body-guard of nine hundred cavalry to reinforce the troops collected on the banks of the Sicoris. The Cæsarian army numbered five legions<sup>2</sup>, with six thousand auxiliary infantry and as many cavalry, besides the contingent of Aquitanian mountaineers,

<sup>1</sup> See Cicero's letters, *ad Att.* x. 8, 9, 10, 15. Antonius would not have been puzzled by the enigmatical expressions which modern critics have penetrated, if he had thought it worth his while to intercept this correspondence.

<sup>2</sup> *Cæs. B. C.* i. 37. Fabius had three legions at Narbonne. To these are to be added apparently two others which Trebonius had brought from the north of Gaul (*quæ longius hiemabant*). The auxiliaries are enumerated (*c.* 39.). See Guischart, i. 50.

CHAP.  
XV.

and the little squadron just mentioned. While the Pompeian generals were securely posted beneath the defences of Ilerda, Fabius had contented himself with throwing bridges across the Sicoris, and establishing communications with the open territory on both sides of the river. A sudden inundation, such as is of frequent occurrence in that treacherous stream, had broken down one of his bridges, and placed two of his legions, thus cut off from the rest, in a situation of imminent danger. Afranius advanced to the attack and Fabius to the rescue with equal conduct and energy. The Pompeian, unwilling to risk a general engagement, retired before the reunited forces of the enemy, and both parties remained watching each other, when Cæsar arrived to turn the fortune of the campaign.

Great interest of this campaign in a military point of view.

The ensuing manœuvres of the opposing armies are replete with the highest interest. There were few occasions in the history of the republic in which equal bodies of Roman veterans met each other in deadly conflict, with equal valour and resolution, and equally under the command of experienced generals. The good fortune by which the details of these strategic operations are preserved to us by a narrator so clear and accurate as Cæsar himself, deserves to be remarked; and in tracing them with some minuteness we shall gain an insight into the art of war as practised by the most military of nations at the most flourishing period of its arms.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The details of this campaign are given minutely by Cæsar (*B. C.* i. 40. to the end), nor do the other authorities add any thing of im-

CHAP.  
XV.

---

Cæsar entrenches his camp in front of the enemy's position.

An eminence rising abruptly from the right bank of the Segre was crowned by the walls of the ancient Ilerda.<sup>1</sup> The communications of the city with the opposite bank of the river were secured by a permanent bridge of stone, and the Pompeian garrison which maintained this important post commanded the resources of the wide and fertile plain which it surveyed on all sides. On a rival summit, at the distance of less than half a mile to the south, Afranius and Petreius had taken up their position; for a Roman army of several legions required ample space for its accommodation, and the generals of the republic seldom relinquished the array and discipline of the camp for the confused and straitened quarters of a city. These fortified eminences, though unconnected, appeared sufficiently near for mutual support; but between them the ground swelled into a third elevation, and this, as we shall see, the Pompeians had neglected to secure by military defences. Cæsar assumed the offensive as soon as he arrived at the scene of action. He advanced in battle array to within four hundred paces of the enemy's camp, from which it was his object to withdraw him, by offering battle in the plain below. But his antagonists had no motive for accepting the decision of the open field. They sought to protract operations in order to give their champion

portance. I have availed myself largely of Guischard's critical remarks.

<sup>1</sup> Compare with Cæsar Lucan's description (iv. init.). The poet notices the position of Ilerda on the Sicoris, the stone bridge, the hill on which Afranius was posted, and the intervening height which was contested by the two parties.



CHAP.  
XV.

---

time for the completion of his extensive preparations in the East; and accordingly, being well supplied with provisions, and depending on the resources of the country around them, they persisted in refusing the proffered challenge. For the convenience of space, indeed, or to encourage their troops by the semblance of a bolder defiance, they drew up their array in front of their lines; but even there they were too securely posted for Cæsar to venture an attack. He was unwilling, however, to leave their movements free by retiring from the advanced position he had himself taken up; and, accordingly, he proceeded to execute the bold and hazardous operation of constructing an entrenched camp in the face of his antagonists. He could not have kept his ground through the night without placing his men behind the protection of a fosse or rampart; but while the two first lines retained their arms and battle array, he appointed the third to excavate a ditch in their rear, and thus imposed upon the enemy, who believed that the whole force was equally prepared for the combat. Had the progress of these latter works been discovered, the Pompeians might have charged the two first lines with advantage, unsupported as they were at the moment by the third. It was thus that the Nervians, while part of the Roman troops were engaged in entrenching their camp, had made their attack, so sudden and so nearly successful. Cæsar was so apprehensive of a similar result on this occasion that he would not allow the men in the trenches to raise a rampart behind the fosse, but contented himself with the protection of

the fosse alone. As soon as this line was made defensible, being excavated to the depth of fifteen feet, which was accomplished by the skilful and laborious veterans before nightfall, he executed the usual manœuvres, by which the legions were thrown within their entrenchments through the prætorian gate in front. He was now secure against a sudden attack, and was enabled to complete the remaining faces of his camp more at his leisure. Some slight attempts were made by Afranius to interrupt the completion of these works, but Cæsar repulsed them without difficulty. Having now surrounded himself with a fosse, and raised a rampart behind it, he was in possession of a fortified position from which he could watch and counteract the enemy's movements. At the same time, the excellence of his Gaulish cavalry, in which force he was decidedly superior to the Pompeian generals, gave him the means of supplying himself with provisions from the fertile plain between the Sicoris and the Cinga, and the bridges which had been thrown across the former river maintained his communications with the country through which he had advanced.

The camp which Afranius and Petreius occupied was situated, as has been said, on an eminence about half a mile distant from the citadel of Ilerda.<sup>1</sup> In the level space between the two heights was one spot of rising ground which seemed to offer a favourable point for intercepting the communication between the two fortifications. If Cæsar could

Manœuvres  
of the hos-  
tile armies.

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar says, 300 paces = a little more than 500 yards; but the localities are clearly distinguishable at the present day, and the interval is undoubtedly greater.

CHAP.  
XV.

---

once make himself master of this spot, he might cut off Afranius not only from Ilerda, but from the bridge over the Sicoris, and, of course, from the country beyond it. With this view he drew three legions out of his camp, and ordered a band of picked men to rush forward and attempt to seize the hill. The three lines in which the Roman battle-array was ordinarily drawn up, were not distinguished at this period, as in earlier times, by different equipments and a corresponding difference of name. The legionaries, since the time of Marius at least, were all armed alike; but the first line was generally composed of the men of the most approved conduct and courage. In each cohort a certain number of the best men, probably about one-fourth of the whole detachment, was assigned as a guard to the standard, from whence they derived their name of *Antesignani*. In a general action these men were collected together and placed in the first line; whenever any operation was to be effected which demanded the greatest nerve and intrepidity, it was to these that it was confided. Cæsar selected the standard-guard of one of his legions to make the sudden attack he now directed. Rapid as were their movements, the Afranians had the advantage in point of distance, and were enabled to anticipate them. With the short weapons used by the Romans, a slight superiority of ground gave a decisive advantage in the combat between man and man. On this occasion courage and discipline were equal on both sides, and the Afranians were not to be dislodged



by the most vigorous efforts. Even the loose mode of fighting with which they had become familiar from their intercourse with the natives of Spain gave them an advantage over the Cæsarians, who expected to encounter opponents who would manœuvre precisely in their own fashion, and were confused by the agility and ease with which their adversaries moved on all sides of them. For the Roman legionaries were trained to keep their ranks even in the quickest charge, and to support one another always at precisely the same interval of three feet. They rallied close round their standards, which it was their point of honour never to leave whether in retreat or attack. The heavy pressure of the Gaulish masses had compelled Cæsar's troops to maintain these tactics with constancy and precision; whereas the legions which had served in Spain against a foe of a different character, had been forced to depart more or less from the strictness of this system, and had learnt to baffle their enemies by lighter and more desultory movements.

The discomfiture of this chosen body was retrieved for the moment by the charge of the ninth legion, which was now brought up to its relief. These fresh troops soon checked the victorious advance of the Afranians, hurled them back in confusion, and rushed in hot pursuit to the foot of the hill upon which Ilerda stood. It was under the walls, or within the gates, that the retiring Afranians sought refuge. But the position of their pursuers was one of great peril, for the acclivity

CHAP.  
XV.

which they were climbing was only wide enough for the array of three cohorts in line, and both to the right and the left the descent was extremely precipitous. With no support on its flanks, and with all the disadvantage of inferior ground, the ninth legion was extremely harassed by the obstinate resistance which was here opposed to it; it offered a sure mark to every dart hurled from above, while the numbers and the means of its opponents were augmented from the resources of the town in their rear. Cæsar was obliged to put forth his whole strength to drive the enemy back to the shelter of his walls, and enable the assailants, after a sharp contest of five hours, to withdraw steadily into the plain. Their retreat was effectually covered by the arrival of some squadrons of cavalry, which had succeeded in overcoming the difficulties of the ground on each side, and threw themselves at the last moment between the opposing lines.

Each side  
claims the  
advantage.

The engagement had been fought with such alternations of success that each party claimed the victory.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar himself admits that he was surprised at meeting with such a vigorous resistance from troops which no one, he says, imagined to be equal to his own veterans. But with regard to the number slain on either side, his language is suspiciously ambiguous, while the hill against which his attack was directed in the first instance remained in the hands of the Afranians, who now proceeded to strengthen the position with military defences. A later historian, who seems to have

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 47.

had some independent materials for his account of these operations, does not hesitate to give the honour of the day to the soldiers of Afranius.<sup>1</sup>

A sudden rise of the waters hems in Cæsar's position.

The check which Cæsar thus unexpectedly received was followed by another disaster for which he was still less prepared. During the months of April and May the melting of the snows of the Pyrenees causes a periodical inundation of the rivers which, like the Sicoris, descend from their southern flank. The waters of these streams swell rapidly, and rush on such occasions with excessive violence. Fabius's bridge was carried away by the impetuous torrent; but Cæsar may have supposed that, when this inundation abated, the danger was over for the year. A few days afterwards, however, it being now six weeks after the equinox, a second and still more violent flood swept away both the bridge which had been rebuilt and the other higher up the channel. The movements of Cæsar's army were thus confined between the streams of the Sicoris and the Cinga, both overflowing their banks and destitute of fords or bridges. The only communication with the country beyond on either side was by the stone bridge of Ilerda, of which Afranius had possession. The base of the triangle, of which the apex is at the confluence of these rivers, was a mountainous and impracticable district, which probably afforded little support for an army, and access even to this must have been considerably impeded in time of inun-

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xli. 20. Lucan (iv. 46.) balances the result with great ingenuity:

"Sic pedes ex facili, nulloque urgente, receptus:  
Irritus et victor subducto Marte pependit."



CHAP.  
XV.

---

dation by the channels of two other streams which intersect the plain.<sup>1</sup> The season of the year was that in which the produce of the last harvest is almost exhausted, while the new crops are not yet ripe for the sickle; the whole country round had been laid under contribution by Afranius, and the light Iberian guerillas who hovered about the flanks of the enemy's position, speedily cleared it of whatever remained. These men were accustomed to cross the rivers of the country upon inflated skins, which they carried with them in the field as part of their accoutrement; so that while Cæsar's legions were confined to the narrow and barren peninsula on which they stood, they were liable to harassing attacks and every kind of annoyance from skirmishers whom it was vain to pursue. An attempt to rebuild the bridges in the face of these troublesome opponents was frustrated and abandoned in despair.

Cæsar's  
reinforce-  
ments ar-  
rested on  
the further  
side of the  
river.

Cæsar had made an effort to re-establish his communications with the highway from the Pyrenees, for he was in daily expectation of reinforcements from that quarter. A body of Gaulish archers and horsemen was advancing to join the proconsul's camp, and under their escort the deputies of various states, many noble Roman youths, the sons of knights and senators, and some also of Cæsar's superior officers, were following in long array, with an ample convoy of waggons and military

<sup>1</sup> These streams, now called the Noguera Ribagorsana, and Pallaresa, are not mentioned by Cæsar, though he must have crossed them both under these circumstances, when he transported his coracles in waggons to the spot where he passed the Sicoris. See below.

equipments. The Pompeian generals obtained early notice of their approach, and made preparations for attacking them as soon as they should reach the margin of the waters. No less than three legions with a detachment of cavalry were put in motion for this service; but the horsemen were sent forward in advance, and the Gaulish cavalry, notwithstanding their consternation on discovering the peril in which Cæsar was placed, and their disappointment at being prevented from joining him, went forth boldly and confidently to meet them. The superiority of the Gauls in cavalry movements kept their assailants at bay until the legionaries arrived to their support. The Gauls now retired before a more numerous and more formidable foe; but the unarmed multitude which had come under their escort had profited by the few hours thus gained to escape with their baggage into the mountainous country, and Afranius reaped only a barren victory, instead of the rich and important capture he had expected. He retired in all haste to Ilerda, the defences of which had been seriously weakened by the withdrawal of so large a portion of his army upon this bootless expedition. The distress to which the enemy's troops were by this time reduced still flattered him with the brightest hopes of a bloodless victory. Day by day their scanty provisions diminished and rose to a more enormous price. The floods continued for a longer period than ordinary: yet they could not fail to abate in a few days, and Cæsar's disastrous position was not, like that of the garrison of a besieged town, without a certainty

The Afranians are sanguine in their expectation of destroying him.

CHAP.  
XV.

of early relief; nevertheless, the officers of the Pompeian army filled all their letters to their friends at Rome with sanguine prognostications of his speedy destruction. The patrons of their cause were elated with expectations which they had not ventured to indulge since their champion's flight from Italy, and thronged the house of Afranius in the city, anxious to demonstrate to his family their interest in his heroic achievement.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar restores his communications by the use of coracles.

But long before these letters had reached Rome Cæsar had extricated himself from his perilous situation by a simple expedient. He constructed a number of boats of light framework covered with skins, after the model of the coracles which he had seen in Britain.<sup>2</sup> These he transported on waggons to the spot where he proposed to build a bridge, twenty-two miles up the river.<sup>3</sup> On the opposite side there was a hill, from which he could carry on his works without molestation. Accordingly, he commanded a detachment to cross the stream in his frail barks, and when he had made himself master of this position and fortified it, he had no

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 53.; Dion. xli. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan (iv. 134.) compares them also to the barks used by the Veneti on the Po, and by the Egyptians on the Nile. Though formed, according to the description, on the model of the coracle, these vessels were of considerable size. More than one waggon lashed together served to convey each: "Carris junctis devehit." Cæs. *B. C.* i. 54.

<sup>3</sup> At this spot, a few miles above the town of Balaguer, the river is confined between steep hills. (Guischard, *Mém. Mil.* ii. 2.) I observe, on an inspection of the atlas to Suchet's campaigns, that the valley of the river is thus confined for several miles above Balaguer. The name of a village called Pons may tempt us to fix the site of the bridge in that locality, but it is too far from Lerida. I think it was more probably at Alos, immediately opposite to which there is a hill of moderate elevation.



further difficulty in restoring his communication with the country beyond the Sicoris, and replenishing his exhausted magazines. At the same time his Gaulish reinforcements descended from their retreat in the hills to join him, and a successful skirmish with some of the enemy's foraging parties assisted in restoring confidence to his soldiers.

CHAP.  
XV.

---

At the same moment that Cæsar effected this successful movement, he received the news of a victory gained by his navy at Massilia.<sup>1</sup> Domitius had persuaded the citizens to assume the offensive; the departure of the great captain inspired them with confidence; and, besides the superior number and equipment of their vessels they relied upon the valour of the native tribes, by which they were in a great measure manned. Accordingly, they issued from their harbour, and sought the station of the Cæsarian fleet in front of an island opposite its mouth. The ships of Brutus, hastily built of bad materials, and less skilfully manœuvred, could never have compelled them to an engagement; but seeking the conflict themselves, and joining beak to beak and side to side, they threw away all their peculiar advantages and reduced the contest to one of valour and discipline. Here indeed the Albici, a tribe of hardy mountaineers, whose aid they had secured, did them good service; but these warriors were not a match for the picked men of the Roman legions, with whom Brutus had manned his vessels. The result was that the Massilian squadron lost

Cæsar's lieutenant, D. Brutus, gains a victory over the Massilians at sea

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 56—58.

CHAP  
XV.

nine out of seventeen vessels, and the remainder were driven with shame and disorder into their harbour.

Discourage-  
ment of the  
Afranians.

These tidings were not confined to Cæsar's camp, but spread rapidly among the native tribes in the country around, and combined, with the conspicuous restoration of Cæsar's fortunes before Ilerda, to dispose them to enter into friendly relations with him.<sup>1</sup> And at the same time it became evident that the rumour of Pompeius's advance through Mauritania was altogether false. The troops of Afranius and his colleague were dispirited at these successive disappointments; their cavalry and foraging parties became daily more afraid to venture near the squadrons with which Cæsar was now overrunning and occupying the plain; they kept close under the walls of Ilerda, and contented themselves with brief nocturnal expeditions to supply their necessities.

They pre-  
pare to  
evacuate  
Ilerda.

Afranius and Petreius seem themselves to have been grievously affected by these disasters. Despairing of succour from their leader, and alarmed by the defection of the native tribes around them, they already began to look wistfully towards the central districts of Celtiberia, which were the most devotedly attached to them, and where they might hope to find freer scope for their movements. They had voluntarily shut themselves up in their fastness at Ilerda; but the enemy was now manœuvring to cut off their retreat, and but a short interval remained for escaping from their narrow entrench-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. i. 60.: "Magna celeriter commutatio rerum."

ments without hazarding the general engagement, which they dreaded more than any other alternative. The most direct route to the West or South was guarded by Cæsar's camp; the other road which presented itself lay across the bridge over the Sicoris, reaching the banks of the Ebro at a distance of twenty miles, at a spot to which Cæsar gives the name of Octogesa.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar was anxious to check their movements on this bank of the river also; but the bridge, by which alone he could communicate with it, lay, as we have seen, about twenty-two miles above Ilerda, and he could not venture to divide his army into two bodies at such a distance from each other. He might have adopted the course of throwing another bridge over the Sicoris at a nearer point, at least he does not in his narrative state any reasons to show that this was impracticable or difficult. But, instead of this, he preferred an operation of a different kind. At a short distance above Ilerda he cut several ditches, each thirty feet in breadth, so as to drain off the

CHAP.  
XV.

Cæsar's  
operations  
to cross the  
river and  
prevent  
their re-  
treat.

<sup>1</sup> I cannot suppose with Mannert (i. 417.), that this place is Mequinenza, though we might naturally expect that so commanding a position would have attracted the attention of the Romans. Octogesa, from Cæsar's account, must certainly have been on the left bank of the Sicoris; possibly at La Granja, as Ukert supposes, following Guischart. I think that it lay a few miles lower down, where the present road from Lerida strikes the Ebro, opposite the town of Flix. This situation agrees with the description which Cæsar gives of the country between Ilerda and Octogesa, first several miles of plain, and then a hilly tract. This is the line of the modern road to Tortosa and Valentia, and there is an antecedent probability that it follows an ancient route. I have examined the country carefully in the atlas to Suchet's campaign (1811-12), which is as clear as a model. Napier (*Penins. War*, iii.) says off-hand that Mequinenza is the Octogesa of Cæsar.



CHAP.  
XV.

waters of the river and throw them behind his position, until the stream was rendered fordable at a convenient point. The waters thus carried off were led apparently into an offset of the Noguera, which runs into the Segre a little below Lerida<sup>1</sup>, and the operation, upon which the whole army was employed (the Roman legionaries being thoroughly trained to the use of the spade and pickaxe), might have been completed, it is said, in the space of ten days.<sup>2</sup> The labour, therefore, was not greater than that of building a bridge, while it required no materials. As soon as the object of these extraordinary works was discovered by the Pompeian generals, they hastened the removal from Ilerda, which they had been already meditating. Orders had been previously given to collect boats for the construction of a bridge over the Ebro at Octogesa, and, in the expectation of its speedy completion, two legions were transported across the Sicoris and stationed on the left bank in a strongly-entrenched camp.

The Afra-  
nians re-  
treat, the

At this moment, when the bridge of boats was announced to be almost ready for the escape of the

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar does not say this, nor does he say, as has been also supposed, that he conducted these waters into an immense reservoir excavated for the purpose. It is difficult to understand clearly what the nature of the operation was. It seems that there must have been a considerable depth of soil to cut through to lead these trenches behind Ilerda into the further branch of the Noguera. Cæsar's words are simply these: "Nactus idoneum locum fossas pedum triginta in latitudinem complures facere instituit quibus partem aliquam Sicoris averteret, vadumque in eo flumine efficeret" (*B. C. i. 61.*).

<sup>2</sup> Guischart, ii. 67. foll. The length of the cut would be about 4000 toises.

CHAP.  
XV.

---

Cæsarians  
pursue and  
come up  
with them.

retreating Pompeians, the ford of the Sicoris was declared to be practicable for the cavalry of their pursuers, who dashed boldly across it. But the water reached to the armpits of the legionaries, and its rapidity was such that it seemed impossible to keep their footing. There was no resource but to send the legions round by the circuitous route above described, and leave it to the cavalry to harass and impede the retreat of the enemy, which it was out of their power to arrest. Afranius left two cohorts in Ilerda, and carried all the rest of his forces across the river, where they joined the two legions already in advance, and thus proceeded on their way to Octogesa. Cæsar's cavalry continued to act with great effect on their rear; its operations were distinctly visible to the troops encamped on the heights on the other side, who were inflamed with admiration of the conduct of their more fortunate brethren, and stung with despair at seeing the enemy thus escaping out of their hands. The centurions and tribunes rushed tumultuously to their general, and besought him in the name of the legions to allow them to throw themselves into the ford. Cæsar himself was carried away by the contagion of their enthusiasm, though not without some apprehension for the result; he contented himself with leaving the weakest of the men behind with a single legion to protect the camp, and gave the rest the signal to advance. The passage was at length effected. The precaution had been taken to place beasts of burden in line, above and below, in the one case to break the force

CHAP.  
XV.

of the current<sup>1</sup>, in the other to rescue such as should be swept away by it; the cavalry also assisted in picking up the stragglers, and not a man was lost. The retreating Afranians had left their encampment in the first dawn of morning; but such was the alacrity and speed of the Cæsarians that they came up with them in the afternoon of the same day, though they had a circuit of six miles to make, and so formidable a barrier to surmount. But the retreat of the fugitives had been checked in some degree by the enemy's horsemen, and, deeming themselves secure from more serious interruption, they had not thought it necessary to make any special exertion. Their circumstances, however, were now altered. Afranius was compelled to halt and draw out his men in battle array, for Cæsar was advancing in three lines, as if prepared to demand an engagement. The pursuer now halted in his turn to give his troops rest and refreshment before drawing their swords. Afranius again threw his lines into column, and hurried forward, till the enemy, advancing once more, and pressing closely upon him, rendered escape impossible. The Pompeian general however was informed that at a distance of five miles a tract of hilly

<sup>1</sup> Lucan describes this operation at the passage of the Rubicon (i. 220.):

“Primus in *obliquum* sonipes opponitur amnem,  
Excepturus aquas; molli tum cætera rumpit  
Turba vado fracti faciles jam fluminis undas.”

The line of beasts below would also slacken the stream by acting as a dam to it, but it would increase the depth proportionally. The date of this passage of the Sicoris is assigned by Guischard to x. Kal. Sext. = Jul. 22 (*Mém. Mil.* iii. 193.), which corresponds with May 31 of the corrected calendar.



country commenced, in which the cavalry of his pursuers would be rendered unavailing. His intention now was to secure the defiles of these hills with forces sufficient to arrest the progress of pursuit, and so effect his retreat with the bulk of his army to the Ebro; and in this, which was the best course open to him, he might have succeeded had he persisted in continuing his march late into the night, which, considering the few miles he had yet traversed, required no extraordinary effort. But other counsels prevailed; the troops pleaded the fatigues of a day of marching and fighting, and the salvation of the republican cause in Spain was postponed to the morrow. Meanwhile, Cæsar, on his part, was satisfied with the feats his soldiers had performed that day, and he took up his position on the nearest eminence. But he maintained his vigilance through the silent hours of gloom. About midnight some stragglers from the Pompeian camp were brought to his quarters, and from them he learned that his opponents were preparing to evacuate their entrenchments under cover of the darkness. Immediately the Cæsarian trumpets sounded to arms, the tents were struck, baggage piled, arms and accoutrements buckled on; and the uproar of a camp of four legions breaking up announced far and wide that their general was on the alert, and ready to follow hard upon the track of the fugitives. Afranius was afraid to risk the result of a night engagement, to which he might be compelled in the narrow passes of the mountains, and countermanded the intended movement.

The next day was passed on both sides in ex-

Cæsar  
makes a

CHAP.  
XV.

feint, and  
moves to  
intercept  
the march  
of the  
enemy.

amining the nature of the country in the direction in which both armies were equally anxious to proceed. The Pompeian generals held a council, in which they determined to wait for the morning to continue their route, that they might at least have the advantage of daylight to repel the attacks of the enemy, whose vigilance they could not even in darkness elude. But Cæsar turned the information he had acquired to another account. By a rapid though circuitous march he saw that he could throw himself between the retreating army and the mountains. In the early twilight his battalions were observed to issue from their camp, and seemingly to retire in the track upon which they had advanced the day before. The Afranians were convinced that they were in rapid retreat towards Ilerda, overcome by famine, fatigue, or terror; but when they saw the dense columns wheel suddenly to the right<sup>1</sup> and sweep along the verge of the horizon towards the quarter whither they were themselves bound, the tactics of the supposed fugitives and at the same time their own imminent danger became apparent.

Cæsar  
brings the  
Afranians  
to a check,  
but will not  
suffer his  
soldiers to  
engage with  
them.

The breaking up of their camp, however, caused some little delay. At the same time the Cæsarian cavalry, hanging upon the flanks of the Afranians as they formed and advanced, impeded their movements; so that, in the efforts of both armies to

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 69. A wheel to the right after issuing from the rear of the camp (*contrarium in partem iri videbatur*) would lead them to the east of Afranius's camp, which would thus be placed between them and the Sicoris. The *loca aspera* and *angustiæ* which Cæsar mentions, Guischart supposes to be a defile between the mountains and this river. I think it describes the interior of the tract between the Sicoris and the Iberus.

gain the hills, the Cæsarians had so much the advantage as to be able to range themselves in order of battle at their foot, and effectually block up the road to Octogesa. An eminence in the plain afforded the harassed Afranians a position where at least they could recover breath and consider what course to take.<sup>1</sup> They first attempted to create a diversion by sending a body of the light-armed Spanish auxiliaries to occupy a hill on the flank of the Cæsarians; but the terrible Gaulish cavalry were immediately upon them, and cut them off to a man in sight of both armies. It was now evident that the Afranians, dispirited by their reverses, and inferior in cavalry, would have no chance against their assailants in the open plain. The Cæsarians were confident of dislodging them from the slight acclivity on which they had taken refuge; and, as before, the centurions and tribunes again surrounded their general, and urged him with almost threatening importunity to lead them to combat. But Cæsar had many reasons for wishing to refrain from an engagement which he believed to be superfluous; for the enemy, even though unassailed, could not long maintain their position for want of water, but, if driven to despair, might still cause him the loss of many of his bravest troops. Moreover, it accorded with his policy as well as his temper to avoid the effusion of Roman blood, whether on his own side or that of his opponents. And, above all, perhaps, his experience in

<sup>1</sup> The level country at the foot of the hills in which these manœuvres took place is, I conceive, the tract now called la Gariga, and the spot on which Afranius pitched his camp may be that of the village of Llardecans.



CHAP.  
XV.

Italy assured him that a large portion of the men now arrayed against him were, in their hearts, well disposed to join his colours. Accordingly, he steadily refused to listen to the demands of his imperious veterans, though in doing so he greatly offended them, and heard them muttering, with the licence to which they had been long accustomed, that another time fight they would not when Cæsar ordered them.<sup>1</sup>

Communi-  
cations are  
opened be-  
tween the  
soldiers in  
the opposite  
ranks.

The Pompeian generals, meanwhile, were in a state of great perplexity. All hope of the Ebro was abandoned; their choice of a retreat now lay between Ilerda and Tarraco. But their movements were closely watched, and circumscribed by the squadrons which hovered around them. No handful of forage nor cup of water could they procure except at the sword's point. The parties which they sent out for supplies were attacked, and only rescued by the succour of fresh battalions, which, in their turn, required to be supported by others; so that a large portion of the army was gradually drawn down into the lower ground. The generals ordered a trench and rampart to be constructed from the hill to the watering-place; the distance was great, the work arduous, and, to carry it through, required the presence and encouragement of all the superior officers. Meanwhile, the soldiers in the camp were left almost without superintendence; the Cæsarians straggled up to their entrenchments, and opened communications with such friends and acquaintances as the fortune of civil war had arrayed in the opposite ranks. By degrees

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. i. 72.

this distant intercourse ripened into familiarity and confidence; the soldiers of either party mingled freely among one another; and the enthusiasm with which Cæsar's veterans proclaimed the merits of their commander worked surely and speedily upon the indifference of the Afranians. The rival parties soon came to an understanding. The only stipulation which was made between them was, that the lives of the Pompeian generals should be guaranteed to them. Even Afranius' own son was forced to be satisfied with this assurance; and, upon its being given, the legions arrayed under his standard declared themselves content to surrender to a merciful and munificent enemy.<sup>1</sup>

The report of these important transactions brought both the Pompeian leaders hastily back to the camp. Afranius easily acquiesced in an arrangement in which his own safety had been carefully provided for; but Petreius, a man of sterner nature, would abandon neither his reputation nor his duty. It was usual for the general to have a body-guard about his own person, distinct from the maniples of the legions. That of Petreius consisted of a cohort of light native infantry, a small squadron of cavalry, and a number of private friends and attendants, who formed his staff or acted as his aides-de-camp. With these men who remained true to him, he rushed impetuously to the rampart at which the soldiers of the opposed armies were holding their treasonable conferences, broke up their meeting, drove the Cæsarians away with the slaughter of as many as he could lay hands upon,

Petreius interposes violently, and breaks off all intercourse between them.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. i. 74.

CHAP.  
XV.

---

and would have shown no more mercy to his own disaffected legionaries, had they not taken refuge within the camp, and implored the protection of their comrades in charge of the gate of entrance. But when he abated from the first fury of his onset, Petreius himself was also admitted peaceably within the entrenchments: the habits of discipline had returned.

Ferocity of  
Petreius.

Petreius now proposed the solemn form of the military oath not to desert nor to betray the army or the generals, nor to hold any private parley with the enemy. He first took the oath himself, then tendered it to his colleagues; next came the tribunes, and after them the centurions, and, finally, the whole body of the legionaries, century by century. Immediately strict orders were issued that every Cæsarian who had been entertained by a relative or friend in the camp should be brought forth and slain; but mercy or shame interfered to frustrate this atrocious command, and most of them were concealed till nightfall, and then sent privily away. Meanwhile, the conduct of Cæsar was studiously in contrast with this cruelty.<sup>1</sup> He carefully inquired for all the Pompeians who had strayed into his camp, and offered to send them back to their own quarters unharmed. But many of the officers were already so charmed with his demeanour, that they preferred to remain in his service, in which he gave them their old rank, or even promoted them to higher.<sup>2</sup>

The Afra-  
nians are

The Afranians were now reduced to great dis-

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 75.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 43. .

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 76, 77.



CHAP.  
XV.

---

 compelled  
to retrace  
their steps  
towards  
Ilerda.

tress for provisions, and at the same time were cut off from water. It was determined to direct the retreat upon Ilerda, where their magazines were not yet exhausted, rather than Tarraco, which lay at a greater distance, and where probably no preparation had been made for the maintenance of so large a force. Cæsar pressed closely upon them, and gave them no opportunity of supplying themselves. Constant skirmishes took place between the parties detached on each side for procuring provisions or intercepting them. When the Afranians pitched their tents for the night and formed their entrenchments near the river, Cæsar determined to confine them to the spot, and prevent them from reaching the water, by drawing a complete line of circumvallation around them. He had persevered for two days in this arduous work, which was already nearly completed, when the Pompeian leaders felt the necessity of interrupting it, even at the risk of provoking the enemy to a decisive combat. But Cæsar also was anxious on his part to avoid the risk and bloodshed of a general engagement with an opponent whom he expected to reduce ultimately upon much easier terms. It was only the mutinous importunity of his own troops, to all appearance, that induced him to put his men in battle array and confront the beleaguered Afranians in the attitude of defiance. The mode in which the two armies were drawn up, the main strength of each consisting equally of five Roman legions, shows how much the Cæsarian was superior in efficiency. The five legions of Afranius were ranged in two lines, each numbering twenty-five cohorts,

The armies  
are drawn  
up opposite  
each other  
in battle  
array.

CHAP.  
XV.

---

instead of the more usual array of three; for the cavalry and light-armed auxiliaries were of so little value that the general extended his centre to the utmost, and dispensed altogether with wings for the protection of his flanks. A third line was formed of the native auxiliaries, and their leader depended for his reserve upon those very battalions in which he could place least reliance. Cæsar, on the other hand, disposed his forces according to the approved system. The legions were arrayed in triple line; four cohorts of each legion, twenty in all, formed the first, three of each the second, and an equal number the third. The intervals between the cohorts were occupied by the light troops, the bowmen and slingers, and the flanks were protected by the redoubtable squadrons of Gaulish horse.

The Pompeian lieutenants are reduced to capitulate.

But the day passed without a blow being struck. The Afranians had not the courage to begin the attack, while their opponent checked the ardour of his own forces. The next morning the retreating army, which had succeeded thus far in keeping Cæsar's lines open, made a demonstration upon the side of the river<sup>1</sup>, with the desperate intention of crossing a scarcely practicable ford in the face of an active enemy. But the dispositions Cæsar made for covering the spot with his cavalry soon satisfied Afranius of the impossibility of escape in this direction. The moment had evidently arrived when the want of provisions for men and cattle, the discouragement of his soldiers, and the inferiority

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar gives no intimation where this ford was: it must have been at some point below Ilerda, and by this time the floods had no doubt entirely subsided.

of his strength, demanded the unreserved capitulation which his adversary had so long anticipated. The terms required by the conqueror were, that the lieutenants of Pompeius should abandon the province, laying down their military command, and therewith disbanding their forces. At the same time he engaged not to press any of the soldiers into his own service against their inclinations. To those who had families and possessions in Spain he gave permission to remain in the country; the rest he promised to escort safely to the frontiers of Italy, and there release them from their military engagements. With his accustomed policy he pledged himself also to abstain from any harsh treatment of their officers. Nor did he fail to display his wonted generosity, in satisfying from his own resources the demands for pay, which the soldiers were clamorously pressing upon their unfortunate generals.<sup>1</sup> The campaign was thus brought to a termination at the end of forty days<sup>2</sup>, and the brilliant success which Cæsar achieved added more lustre to his military reputation than even his great exploits in Gaul. He had fairly out-manceuvred a Roman army, not inferior to his own in strength, not indifferently commanded, and backed by all the strength and resources of the country in which it was engaged. The impregnable position of Ilerda, and the extraordinary swelling of the Sicoris, had contributed, in no slight degree, to the difficulties with which the assailant

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* i. 86, 87.

<sup>2</sup> See Curio's speech to his soldiers (*B. C.* ii. 32.).



CHAP.  
XV.

---

had had to contend; and, whether we look to the splendour of the victory or the importance of the result, the day of Cæsar's triumph over Afranius and Petreius deserved equally to be marked in the imperial calendar, and its memory celebrated, in after ages, by a festive anniversary.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Orelli (*Inscript.* ii. 396.) gives fragments of four ancient Kalendaria which record this circumstance: e. g. "Kal. Capranicorum, iiii. Non. Sext. feriæ quod hoc die imp. Cæsar Hispaniam citeriorem vicit." The same day was the anniversary of the subsequent defeat of Pharnaces. "Kal. Amitern. iv. Non. Sext. feriæ, quod eo die C. Cæs. C. F. in H[ispan. citer. et] quod in Ponto eod. die r[egem Pharnace]m devicit." The true date of the event is June 9, B.C. 49. See Fischer, *Römische Zeittäfel.*

## CHAP. XVI.

SIEGE AND CAPTURE OF MASSILIA. — CÆSAR RECEIVES THE SUBMISSION OF VARRO, AND ESTABLISHES HIS POWER THROUGHOUT THE SPANISH PROVINCES. — CAMPAIGN OF CURIO IN AFRICA: HIS DEFEAT AND DEATH. — DISASTER TO CÆSAR'S FORCES IN ILLYRICUM. — ADMINISTRATION OF ROME BY LEPIDUS AND M. ANTONIUS. — CÆSAR IS CREATED DICTATOR IN HIS ABSENCE. — HE QUELLS A MUTINY AMONG HIS TROOPS AT PLACENTIA, AND HASTENS TO ROME. — HIS FINANCIAL AND POLITICAL MEASURES. — HE IS ELECTED CONSUL, AND RESIGNS THE DICTATORSHIP. — PREPARES TO FOLLOW POMPEIUS ACROSS THE SEA. — ADVANTAGES OF HIS POSITION COMPARED WITH THAT OF HIS ADVERSARIES. A. U. 705. B. C. 49.

WHILE these operations were in progress in Spain, the success which D. Brutus had recently obtained over the Massilian fleet had given the besiegers a superiority at sea, and Trebonius was conducting his operations against the city by land with all the resources which the military art could supply. Mamurra, the chief of the engineering department, had merited Cæsar's unbounded favour by the skill he exhibited in his profession.<sup>1</sup> But the defenders of Massilia were provided, on their part, with abundance of military engines, which it had been the policy of the state to provide long beforehand for such an emergency. Accordingly, both the attack and de-

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

Situation  
of Massilia.

<sup>1</sup> Catullus speaks of the enormous wealth Mamurra had reaped from his services in Gaul, and makes it the ground of a gross charge against him and his commander (*Carm.* lvii.). Pliny (*H. N.* xxxvi. 7.) commemorates his profuse magnificence.

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

fence of their city exhibited the most consummate application of the principles and resources of warfare as then practised.<sup>1</sup> The Massilia of antiquity bore but little resemblance, even in its external features, to the city which has inherited its site and name. Cæsar describes it as washed by the waters of the sea on three sides ; but the port which then bounded it on the South is now surrounded by streets and houses. The French antiquaries assert also that a considerable part of the ancient city in its western quarter has been long since covered by the encroachment of the waves. The site of the temple of Diana, upon which the modern cathedral stands, was originally in the middle of the city, but is now on the margin of the sea. The lazaretto occupies the eminence on the north, upon which, according to Cæsar's description, the citadel stood ; and the side on which alone the city was exposed to attack from the land stretched from the base of this rugged elevation to the innermost angle of the port, along the line probably of the Cours St. Louis and the Rue Cannebière, which are now in their turn the most central regions in the whole assemblage of buildings.

Result of a  
naval en-  
gagement  
disastrous  
to the Mas-  
silians.

While Trebonius was conducting his first operations against the city, by the construction of an immense rampart, eighty feet in height, over against

<sup>1</sup> The power of the engines used in defence of a city may be estimated from Cæsar's statement, that the beams of wood, twelve feet in length, pointed with iron, which were hurled from them, pierced through four successive screens of wood-work, behind which the besiegers sheltered themselves while engaged in filling the ditch before the walls. Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 2. They were obliged to construct these *vineæ* of solid beams a foot in thickness.



the wall on the land side throughout its whole length, the besieged ventured to make another attempt upon the element in which they were wont to confide.<sup>1</sup> L. Nasidius had been sent by Pompeius with a squadron of sixteen vessels to throw succours into the city. He had directed his course from the eastern shores of the Mediterranean, through the straits of Messana, either unobserved by or in defiance of Curio, the Cæsarian commander in Sicily. Indeed he had ventured to enter the port of Messana, and cut out one vessel from the dock-yard. From thence he made sail for the shores of Gaul, sending forward one bark from his squadron to convey to the besieged the news of his arrival, and to exhort them to sally forth with their whole naval force and join him off Tauroentum, a port and fortress at a little distance on the coast. The Massilians, since their recent defeat, had devoted themselves with unwearied energy to repairing their galleys, and arming the merchant vessels and fishing boats with which their harbour swarmed. They were not disposed to shrink from making a second experiment of their prowess, while the acclamations of the unarmed multitude, of their women and old men, encouraged them to strain every nerve in a contest in which their pride was so deeply interested. Nor did the assailants, who had multiplied the numerical strength of their armament since the last engagement, and were prepared to decide the contest on the broad decks of their rude but massive fabrics, decline the prof-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 1—7.

CHAP.  
XVI.

ferred meeting.<sup>1</sup> In numbers, however, the fleet of the Massilians still preponderated; the prætorian galley of Brutus<sup>2</sup> was attacked at the same moment from opposite quarters by two powerful triremes, which dashed towards it with all the velocity their oars could impart. By a skilful turn of the rudder the Cæsarian steersman extricated his vessel from both the assailants at the instant when they were about to strike her on either side, and the opposing beaks impinged violently against each other. Thus entangled and mutually disabled they were speedily attacked, boarded, and destroyed. The Massilians and their allies, the Albici, are admitted to have fought admirably; but Nasidius gave them a very lukewarm support. As soon as the fortune of the day seemed to incline towards the Cæsarians, he quietly withdrew without the loss of a single vessel, while of his allies, thus treacherously deserted, five galleys were sunk and four captured. A Roman officer might naturally be reluctant to exert himself in behalf of Greeks, whom he despised or hated, against the bravest and most illustrious of his own countrymen. Nasidius seems indeed to have had further orders to execute on the coast of Spain, and it is not improbable that Pompeius had strictly charged him not to entangle himself too closely in the defence of a city to which he attached only secondary importance. He sailed for his ultimate destination without bidding adieu to the unfortunate Massilians, who with difficulty

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. iii. 512.:

“Sed rudis et qualis procumbit montibus arbor,  
Conseritur stabilis navalibus area bellis.”

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. iii. 535. “Bruti prætoria puppis.”

and in diminished numbers escaped into their harbour, and betook themselves, not even yet dismayed, to the defence of their walls. The entrance of the port of Massilia is so narrow that a chain drawn across it rendered it secure from the attacks of the victorious squadron.

But the operations which Trebonius was sedulously directing against the defences of the city on the land side were such as no artificial means of resistance were capable of effectually withstanding.<sup>1</sup> Indeed, it may be observed that, in the best times of Roman military science, the means of offence were generally much superior to those of defence. While a fortress such as that of Ilerda, perched on a lofty eminence, with a steep and narrow access, was justly deemed impregnable, no resources or skill could avail to protect a city which stood upon comparatively level ground against the assault of a persevering and enterprising besieger. Such was the site of Massilia, which had been chosen rather for the convenience of its haven than the natural security of its position. Having effected the complete blockade of the city by means of the gigantic barricade already described<sup>2</sup>, Trebonius proceeded to construct a tower at a short distance from the point in the wall which he destined for his attack. This tower was built of solid brickwork, and so covered with skins and mattresses that the blows of the enemy's ponderous missiles fell dead upon

Operations  
against  
Massilia :  
feigned  
capitulation  
and treach-  
ery of the  
besieged.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. ii. 8—14.

<sup>2</sup> Guischart in his *Mém. Militaires*, ii., has an elaborate discussion of these operations; but after all the ingenuity he has displayed in the explanation of them, there still remains much to perplex at least the non-professional student.



CHAP.  
XVI.

---

it, while other contrivances were applied to guard it from being set on fire. As soon as this prodigious edifice overtopped the walls, (a work, however, which, in the face of a vigilant enemy, must have cost much time and many lives,) the Massilians could no longer maintain themselves on the summit of their ramparts, commanded as they now were by the assailants from above. The next step on the part of the besiegers was to fill up the fosse under the protection of this tower, and erect close to the walls the musculus, a ponderous and well-compacted roof of timber, under which men could work without interruption, picking out the stones with crowbars, and undermining with manual labour the bulwarks of the city. The besiegers had thus succeeded in shaking one of the towers of the wall, and the rampart was tottering to its overthrow, when the Massilians hastened to anticipate, by a timely offer of capitulation, the moment which would deliver their hearths and altars to a furious and unbridled soldiery. Trebonius, on his part, had received strict orders to abstain from storming the city, which Cæsar was reluctant to surrender to the horrors of an assault. Accordingly, he was willing to accord honourable terms to the suppliant republic. His soldiers, indeed, murmured bitterly at being disappointed of the plunder which was almost in their grasp; it seems doubtful whether they would have continued to observe the armistice until the expected arrival of the Emperor himself. The apprehension of this uncontrollable fury may have driven the Massilians to violate the agreement they had themselves solicited, and, taking

advantage of the confidence reposed in them, to make a sudden attack upon the Roman works, and give them to the flames.

CHAP.  
XVI.

But this conspicuous instance of Grecian perfidy was displayed to no purpose. Trebonius resumed his operations with the same determination and on an ampler scale than before. The original barricade had been constructed principally of timber, and the conflagration had reduced it to ruins. He now repaired it with earthworks and solid masonry, and again pushed forward his covered galleries to the foot of the walls. Against these insidious enemies the great catapults on the ramparts were of no avail, for they were calculated to hurl their missiles to a distance, and their range could not be adjusted so as to reach an object immediately below them.<sup>1</sup> Once more the Massilians despaired of defending themselves, and ventured to tempt the forbearance of the conqueror by a second offer of capitulation.

The siege resumed.

The Massilians offer to capitulate a second time.

This time indeed it was not Trebonius or Brutus, but Cæsar, the politic and the merciful, with whom, as we shall presently see, they had to treat. The return to the camp before their walls of the great captain who had delivered Italy and pacified Spain, may both have cut off the last hope of escape, and at the same time have encouraged an augury of

Cæsar establishes his headquarters at Corduba.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. ii. 16.: "Suorumque tormentorum usum *spatio propinquitatis interire*." This obscure expression seems to be explained by Lucan (iii. 478.):

"Nec Graiis *flectere jactum*  
Nec facilis labor est longinqua ad bella parati  
Tormenti *mutare modum*, sed pondere solo  
Contenti nudis evolvunt saxa lacertis."

CHAP.  
XVI.

Vacillating  
conduct of  
Varro.

pardon. For, after the capitulation of the Pompeian lieutenants on the Sicoris, Cæsar had hastened to complete the reduction of the three provinces of the peninsula. He had marched directly towards the South, and established his head-quarters at Corduba, the Iberian capital, whither he had summoned to his presence the representatives of all the states and cities beyond the Pyrenees. Here the favourable sentiments of the Further Province were speedily pronounced, and it was in the full anticipation of the general concurrence of the native and colonial cities that Cæsar had postponed his return to finish the siege of Massilia.<sup>1</sup> Nor had he any serious opposition to fear from M. Varro. That officer, being left in command of the two districts into which the south and west of the peninsula were divided, had excused himself from joining the camp of his colleagues, retaining two legions at his side to ensure the submission of the natives and the fidelity of the Roman inhabitants. In the first instance, he had allowed himself to express a favourable opinion both of the cause and the prospects of the invader. He admitted in his public harangues the inclination of the province towards Cæsar; but, undecided thus far as to his own course, he had faintly pleaded the duty which as a *legatus* he owed to his imperator Pompeius, and thus allowed himself to reconcile the maintenance of his official command with an entire neglect of the active exertions demanded by the emergency. But the news of the vigorous resistance of Massilia, of the junction and subse-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 17—21.



quent successes of Afranius and Petreius, together with the assurances he received of the firm allegiance of the Hither Province, all these circumstances, coloured and magnified by the sanguine temper of Afranius in his correspondence with him, shook his resolution of neutrality. He now affected the greatest eagerness in the cause of the senate, and began to take vigorous measures for recruiting his forces, for collecting supplies for the Massilians, and equipping a naval armament for the conveyance to them of men and stores. He did not scruple to wield, in the interest of his commander, all the terrors of the Roman proconsulate, imposing arbitrary contributions upon the states which he suspected of favouring the enemy, and abusing the forms of law to mulct the Roman citizens whose disaffection was reported to him. He invaded the sanctuary of the Gods, and rifled the celebrated temple of Hercules at Gades. That important and hostile city he entrusted to C. Gallonius, a tried friend of Domitius, with a garrison of six cohorts. At the same time, the tone which he assumed in speaking of Cæsar was arrogant and violent. He described him as beaten in every engagement, and hourly abandoned by his soldiers; nor did he omit the solemn ceremony of summoning the Roman citizens throughout the province to renew the military oath of fidelity to their rightful proconsul.

But, notwithstanding all this pretended display of zeal, Varro was still cautious of openly taking the field against the general whom he so insolently disparaged. When the actual result of the contest

The province declares in favour of Cæsar. Varro is

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

deserted by  
his soldiers,  
and sur-  
renders.

in the north was disclosed, he proposed to shut himself up with his two legions in the insular fortress of Gades, where, supported by a naval force, and well supplied with stores and provisions, he deemed that his position would be impregnable till the proconsul should come to his relief. Cæsar was already advancing towards Corduba; he had pushed forward Q. Cassius, with two legions, upon Hispalis; and the fame of his victories had gone before him, and penetrated to the remotest quarters of the Pompeians. His mandate for the assembling at Corduba of the Iberian deputies had been received with respect and obeyed with alacrity. The Gaditans, inflamed with indignation at the desecration of their temple, had already tampered with the tribunes of the cohorts in garrison among them, and expelled Gallonius from their walls. Varro was on his march from Hispalis, the seat of his government, to the more secure retreat of Gades, when the result of this intrigue was announced to him. Immediately one of his legions wheeled about before his face, and returned to the city from which it had just departed. Without a general, and without quarters or provisions, the soldiers abstained from any act of violence, and quietly rested in the forum and under the colonnades in the streets, until the inhabitants, who admired their boldness and even sympathised in their preference for the expected conqueror, received and entertained them in their own houses. Varro now paused and attempted, as a last resource, to gain the walls of Italica; but this city also had suddenly declared itself against the senate, and refused to admit him.

No other course now remained but to acknowledge the ascendancy of the victor of the Sicoris, and proffer timely surrender; the unfortunate general sought to make a merit of his submission, by offering to bring over the legion which, in fact, he could no longer retain.<sup>1</sup> Caressed and flattered on all sides, Cæsar received the submission of his baffled opponent at Corduba. He prescribed complete reparation of the wrongs inflicted upon his own adherents, remitted the contributions which had been levied upon the provincials, and even restored the treasure and ornaments which had been carried off from the temple at Gades. Nor in the midst of all this liberality did he hesitate to pardon the double-dealing of Varro, and to treat him with the courtesy due to his character as a scholar rather than as a statesman or soldier. The three provinces were combined under the sole government of Q. Cassius, who had formed a thorough acquaintance with them at an earlier period, while serving in the peninsula as quæstor to Pompeius. Four legions were left behind to maintain the authority of the conqueror in the West. The inhabitants of Gades he attached to himself by the stronger tie of gratitude; for the Roman franchise, which he now bestowed upon them, more than counterbalanced the pecuniary contributions which, notwithstanding his lavish bounty in restoring his opponents' plunder, he was constrained to demand for the support of his armies.<sup>2</sup> In their noble

Cæsar arranges the affairs of Spain, and repairs to Massilia.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 20.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 21.; Liv. *Epit.* cx.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 43.; Dion. xli. 24., who tells a frivolous story, which I cannot quote, to account for Cæsar's liberality to the Gaditanes.



CHAP.  
XVI.

haven Cæsar took possession of the ships his predecessor had summoned thither, and embarked with a portion of his troops for Tarraco; from whence he pursued his journey by land through Narbo, and arrived, finally, at Massilia at the moment when that city, as has been seen, was about to fall into his hands.<sup>1</sup>

State of the  
province of  
Africa.

But while the arms of Cæsar, wherever he was personally engaged, were crowned with unalloyed success, the enterprizes which he was obliged to entrust to his lieutenants were less uniformly prosperous. The obstinate and perfidious resistance of the Massilians, indeed, had been brought to a close by the perseverance of Brutus and Trebonius, and both the islands of Sicily and Sardinia, so important from their proximity to Rome and the resources with which they abounded, had been evacuated by the garrison of the senate rather than conquered by Valerius and Curio. Thus the whole of the western half of the empire had fallen from the hands of the oligarchy, excepting only the province of Africa, destined to give the first decided check to Cæsar's triumphant progress, and to become, at a later period, the last stronghold of the commonwealth and its genuine defenders. This province occupied but a small portion of the coast of the Mediterranean, comprising the region of

<sup>1</sup> In crossing the Pyrenees Cæsar passed the spot where Pompeius, who had constructed the military road of communication between Gaul and Spain, had erected a trophy to commemorate his achievements in those regions. It need not be said that he abstained from destroying it, as a man of coarser mind would certainly have done: he contented himself with the indirect satire of placing in its vicinity a much simpler and more modest memorial of himself. Dion. *l. c.*

which Carthage had formerly been the metropolis. The more distant regions of Mauretania and Numidia, over which the Punic republic had extended its influence rather than its rule, had been acknowledged by the Romans as independent kingdoms; and Juba, the sovereign of the latter country, was attached to the interests of Pompeius, and hostile to those of Cæsar, on distinct personal grounds. To the former he owed his throne, having received at his hands the succession to his father Hiempsal; from the latter he had experienced an egregious insult on the occasion of his presenting himself as a suitor before the Roman senate. It happened, moreover, that Curio, the appointed bearer of the Cæsarian banner to the shore of Africa, had attempted to injure him in proposing, as tribune of the people, to deprive him of his sovereignty and dispose of his possessions by public sale.<sup>1</sup> There could be no doubt, therefore, that the fierce and vindictive Numidian would burn to avenge this ill-treatment by taking part with Pompeius against their common enemy. But it was at least possible that prudence might interpose to check the appetite for revenge; it might be presumed that, with the faithlessness attributed to his race, he would hesitate to compromise his interests on the score of ancient obligations; and, at the same time, the unsettled state of his frontiers, harassed as they constantly were by the marauding tribes of the interior, might paralyse his efforts, or at least retard his advance.

Hostility of  
Juba, king  
of Numidia,  
to Cæsar.

Such were probably the anticipations of Curio

Curio in-

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xli. 41.; Lucan. iv. 690.

CHAP  
XVI.

---

vades  
Africa, and  
obtains  
some suc-  
cesses over  
the Pom-  
peians and  
their allies.

when he crossed over from Sicily, with only two of the four legions under his orders, to expel the Pompeian general Attius Varus, who commanded a force in Africa certainly not inferior in numbers to his own. The capital of the Roman province was the famous city of Utica, which had succeeded, upon the destruction of Carthage, to as large a share of the military and commercial importance of the elder metropolis as was deemed consistent with a state of dependence and subjection to Rome. Varus was posted before the walls of this city, from whence it was hardly possible for so small a force as his adversary possessed to dislodge him. But he was deceived by the idea that Curio's legions, composed of the fickle cohorts of Domitius, were not disposed to stand staunchly by him<sup>1</sup>; he was irritated also at some trifling successes which the enemy had gained, and with these feelings he was induced to offer battle in another position, though still retaining a great advantage of ground. The charge of Curio's columns across a deep ravine and up an acclivity so steep that the soldiers required mutual assistance to mount it, spirited and brilliant as it was, could not have been executed in the face of a resolute enemy. But Varus acted with little skill or bravery, and suffered himself to be deprived of all the advantage of his new position. His troops were routed with little resistance, and fled with precipitation to their original entrenchments. Curio pursued them, and confidently resolved to undertake the siege of Utica, and to draw lines of circum-

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar, *B. C.* ii. 28.; Lucan. iv. 695.



vallation, after the example of his great master, round both the city and the legions encamped in front of it. A successful affair in which he had been engaged with a Numidian squadron encouraged him to underrate the power of his enemy's ally, while he had reason to believe that there was a Cæsarian party in Utica which would actively co-operate with him for its reduction.

Indeed, it would appear that Varus was already so severely pressed by the clamours and threats of the hostile faction within the city, that he was on the point of capitulating, when information was conveyed to him that Juba was advancing in person at the head of all his forces to his succour. The Numidian prince had adjusted this recent quarrel with the state of Leptis, and was now at leisure to indulge himself with taking vengeance upon his ancient enemies. Curio, as soon as he was apprised of this formidable diversion on his rear, broke up from his lines before Utica, and hastened to occupy a well-known military position on the coast hard by, rendered famous and, as he deemed, auspicious by the encampment there of Scipio Africanus.<sup>1</sup> From thence he sent pressing orders to Sicily for the embarkation of the two legions which he had left behind. But, in the meanwhile, he felt secure in the strength of his

On the advance of Juba, Curio entrenches himself in the Cornelian camp.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 24.: "Castra Corneliana." Lucan. iv. 661.:

"Curio lætatus, tanquam fortuna locorum  
Bella gerat, servetque ducum sibi fata priorum," &c.

Cæsar himself, on a later occasion, humoured the superstitious feelings of his soldiers, and perhaps indulged his own, in attaching great importance to the mere name of Cornelius in Africa. See below.

CHAP.  
XVI.

He is entrapped into fighting, defeated and slain.

position, and in the good fortune which had so conspicuously attended it.

The crafty Numidian employed a stratagem to wile the enemy from his entrenchments. The appearance of a small detachment of his forces in the plain beneath, and the rumour industriously spread that Juba had intrusted the relief of Utica to his vizir Sabura, and withdrawn from a personal share in the campaign, sufficed to impose on the rash and high-spirited Roman. The king, meanwhile, was lurking at a distance of only six miles, to support the detachment, upon which Curio launched himself in full confidence of an easy victory. Sabura adopted the common feint of retiring before the enemy's impetuous charge, till their ranks were broken and their strength nearly exhausted. When at last he turned and faced them, it was not with the paltry squadrons whose numbers they had despised, but with the whole strength of the Numidian monarchy, its clouds of native cavalry, its troops of elephants, its auxiliary infantry from Spain and Gaul; for the barbarian chieftain was as much afraid of his own subjects as of an enemy, and would only entrust his person to a guard of European mercenaries. The Romans were speedily overpowered by the multitudes which now surrounded them on every side. Fighting with their wonted constancy and valour, they could at least sell their lives dearly, and the example of their commander, who perceived at the last moment his fatal mistake, animated them in the struggle and consoled them in their fall. The gay, licentious braggart of the forum and the camp, the darling of

Cicero, the counsellor of Cæsar, the prime mover of the civil wars<sup>1</sup>, of which he was the first distinguished victim, crowned a career of inconsistencies and a character of contradictions by dying magnanimously in the foremost ranks of slaughter, rather than seek his personal safety after losing the army intrusted to him.<sup>2</sup> In vain,—so sang the dirge of the Roman oligarchy,—in vain had he profaned the rostra with his seditious eloquence, and waved the banner of democracy from the tribunitian citadel; in vain had he armed for unnatural duel the father against the husband; he fell before the day of mortal combat; the issue of his treason was veiled from his eyes: the gods, who failed to protect the state, were speedy in chastising the traitor. Yet he too had many noble gifts; he was tainted by the universal corruption: even his foe's malediction turns insensibly to praise. Lucan pronounces upon him the judgment of posterity with the pathos of Virgil and the sternness of Juvenal; and his name stands for ever conspicuous among the short-lived race of revolutionary heroes.<sup>3</sup>

Asinius Pollio was one of the few officers who, with a small body of men, were able to make their escape from the general massacre. A detachment had been left in charge of the camp under M. Ru-

Capitulation of the remnant of the Cæsarians. Cruelty and

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. iv. 819.:

“Momentumque fuit mutatus Curio rerum.”

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 32—42.

<sup>3</sup> The reflections on the death of Curio form one of the most animated and interesting passages in the revolutionary epic. Lucan. iv. 799.:

“Quid nunc rostra tibi prosunt turbata, forumque,  
Unde Tribunitia plebeius signifer arce,” &c.



CHAP.  
XVI.insolence  
of Juba.

fus; but the impossibility of holding the position was immediately perceived, and every effort was made to collect vessels for embarking this miserable remnant for Sicily. In the hurry and confusion with which the embarkation was conducted, many of the transports were sunk with all on board; a small number only of the soldiers got clear off; the rest, deprived of their last chance of escape, were compelled to seek terms of capitulation from Varus. But when Juba beheld them approaching the Roman encampment, he suddenly fell upon them with the ferocity of a barbarian conqueror claiming the right to deal with them as his own prisoners. Varus remonstrated against this proceeding, having, as he urged, pledged his word for their safety; but Juba, so far from paying any regard to his instances, as soon as he had seen his orders carried out, rode into Utica at the head of his triumphant army, and presumed to dictate arrangements at his own pleasure for the government of the Roman colony. To the greater shame of the republic, it was said that several senators, of whom the names of Ser. Sulpicius and Licinius Damasippus are especially mentioned, did not scruple to follow in his train, and abet this act of audacious presumption. When he had thus settled every thing by his own royal mandate, he returned with all his forces into Numidia.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar sus-  
tains a  
heavy loss  
in a naval

At the same time Cæsar's fortunes were assailed in another quarter by a disaster hardly less signal.<sup>2</sup> The province of Illyricum, the most obscure por-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 44.; App. *B. C.* ii. 46.

<sup>2</sup> There is no mention of this event in Cæsar's Commentaries on the civil war. It may be conjectured that the second book, which as it

CHAP.  
XVI.engagement  
off the coast  
of Illyri-  
cum.

tion of the immense government which had been confided to him, became of considerable importance to his interests, now that his opponents had placed the Adriatic between his legions and their own. As soon as he should have secured his rear by the subjugation of the western provinces, he meditated the passage of this narrow gulf. It was, therefore, essential to his plans to strengthen the position he already held on the opposite shore, to confirm the favour of the natives in his behalf, and to establish the magazines which might be requisite for a future campaign in Dalmatia or Epirus; though, indeed, he may have justly disregarded as visionary the project attributed to Pompeius by some of his most sanguine adherents, of marching through this trackless region into the north of Italy. Accordingly, he sent C. Antonius, a younger brother of Marcus, to take the command of the detachments by which the province was held, and commissioned Dolabella<sup>1</sup> to co-operate with him by sea as far as his inferior naval equipments would permit.<sup>2</sup> But Bibulus, who commanded the naval armaments of the senate, sent a superior squadron to encounter the Cæsarian flotilla, a part of which he adroitly entrapped and severely handled. Such was the

now stands is disproportionately short, has come to us imperfect, and that this, together with some subsequent transactions, was related in the missing portion.

<sup>1</sup> This was Cicero's son-in-law, through whose influence he hoped to retain the favour of the proconsul, at the same time that he so bitterly stigmatized his invasion of Italy in his private correspondence.

<sup>2</sup> Florus says that he was ordered "Fauces Adriatici maris occupare" (iv. 2.); but this was quite impossible, seeing the acknowledged naval superiority of the Pompeians. The utmost Dolabella could do would be to creep along the coast from harbour to harbour, and try to preserve Antonius's communications with Italy.

CHAP.  
XVI.

ferocity of M. Octavius and L. Scribonius Libo, the senatorial leaders, such at least was it reported to be, that the Cæsarians despaired of receiving quarter. The wild resolution of the tribune Vulteius, who persuaded the crew of his vessel to destroy one another rather than fall into the hands of so ruthless an enemy, was remembered in after times as a splendid instance of the old military devotion.<sup>1</sup> If the story be true, it gives us a frightful idea of the recklessness of life engendered by the savage warfare of the times. What value would men set upon the lives of their enemies who held their own so cheap? But however cold-blooded the cruelty of the conquerors generally to prisoners who refused the alternative of taking service under them, the officers of the senate seem on this occasion to have exhibited no such inveterate hostility to the captured Cæsarians. C. Antonius, coming to the relief of Dolabella, was defeated, and thereupon entered with all his forces, estimated by one writer at fifteen cohorts<sup>2</sup>, into the service of the consuls.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Florus, *l. c.*; Lucan. iv. 474. foll. The poet's gloomy application of this story is worth remarking as an illustration of the sentiments of his own times when suicide was contemplated among the ordinary contingencies of life:

“Non tamen ignavæ post hæc exempla virorum  
Percipient gentes quam sit non ardua virtus  
Servitium fugisse manu: sed regna timentur  
Ob ferrum, et sævis libertas uritur armis,  
Ignoratque datos ne quisquam serviat enses.”

<sup>2</sup> Oros. vi. 15. There is no trace of any force of such magnitude being detached from Cæsar's armies into this region, and it seems most likely that Antonius's troops consisted principally of the local militia who had no personal attachment to the proconsul.

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 4. and 10. In the latter passage the reading *Cor-*



We have seen that Cæsar, on his departure for Spain, left the city under the charge of Lepidus, and Italy under that of M. Antonius. In Rome itself the members of the nobility who had remained, or had lately returned were either devoted to Cæsar's cause, or avowedly neutral. The middle class of citizens was also generally favourable to him; it was only the licentious and versatile mob that could cause any anxiety to the prefect of the city. But this mob required to be constantly kept in good humour, and was ready at any moment to raise clamours in the theatres and other public places, which excited the hopes of the Pompeians, and hindered the complete tranquillization of men's minds throughout the country. Beyond Rome, the task committed to M. Antonius was more difficult. The patrician villas of the Campanian coast were crowded by illustrious personages openly hostile to Cæsar's schemes, and only deterred from uniting themselves with his rival by an almost equal jealousy of his designs, and still more, perhaps, by distrust of his fortunes.<sup>1</sup> Such was Cicero, such was C. Marcellus, such was Servius Sulpicius, each of them men of distinguished re-

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

Adminis-  
tration of  
Lepidus in  
the city,  
and of M.  
Antonius in  
Italy.

*cyra* seems to be an error for *Coricta*, the scene of this event mentioned by Appian, ii. 47.; Drumann, i. 524.

<sup>1</sup> These men persisted in amusing themselves with the vain hope that Cæsar's soldiers would turn against him. Cicero says that the centurions of three cohorts stationed at Pompeii came to him at his Cumæan villa and offered to deliver the city to him. Under any circumstances he was prudent in declining such an offer; but when it came to the point he acknowledges a suspicion that it was made in bad faith with the view of entrapping him. *Cic. ad Att. x. 16.* He adds: "Omnem igitur suspicionem sustuli." He is painfully apprehensive of giving any cause of umbrage to the men in power.

CHAP.  
XVI.

Cicero and  
other Pompeians are  
forbidden to  
leave Italy.

putation both from their personal character, and from the high magistracies which they had all recently filled. While these men were balancing, as we have already seen in the case of the most illustrious of the number, whether they should betake themselves to the senatorial camp, Antonius received his master's orders to prevent any personage of distinction leaving the Peninsula at all. He placed all their movements under strict observation, while at the same time he carefully abstained from any harsh measures of restraint. His language was no less courteous than his actions were mild. Cicero communicated to Antonius his wish to leave Italy for a time, and seek an asylum in some place, such as Sicily, where he might hope to enjoy dignified leisure, apart from the disturbances of civil strife. Cato was still master of the island, and Cicero did not anticipate Curio's attack upon it, much less his unresisted conquest of it. But Antoius pleaded in reply the strict injunctions of his superior not to allow any one of so exalted a class to evade the direct superintendence of the central authority; at the same time he dexterously hinted that an application to Cæsar himself would be flattering and possibly successful.

Cicero's  
scurrilous  
declama-  
tions against  
Antonius.

Cicero, however, was not deceived as to the real meaning of this courteous communication: it was, he felt, in reality as arbitrary and decisive as the formal missives by which the Spartan ephors cashiered their military sovereigns.<sup>1</sup> He revenged himself, in his correspondence with Atticus, by

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* x. 10.: "Habes σκετᾶλην Λακωνικήν."

puerile declamations against the prefect's vices. He represented Antonius as making his progresses through Italy with the mime Cytheris at his side, surrounded by his lictors, followed by a train of panders and concubines, nor scrupling to introduce his own wife and mother into the same odious company<sup>1</sup>; exciting the disgust of all moderate and decent men by his profligate manners and his audacious pride. Claiming his descent from the hero Anton, the son of Hercules, he aped, it seems, the symbols of his divine progenitor, to whom he was supposed to bear a personal resemblance.<sup>2</sup> At a later period, at least, he stamped the figure of the Nemean lion on his coins<sup>3</sup>, and presented himself publicly in a chariot drawn by the monarchs of the forest.<sup>4</sup> In what way he paraded these animals at this time does not clearly appear, but Cicero encourages his correspondent not to be alarmed at Antonius's lions.<sup>5</sup> It would indeed be

<sup>1</sup> Comp. *ad Att.* x. 10. with *Phil.* ii. 24. The letter in which these circumstances are related was written from his villa at Cumæ, at the very time that he was in correspondence with Antonius and Curio about the course which it would be prudent for him to take. In the speech he expressly says that he was not in Italy (implying that he was already in the camp of Pompeius) at the time. It is impossible after this to attach any special weight to the scandalous imputations he throws out against Antonius.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Anton.* 4. : προσὴν δὲ καὶ μορφῆς ἐλευθερίου ἀξίωμα, καὶ πῶγων τις οὐκ ἀγεννῆς, καὶ πλάτος μετώπου, καὶ γρυπότης μυκτῆρος ἐδόκει τοῖς γραφομένοις καὶ πλαττομένοις Ἡρακλέους προσώποις ἐμφερὲς ἔχειν τὸ ἀβρύνωπόν.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Eckhel, *Doctr. Numm.* vi. 44. This figure appears on a coin supposed to be of the date 715 u.c. It occurs also on one struck by Antonius at Lugdunum in Gaul, a city which was much attached to him. Vaillant supposes that its modern name Lyon is derived from the Antonian symbol.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. *H. N.* viii. 21.

<sup>5</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* x. 13. : "Tu leones Antonii ne pertimescas cave."



CHAP.  
XVI.

strange if a licentious and arrogant man, such as the tribune undoubtedly was, should have exhibited no marks of bad taste and selfish indulgence on so sudden an elevation. But the colouring of his calumniator is unworthy of our confidence; and even if we were to admit every thing that Cicero says against him, the progress of Antonius through Italy would still stand in luminous contrast to the devastating march of almost any of its previous conquerors.

Final sub-  
mission of  
Massilia.  
Escape of  
Domitius.

We have seen that the defenders of Massilia were on the point of surrendering, when Cæsar's good fortune brought him in triumph to their gates just in time to receive their submission in person. L. Domitius, by whose fierce hostility they had been animated throughout their long struggle, contrived by slipping out of the haven to avoid falling a second time into the hands of the conqueror whose clemency he had abused. He will next reappear in the Pompeian camp at Thessalonica. The perfidy of the Greeks was prudently forgotten, their submission graciously accepted, and their city saved from pillage, though the appetite of the besiegers was whetted by perils and fatigues, and they had revelled in the fullest anticipation of military licence. The surrender of all their munitions of war, together with the treasure of the republic, was rigorously enforced; and if the inhabitants were allowed the enjoyment of their own laws and institutions, they were effectually deprived of the means of defending them.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar  
created dic-

It was at this moment that Cæsar received in-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 22.; Dion. xli. 25.; Liv. *Epit.* cx.

telligence that he had been declared dictator at Rome by the appointment of the prefect Lepidus.<sup>1</sup> The creation of this extraordinary magistrate was an expedient recognized, by traditional usage, on occasions of the greatest emergency. In the earliest ages of the republic the appointment was exercised by the consuls by the command or with the consent of the senate.<sup>2</sup> The people had no voice in the matter, nor were the peculiar restrictions under which the office was held adopted with any view to their protection. The appointment of a dictator was, in fact, the resource which the nobles reserved to themselves whenever the ordinary political forms were insufficient to resist the demands of the commons. But as the commons grew in strength, and asserted equal privileges with the nobles, such an arbitrary power could no longer be safely exercised. The senate resorted to another expedient to protect itself, whenever its privileges seemed threatened with imminent peril. On such occasions it passed a solemn resolution, declaring the state in danger, and investing the consuls with summary powers for maintaining the public safety. Accordingly, with the single exception of Sulla's appointment, which was made in the intoxication of an overwhelming triumph, there had been no creation of a dictator for a hundred and twenty years. Indeed Sulla's revival of this unpopular authority, and his frightful abuse of it, had con-

tator in his  
absence.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* ii. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Arnold, *Hist. of Rome*, i. 144. : "One of the consuls received the name of the person to be declared dictator from the senate; he then declared him dictator, and he was confirmed and received the imperium by a vote of the great council of the curiæ."

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

centrated upon it the whole force of the national odium. Pompeius had not ventured to claim it; he had contented himself with the more irregular but less hateful assumption of the sole consulship. It might now be doubted whether the people would endure it, even when exercised by their own champion, and ostensibly for their own interest.

Cæsar's  
object in  
seeking the  
appoint-  
ment at  
this time, to  
hold the  
consular  
comitia and  
obtain the  
consulship.

The circumstances, however, which compelled Cæsar to run the hazard of thus awakening the jealousy of his own adherents were peculiar. There can be no doubt that he had himself suggested to Lepidus to make the appointment; but, in doing so, he had not yielded to the indulgence of puerile vanity. It was the proper function of the consuls for the current year to convene the people for the election of their successors. The consulship was the dignity for which Cæsar had long contended. The exalted position he occupied, and the great services he had rendered the state, gave him an undeniable claim to the fasces, even for the second time, upon the expiration of his provincial government. For this he had quarrelled with the party of the optimates, who had striven by every kind of violence and intrigue to thwart him. For this he had taken up arms and crossed the Rubicon; and now, having driven his enemies fairly out of Italy, he was ready, he declared, to present himself to the people for this, and this only. But the consuls were absent from the city; no election could take place at Rome; neither, on the other hand, could an election be made under the consular auspices elsewhere



than at Rome. Lepidus, indeed, asserted that as prætor he had the right to hold the consular comitia. But an outcry was raised against the legality of this claim; and Cicero argued that an inferior magistrate could not rightfully preside at the election of a superior.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar was studious to preserve appearances, and, on this occasion, he forbade his minister to perform an act which could bear even a colour of illegality. It was, however, of great importance to his views that the state should not fall under an interregnum. The office of the interreges was to supply the place of the consuls on the occurrence of an unavoidable vacancy, until such time as a formal election could be held under their sanction.<sup>2</sup> But the law restricted the choice of interreges to the patrician houses, and in that class there was so much jealousy of Cæsar that under their authority he apprehended fresh obstacles would be thrown in his way.<sup>3</sup> There remained, therefore, only one other feasible course, and this was the appointment of a dictator, in whom the right of holding the consular comitia was undeniably vested. If such a sovereign magistrate was to be appointed, it was upon Cæsar alone, as the foremost man in the state, that the burden and the dignity could alight. He accepted the office as the only means of arriving at the consulship. Nevertheless, it was still a question

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 9.: "Iste omnium turpissimus et sordidissimus (Lepidus) qui consularia comitia a prætore ait haberi posse."

<sup>2</sup> It was by an interrex that Sulla had been created dictator. Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 15.

<sup>3</sup> Drumann, iii. 475.; Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 9.: "Permagni ejus interest rem ad interregnum non venire."

CHAP.  
XVI.

whether, in the absence of the consuls, the prætor had strictly the right to make this nomination. It may be remembered, indeed, that the first dictator was appointed at a period when there was no distinction between the functions of the two officers, so that it is not improbable that the archives of the early republic might furnish at least a literal precedent for such a proceeding. There seems, however, to have been a general impression that there was some irregularity in the transaction, though the historians express themselves very differently upon it.<sup>1</sup> Under such circumstances, it must have been a matter of great satisfaction to Cæsar that the intelligence of this appointment reached him at a moment when there was nothing to prevent his setting off immediately for Rome. Delay at such a conjuncture might have been fatal; but Spain was converted to his side, Gaul vaunted her zeal for his interests, Massilia was pacified<sup>1</sup> and crushed. The broad beaten track of the Aurelian Way lay before him, and the proconsul crossed the Alps with the expedition of a courier.

Cæsar  
quells a  
mutiny  
among his  
soldiers at  
Placentia.

Nevertheless, there remained yet another labour to be overcome before he reached the consummation of his desires. For a moment the very foundation of all his power seemed crumbling under his feet. After the disappearance of the senatorial forces from the shores of Italy, Cæsar,

<sup>1</sup> Flor. iv. 2. : "consulem se ipse fecit." Appian. *B. C.* ii. 47. : *καὶ αὐτὸν ὁ δῆμος πεφρικῶς ἤρεϊτο δικτάτωρα οὔτε τι τῆς βουλῆς ψηφίζομένης, οὔτε προχειροτονήσαντος ἀρχοντος.* Zonaras, x. 8. : *αἰρεθεὶς δὲ δικτάτωρ ὑπὸ τῆς βουλῆς.*

as we have seen, had stationed a portion of his troops in the southern extremity of the Peninsula, to resist any sudden attempt of the fugitives to regain the land. Another and apparently a larger division<sup>1</sup> had been quartered at Placentia, in the valley of the Po, as a central point between Rome, the frontier of Gaul, and the north-eastern corner of the Peninsula; in which latter direction it was just possible that Pompeius might move upon his flank, if he were worsted in Spain, or detained under the walls of Massilia. This reserve was augmented by the arrival of the division, consisting of one or more legions, which had been detached from the army in Spain to escort the Afranians as far as the Var. It seems probable that their fidelity to their leader was partly corrupted by familiar intercourse with their fellow-citizens who had so recently served on the opposite side. We have already seen how rapidly the sense of discipline might be thus undermined. But the veterans had mortifications of their own to brood over. Their commander, it is asserted, had never yet found himself in a position to give his promised largess of five minæ to each soldier. He had also withheld from them a prize they might deem not less legitimately theirs, in forbidding the sack of cities and renouncing the confiscation of private property. The news of his having shielded Massilia from plunder roused the soldiers to a pitch of frenzy. It seemed

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xli. 26.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 47.; Oros. vi. 15. Guischard calculates that three of the veteran legions were quartered at Placentia. *Mém. sur l'Armée de César*, in tom. iii. p. 62. of the *Mémoires Militaires*.



CHAP.  
XVI.

the crowning act of interference with the rights of military licence. It does not appear how far the spirit of insubordination had spread; the ninth legion, one of the most distinguished in the Gallic wars, was thoroughly demoralized. Cæsar flew to the spot, and his presence doubtless restored the greater number to a sense of their duty. He felt that he was supported, and the bolder the front he assumed, the more he was assured would that support be confirmed. He addressed the mutineers in one of those spirit-stirring harangues with which, like most great commanders, he could sway their affections as he pleased. At first, assuming the boundless generosity of perfect confidence, he declared that he would release from his oath who-soever wished to retire. But when the disaffected shouted their approbation of this indulgence, and he suddenly changed the language of his address from *Romani*, or *soldiers*, to *Quirites*, or *citizens*, shocked and abashed the multitude shrank before him.<sup>1</sup> Such was the disparagement implied in this honourable title, according to the ideas of a brutalized soldiery, that the whole current of their fury was arrested and changed by one magic word. They were now as eager in signifying their repentance, as before in testifying their dissatisfaction. Cæsar, however, was not to be won too easily. He

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. v. 358. :

“Tradite nostra viris ignavi signa Quirites.”

Suet. (*Jul.* 70.) tells the same story on the occasion of a mutiny of the tenth legion before Rome at a later period. See also Dion. xlii. 53.; App. *B. C.* ii. 92. But the poet is so faithful to the letter of history, even in his ornamental details, that I think his expressions may be adopted here.

proceeded to disband the entire ninth legion; but at their urgent entreaty, and upon the strongest assurances of their penitence, he contented himself with making some severe examples, according to the laws of Roman discipline, to which, sanguinary as they were, the soldiers were passionately attached. He required one hundred and twenty of the most violent mutineers to be delivered to him, and selected twelve of the number for death. When he discovered that one of these had been unjustly accused, he ordered the centurion who had given the false information against him to take his place.<sup>1</sup>

When we consider what expectations of a dictator's rule would be formed by the various parties and conflicting interests of the republic, we cannot fail to estimate the extreme difficulty of Cæsar's position upon his return. He was now for the first time summoned to carry out the principles which he had inscribed upon his banner on his first entrance into political warfare. He was called upon to repudiate those which his enemies and his extravagant partizans alike imputed to him. His elevation was similar to that of Pompeius in his sole consulship; but it was not easy for him to imitate the moderation of his opponent in dealing with disputed rights and reforming social abuses. The old conservative element of the commonwealth, upon which Pompeius could securely

Difficulties  
of Cæsar's  
position as  
dictator.

<sup>1</sup> Dion, and Appian, *ll. cc.*; Suet. *Jul.* 69. The account of this transaction, which is wanting in Cæsar's Commentaries, would have been found in the portion of the second book, which is supposed to be missing.

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

lean when hard pressed by the revolutionists, was broken to pieces by the flight of the consuls and their adherents. On the other hand, the arrogance of the innovators and reformers, of those who would sweep away the foundations of social confidence, and reconstitute society on the arbitrary basis of financial enactments, was flushed by success. So great a change of men in the government of the commonwealth had never before been effected without a loud cry for blood as well as for plunder: the old animosities of class and party had never before been allayed except by the massacre of the conquered. It remained yet to be seen how far the progress of society had modified these sanguinary instincts; whether the recent growth of a middle and neutral interest of capitalists and financial speculators had tended to assuage the violence of political action; above all, whether the advance of civilization had, at last, brought upon the stage a great political champion, of more humane and philosophical character than the military ruffians of an earlier generation.

Confidence  
reposed in  
his firmness  
and deter-  
mination to  
resist the  
cry for con-  
fiscation  
and blood.

We have seen that the moneyed interest of the capital had invoked the success of Cæsar, as offering the fairest prospect of that permanent tranquillity, which it prized above any party triumph. The political excitement of recent years had benumbed its industry by anxiety and distrust. But it was well known that the victorious champion of a great political change would be urged by a large class among his adherents to combine with it a social revolution also. The general abolition of private debts was a familiar cry which had long swelled



the chorus of popular clamour against Sulla and the optimates, the dictator and the senate. Accordingly, the class of creditors showed great sagacity in the confidence which they placed in Cæsar, as the man of all others whose moderation would reject, and whose firmness would overcome, such a pressure. He at least, they were assured, had never adopted the language of the Cinna's and Catilina's. The good sense with which he had kept aloof from the intrigues of recent conspirators had not been lost upon the wary observers of public events. The respect he had shown for private property, under circumstances of great temptation, had raised an exalted opinion of his good faith and moral courage. His influence had extended, during his own absence, to his ministers in Rome and Italy; whatever were their faults and their personal unpopularity, Lepidus and Antonius had thus far scrupulously adhered to the principles they had imbibed from him. They had not violated public faith, they had respected property, they had refrained from blood. On the other hand, many who really wished well to the cause of the nobles durst not resort to their camp, where proscription or at least confiscation awaited them for their previous delay. At Rome, the head-quarters of the Cæsarians, their persons were secure, and even their adhesion, with few exceptions, unsolicited. Conservatism was angry and revengeful, innovation tolerant and placable; the striking contrast they now mutually exhibited was an efficient agent in consolidating Cæsar's victory.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 75.: "Denuntiante Pompeio pro hostibus se habiturum

CHAP.  
XVI.

---

Cæsar's  
financial  
measures.

The dictator wielded within the city the paramount authority which, in the case of the consul whom he superseded, was jealously limited to the camp. He was not required to surrender the command of his army on entering the precincts sacred to the peaceful gown. In the language of the poet, he combined the sword with the axe, the eagles of the imperator with the rods of the curule magistrate.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar could now appear publicly in the forum for the first time since his appointment to the government of Gaul. He presented himself to a senate of his own adherents, and a people whose favourite he had ever been, after an absence of nearly ten years, with all his former popularity, and with more than the promised renown of his early career. As he walked over the ashes of the Clodian conflagration, among the rising columns of his destined edifices, Rome might fondly hope that the era of blood and fire had passed away, and peace revived at his command with arts and opulence. But meanwhile, the general uncertainty which darkened the political horizon had caused a wide-spread repugnance to the discharge of pecuniary obligations. The impression had long prevailed, that the time was coming for a scramble for property. Every one was anxious to turn his effects into money, and to keep what he

qui reipublicæ defuissent, ipse medios et neutrius partis suorum sibi numero futuros pronuntiavit."

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. v. 387. :

"Ne ferri jus ullum Cæsar abesset  
Ausonias voluit gladiis miscere secures :  
Addidit et fasces aquilis."

could realize in his own coffers. All were eager to sell, few to buy. The creditors became harsher in exacting their dues, as the difficulty of enforcing their claims became greater. Their mortgages sunk in value, till it became expedient to make almost any sacrifice to secure an adjustment with their debtors. The method which Cæsar adopted for compromising the respective claims of the two classes, was to estimate these obligations according to the scale of prices at a period antecedent to the late commotions, when money circulated freely and plentifully, and to allow debts to be discharged without the payment of the accumulated interest.<sup>1</sup> The debtor was thus generally relieved from a liability which he could not discharge, while the creditor sacrificed a portion of his dues, amounting, however, as was calculated, to not more than one fourth.<sup>2</sup> As an expedient for reducing prices to their usual level, and restoring the abundance of the circulating medium, which there was so strong a disposition to hoard, the dictator sanctioned another ordinance of an arbitrary kind. He limited to sixty thousand sesterces the amount of coin which the citizen might retain in his possession.<sup>3</sup> But as this provision, vexatious

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 42.; comp. Plut. *Cæs.* 37.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 48.

<sup>3</sup> Dion. xli. 38. Drumann refers to a similar ordinance of the emperor Tiberius, Tac. *Ann.* vi. 16.; Suet. *Tib.* 49.: "Der Kaiser dachte nicht an das allgemeine Beste, sondern an seine Sicherheit: ohne Geld konnte man sich nicht gegen ihn verschwören" (iii. 472. note). The class which had speculated on a sweeping abolition of debts were so dissatisfied with Cæsar's moderation that many of them withdrew to the camp of the senate in consequence. Sallust. *Orot. ad Cæs.* ii. 2.



CHAP.  
XVI.

and inquisitorial as it was, would be little more than a dead letter, unless the inmates of the family were encouraged to denounce the violation of it, the multitude, delighted at any sumptuary restriction on the advantages of wealth, demanded that the testimony of slaves should be received in such cases against their masters. Cæsar, however, remained steadfast to the old principles of Roman law, and refused to sanction so dangerous an innovation.<sup>1</sup>

Amnesty  
granted to  
the victims  
of Pom-  
peius's and  
Sulla's en-  
actments.

The dictator's next measure was to procure the recal from banishment of certain personages who had been proscribed by the enactments of his adversaries. These penalties had been inflicted, for the most part, under the law of Pompeius against bribery at elections. But the delinquents had been zealous in proffering their services to the armed assailant of the government by which they had suffered; they promised to become useful to his cause, and policy prompted him to satisfy their demands. The indignation of the patrician purists knew no bounds. While Cæsar was still absent in Spain, Antonius had held out the expectation of such an act of grace, and the sympathy he had thus expressed for the victims of the laws was branded as one of the worst of his enormities. In Cicero's view, such an act would fill the measure of Cæsar's iniquities. Sulpicius had declared that, if the exiles returned, he must himself go into exile.<sup>2</sup> In the meanwhile Cæsar had abstained from receiving these applicants into his ranks. He waited till their

<sup>1</sup> Dion. *l. c.*

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* x. 14.

recal should proceed from the mouth of the sovereign people; and he now suggested to certain high magistrates to lay a proposition to that effect before the assembly.<sup>1</sup> But the amnesty was extended to more than one class of sufferers. Gabinius was among those who profited by it to return to Rome. On the other hand, it was denied to Milo, who had perhaps made himself obnoxious in the defence of Massilia.<sup>2</sup> It must be allowed that this exception was in flagrant contradiction to the motive which the dictator himself assigns for the measure, his anxiety to reverse legal sentences which had been inflicted at a period when the tribunals were coerced by Pompeius's military force. It is probable that with this measure was connected another, the subject of which had at least been broached on a former occasion, the rehabilitation of the descendants of Sulla's victims.<sup>3</sup>

At the same time Cæsar accomplished an act, the policy and justice of which he had recognized at a much earlier period, and of which his own interests had never failed to remind him: this was the conferring the Roman franchise upon the Transpadane Gauls.<sup>4</sup> His connexion with this people had been of long duration, and almost at

Full citizenship conferred on the Transpadane Gauls.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 1. : "Prætoribus tribunisque plebis rogationes ad populum ferentibus."

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 48.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 37. Dion, as we have seen, places it before the campaign in Spain; Velleius (ii. 43.), in Cæsar's ædileship, A. U. 689.; but this is certainly an error, as Cicero had maintained the exclusion in his consulship.

<sup>4</sup> Dion. xli. 36.; comp. Tac. *Ann.* xi. 24.

CHAP.  
XVI.

his first outset in political life, his enemies suspected that it was from thence that he was to draw the military force which was to support the imaginary conspiracy with which they charged him.<sup>1</sup> We have seen the insolence and violence with which this connexion had been resented by the nobles, in the treatment of the proconsul's clients at Novum Comum. But the elder Curio, a high authority among the optimates, had allowed the abstract justice of the concession for which Cæsar contended. He withstood it only from a perverse misapprehension of the interests of the commonwealth.<sup>2</sup> The time had now arrived when every obstacle was removed, and henceforward the freedom of the city was bounded only by the Alps.

Cæsar obtains the consulship in conjunction with P. Servilius Isauricus.

The measures which Pompeius appeared to contemplate for reducing the city by famine had been thwarted for the most part by the energy and success of Cæsar's lieutenants in Sardinia and Sicily. But Africa withheld her supplies, and the produce of more distant shores might be cut off by the cruisers of a vigilant enemy. The populace of Rome began to suffer from this pressure, and the dictator distributed gratuitously among them all the grain he could collect.<sup>3</sup> He seems to have indemnified himself for these extraordinary expenses by levying contributions on the deposits in the temples.<sup>4</sup> The people easily pardoned these depredations. They were now in the highest good humour. Cæsar could trust his fortunes confi-

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 9.<sup>2</sup> Cic. *de Off.* iii. 32.; Drumann, iii. 474.<sup>3</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 48.<sup>4</sup> Dion. xli. 39.



dently to their grateful favour.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly he proceeded, without further delay, to convene the assembly for the election of consuls, and presented himself as a candidate. He could fairly represent to the people that, in the discharge of the sovereign magistracy, he had paid unusual deference to their rights as legislators; in his wish to make his dictatorship a name rather than a reality, he had abstained from the appointment of a master of the horse. He now encouraged P. Servilius Isauricus to offer himself for the other chair, and no one ventured to solicit the suffrages in opposition to either. The election of the other magistrates followed, and next in order the distribution of the provincial appointments. Lepidus received the Hither Spain, Q. Cassius retained his government of the Further province, and Decimus Brutus succeeded to that of Gaul beyond the Alps.

The last month of the Roman calendar had now arrived.<sup>2</sup> Cæsar performed, in his capacity of dictator, the solemn rites of the great Latin festival on the Alban mount; and thus, at the moment of drawing his sword, he proclaimed himself in the face of gods and men the supreme impersonation of the laws. It was by this ceremony that the chief magistrate of the republic was wont to invoke

He resigns the dictatorship, and repairs to his army at Brundisium.  
A. U. 706.  
B. C. 48.

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. v. 384.:

“*Latos fecit se consule fastos.*”

<sup>2</sup> The month of December, A. U. 705, answered to October, B. C. 49. Plutarch and Florus forget the error in the current computation of time when they state that Cæsar arrived at Brundisium at the winter solstice. See Fischer, *R. Z.* p. 273.

CHAP.  
XVI.

the divine favour before arming to encounter the national foes ; and its celebration now seemed to denounce Pompeius, with his Eastern allies, as a foreign enemy. As soon as the sacrifice was completed the dictator abdicated his extraordinary office, only eleven days after he had entered upon it.<sup>1</sup> He had already summoned his veterans to attend him at Brundisium, and he went forth to the decisive conflict amidst the acclamations of the people ; but their applause was mingled with painful presentiments, and at the last moment they earnestly intreated him to bring the struggle to a peaceful termination. Every eye was bent on the fatal field, where legion should be matched against legion, pile against pile, and eagle against eagle. The antagonists had assumed an attitude of personal defiance ; the names of Senate and People had sunk into ominous oblivion. Cæsar and Pompeius were now the exclusive watchwords of the contending parties ; even the children playing in the streets divided themselves into Cæsarians and Pompeians.<sup>2</sup>

Comparison  
of the po-  
sition now  
occupied by  
Cæsar with  
that of his  
adversaries.

The judgment and ability which Cæsar manifested throughout these proceedings must raise his estimation as a statesman to the highest pitch. He who had crossed the Rubicon at the beginning of the year, in defiance of law and authority, and daringly confronted the government of his country, backed as it was by the general opinion of

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 2. ; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 48. ; Plut. *Cæs.* 37. ; Zonar. x. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xli. 39.

his order, had now completely turned against his opponents the current of public feeling. The moral victory he had gained over them was even more complete than the triumph of his arms. He was now the consul of the republic, legitimately elected and duly invested with full powers. Throughout the empire there were vast numbers of citizens who would bow implicitly to the wielder of this formal authority. There were many cities which would shut their gates against any party which opposed him, without asking a question as to the substantial justice of its cause.<sup>1</sup> On the other hand, the Pompeians acknowledged by their conduct that they had ceased to be the government of Rome. In Epirus, though there were two hundred senators in their camp, they dared not enact a law, or hold an election, or confer the imperium. They had neither curies, nor centuries, nor comitia; and the consuls, prætors, and quæstors, who had sailed from the shores of Italy, sank in the next year into proconsuls, proprætors, and proquæstors.<sup>2</sup> The representative of the people had become the guardian of precedent and order;

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 12.: "Illi se daturos negare, neque portas consuli præclusuros, neque sibi iudicium sumpturos contra atque omnis Italia populusque Romanus iudicavisset."

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xli. 43. This writer gives a confused account of the proceedings of the Pompeians, or rather the proceedings themselves were confused and inconsistent. He says that though, *as some affirm*, there were 200 senators in the camp, together with the consuls, and though they consecrated a spot of ground for taking the auspices preliminary to an election, though they possessed a legitimate semblance of the Roman people, and even of the city itself, yet they did not proceed to make any election of public magistrates, because the consuls had



CHAP.  
XVI.

---

while the champion of the aristocracy derived his unauthorized prerogatives from the suffrage or the passions of a turbulent camp. The position of the rivals was thus exactly reversed, and with it, in the eyes of a nation of formalists, the right seemed to be reversed also.

not proposed a *lex curiata*. The proceedings then above mentioned, if they really took place, were a mere imposition: the Pompeian chieftains preferred the retention of their military commands by a mere change of title, to going through even the bare forms of an election. Lucan (v. init.), and Appian (ii. 50.), preserve the popular arguments by which it was sought to give a constitutional colour to these informal proceedings; but the alleged precedent of Camillus was far from the purpose. It is probable that Cæsar's senate was not less numerous than his rival's, notwithstanding the sneer of the poet:

“Libyæ squalentibus arvis  
Curio Cæsarei cecidit pars magna Senatus.”

## CHAP. XVII.

THE SENATORIAL PARTY ASSEMBLE AT THESSALONICA. — REVIEW OF THEIR FORCES AND POSITION. — CÆSAR CROSSES OVER TO EPIRUS. — POMPEIUS THROWS HIMSELF BEFORE DYRRHACHIUM. — MARITIME OPERATIONS OF BIBULUS: HIS MORTIFICATION AND DEATH. — SEDITION IN ITALY, AND DEATH OF CÆLIUS. — ANTONIUS CROSSES OVER TO EPIRUS WITH REINFORCEMENTS. — CÆSAR BLOCKADES POMPEIUS WITHIN HIS LINES. — OPERATIONS IN MACEDONIA AND GREECE. — APPIUS CLAUDIUS CONSULTS THE ORACLE OF DELPHI. — CÆSAR IS BAFFLED IN HIS ATTACK ON POMPEIUS, AND WITHDRAWS INTO THESSALY. — POMPEIUS FOLLOWS, AND EFFECTS A JUNCTION WITH SCIPIO. — GIVES BATTLE AT PHARSALIA. — ROUT OF THE SENATORIAL FORCES. — FLIGHT OF POMPEIUS: DEATH OF DOMITIUS: SURRENDER OF M. BRUTUS (JAN.—AUG. A.U. 706. B.C. 48).

POMPEIUS had no sooner placed the sea between his followers and the cherished soil of Italy, than he began to develop the military plans which he had long meditated in secret. He had no further occasion to practise reserve. The consuls and their party were now really at his mercy; they could not dispense with his services, for once removed from the centre of government, their authority in the camp was merely nominal. The rulers of the allied and dependent states of the East owed their thrones to the conqueror of Mithridates. While only distant and doubtful rumours had reached them of Cæsar's exploits on the shores of the Western Ocean, they had before their eyes sensible proofs that his rival was the greatest captain and most powerful statesman in the world. Gratitude and fear

CHAP.  
XVII.

---

Enumera-  
tion of the  
forces of  
Pompeius.

CHAP.  
XVII.

therefore equally conspired to urge them to obey his summons, when he appointed Thessalonica for the rendezvous of his forces. Deiotarus and Dorilaus, princes of Galatia, Rhaseupolis and Sadala of Thrace, Tarcondimotus of Cilicia, Ariobarzanes of Cappadocia, Antiochus of Commagene, were among the most conspicuous of the barbarian chieftains who flocked to his standard.<sup>1</sup> Each of them was attended by a select body of horsemen from his own country. Among the Oriental allies, Cæsar enumerates only the cavalry, the bowmen, and the slingers, which formed the ordinary auxiliary force to the main body of the legionaries.<sup>2</sup> But there can be no doubt that most of the tributary states and sovereigns of the East furnished also large contingents of foot-soldiers. These, however, were for the most part ill-equipped and worse disciplined, and in the enumeration of combatants it was not the ordinary practice of the Roman military writers to take any special account of them.<sup>3</sup> The senators and knights served also in large numbers on horseback. A body of five hundred Roman cavalry, which had been left at Alex-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 4. ; Vellei. ii. 51.

<sup>2</sup> Cæsar computes the cavalry at 7000, the slingers and bowmen at 4000, bearing in each case an unusually large proportion to the legionary infantry.

<sup>3</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 70. Lucan (vii. 360.) dwells emphatically on the numbers of these Oriental allies, and compares their variety to the forces of Cyrus, Xerxes, and Agamemnon (iii. 284.). Not to insist on the testimony of the rhetorical poet, we have similar evidence in Cicero's letters ; and Appian says plainly : ἔθνεσι τε πᾶσι καὶ στρατηγοῖς καὶ βασιλεῦσι καὶ δυνάσταις καὶ πόλεσι ἔγραφε κατὰ σπουδὴν ὅτι δύναιτο ἕκαστος εἰς τὸν πόλεμον συμφέρειν (*B. C.* ii. 38.). Such troops could not, of course, be opposed to Cæsar's veterans in the field, but they might be serviceable in many operations of war.



andria by Gabinus to maintain or watch the power of Ptolemæus, was brought by Cn. Pompeius, the triumvir's eldest son, who had armed, moreover, eight hundred of his slaves and labourers from the extensive estates belonging to his family. But the main strength of the army consisted, of course, in the legionary infantry. Five legions had been carried over from Italy; a sixth was formed by the union of the two incomplete divisions which Cato had commanded in Sicily; a seventh was raised from the veterans whom Sulla, Lucullus, and their successors had settled in Macedonia and Crete; two more had been hastily levied by Lentulus among the citizens of the republic in the province of Asia. The strength of these divisions had been considerably increased by the addition of supplemental or auxiliary cohorts of Achaïans, Bœotians, Epirotes, and Thessalians. Scipio, who had gone forth to his appointed province of Syria, was expected to return with the two legions stationed on that frontier. The name of Pompeius might be deemed sufficiently terrible to curb the audacity of the Parthians; but Orodes had presumed to negotiate for the cession of Syria as the price of his active alliance, and Luceius Hirrus was despatched on a mission to amuse his vanity while he solicited his favours.<sup>1</sup> To these forces is to be added the detachment of C. Antonius, recently captured by Octavius.

These armed multitudes, to which Cæsar's enumeration is confined, were quite as large as could be conveniently supported or manœuvred, according to

His naval  
armaments.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 82.; Dion. xli. 55.

CHAP.  
XVII.

the principles and habits of ancient warfare. Though composed partly of strange and discordant elements, partly of untrained levies, they might form, in the hands of skilful officers, a military power more formidable than any the world had yet seen. Their numbers may be stated very moderately at eighty or ninety thousand men.<sup>1</sup> Pompeius employed himself in exercising them together with the utmost diligence. He condescended to go through in person the severe discipline of the legionary, hurling the pilum and brandishing the sword, on horseback and on foot, and displayed, it was said, though fifty-eight years of age, the strength and energy of a young recruit.<sup>2</sup> At the same time every exertion was made to collect magazines of provisions and warlike stores, while a fleet of five hundred vessels of war, and an infinite number of transports, contributed by every naval power in the eastern seas<sup>3</sup>, was divided into several squadrons, and watched every harbour from which the enemy might issue forth, or at which he might attempt to make good his landing.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Eleven legions might amount to 60,000 men. The light troops and cavalry were above 11,000. The supplemental cohorts could hardly be less than 20,000 more.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 64.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* ix. 9.: "Omnis hæc classis Alexandria, Colchis, Tyro, Sidone, Arado, Cypro, Pamphylia, Lycia, Rhodo, Chio, Byzantio, Lesbo, Smyrna, Mileto, Coö, ad intercludendos commeatu Italiae et ad occupandas frumentarias provincias comparatur."

<sup>4</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 5. Cic. (*ad Att.* x. 8.), in one of his fits of confidence in Pompeius's preparations: "Cujus omne consilium Themistocleum est. Existimat enim qui mare teneat, cum necesse esse rerum potiri. Itaque nunquam id egit, ut Hispaniæ per se tenerentur: navalis apparatus ei semper antiquissima cura fuit. Navigabit igitur, quum erit tempus, maximis classibus, et ad Italiam accedet."

The overwhelming naval force which Pompeius possessed enabled him undoubtedly to throw reinforcements upon any coast where his interests were assailed by the enemy. But he would not detach a single vessel or a single cohort to the relief of his provinces or his legions. He required all his adherents to seek him in the position in which he had determined to abide the attack, and looked on with apparent apathy while his best generals and his amplest resources were torn from him. Indeed the liberality of his opponents restored to him the officers whom his own negligence had allowed to fall into their hands. Afranius had followed the example of Domitius and Vibullius, in turning his arms once more against the conqueror to whom he owed his freedom. The menaces of the senate left them, perhaps, no choice but to take a decided part on the one side or the other. But Pompeius was exceedingly jealous of his principal officers, especially of such as had the confidence of his party. Though compelled to entrust to them the most important commands in his army, he was by no means disposed to listen to their counsels. The fortune of war, which had dislodged the partizans of the senate from so many of the positions they had undertaken to defend, had now assembled at Thessalonica all the great leaders of the aristocratic faction. Various and conflicting as were their opinions on the state of affairs, they all seemed to agree in their dislike and distrust of the champion under whom they were forced to array themselves. It was with great reluctance that Domitius resorted to Thessalonica

CHAP.  
XVII.

---

The nobles  
muster in  
Pompeius's  
camp. High  
estimation  
in which  
Domitius is  
held among  
them.



CHAP.  
XVII.

after his escape from Massilia. His leader's desertion of him at Corfinium still rankled in his bosom; he felt that it was only by his own gallant self-devotion that the consuls, the senate, and Pompeius himself, had been enabled to escape from Italy; this was a service he never permitted them to forget, nor was his temper such as to brook an inferior command. But he found himself naturally in his place at the head of the proudest and most exclusive section of the nobles, and ridiculed in their company the airs of sovereignty which Pompeius assumed among the petty potentates he had summoned to his standard.<sup>1</sup>

Cicero arrives at the camp. His discontent and ill-timed levity.

Cicero also had found his way to the headquarters of his friends. How he evaded the vigilance of Antonius does not appear. We must suppose that he withdrew from Italy with the consent, if not the express permission of Cæsar. A crafty statesman might foresee that the presence of so discontented a spirit in the hostile camp would furnish it with the seeds of dissension rather than any accession of strength. From the moment of his arrival at Thessalonica, Cicero seems to have found himself ill at ease under the control of a military chieftain. His tardy arrival was made a subject of reproach; the absence of some of his relatives gave colour to insinuations against his sincerity, which were hardly dispelled even by the devotion to the cause manifested by his brother Quintus, who abandoned his old patron and general for the sake of his party. But Cicero revenged himself as he best might by wreaking many

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 67.

a bitter jest upon the apparent imbecility of his traducers. When Pompeius taunted him with having made his appearance among them so late, "How can I be said to have come late," he replied, "when I find nothing in readiness among you?"<sup>1</sup> He was striving to conceal from himself how little satisfied he was with his own determination to cling to a party from which he could expect no good to his country.

The despair which a sensible and practical statesman like Cicero felt for the welfare of the republic, even in the event of the party with which he acted being successful in the struggle to preserve its ascendancy, shows how despised and powerless was that small but honourable section of which Cato and Brutus were the leaders. Their names have, indeed, descended to us surrounded with a halo of glory, for they were the purest representatives of a cause which posterity regarded as the antagonist of the tyranny under which it was itself suffering, and the philosophical creed which they illustrated by their life and practice was precisely that which found most favour with the generations which succeeded them. But it is evident that they had little influence upon the sentiments of their own contemporaries. Cato had acted with great perverseness. Arming against Cæsar he had from the first denounced. He would have combated him in the forum. He delighted in the confusion of the popular elections, and his courage never rose higher than when he found himself on the hustings, raising

Cato possesses little influence in the counsels of his party

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cic.* 38.; Macrob. *Saturn.* ii. 3., where several of Cicero's gibes on this occasion are recorded.

CHAP.  
XVII.

his voice above the clamour of the multitude, and defying the violence of tribunes and demagogues. It was his pride to shape his course with a view to the assertion of his principles, rather than the attainment of their triumph. When forced to follow in the wake of the senate, he continued to manifest great reluctance to taking any military command. The government of Sicily was at last thrust upon him. Pompeius, no doubt, was glad to be quit of his presence, for he knew that, in the event of victory, no one would be more vigilant in circumscribing his authority than Cato. But his precipitate retreat from that island, contrary to every expectation of friends and foes, can hardly be accounted for, except as the indulgence of that ill-humour and perversity of character which were better understood by his contemporaries than by their posterity. Nor did he feel any shame in re-appearing in the camp of the nobles, where he seemed to be wholly unconscious that he was now doubly obnoxious, both as an impracticable politician and an imbecile general. On one point, indeed, his dignified humanity shamed the ferocity of his party into acquiescence in his counsels. At his instance the senate passed a decree, which became, however, a mere empty form, that no city should be sacked, and no citizen put to death, unless taken with arms in his hands.<sup>1</sup>

Devotion of  
M. Brutus  
to his uncle.

But, however limited the influence of Cato might be upon the adherents of the same cause, it was at least all-powerful with his nephew M. Brutus. The young philosopher had never forgotten that

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 65., *Cat. Min.* 53.



Pompeius had slain his father, and, devoted as he was by family and temper to the party of the oligarchy, he had nevertheless sternly abstained from joining in the adulation which they had showered upon their champion. But now his haughty reserve was overcome by the claim his uncle made upon his sense of public duty. He offered his services to Pompeius. Though inclined by nature to study and peaceful avocations he was not deficient in the qualities of a good officer, and while he devoted himself, however reluctantly, to the business he had undertaken, he seems to have refrained from any exhibition of restlessness and discontent.

Our conception of the character of Cato would be incomplete if we omitted to notice a domestic incident which curiously illustrates it. Cicero had left his wife behind him at Rome, under the protection of his son-in-law Dolabella. He had expressed, indeed, a decent sense of apprehension at what might befall her, thus separated from a husband, whom the conqueror might be disposed to regard with bitter hostility; but, undecided as he was as to his own course, he thought it would conduce to his interests to show such ready confidence in Cæsar's goodwill. Pompeius, on the other hand, who had already transferred to his new wife Cornelia the tender affection he had been seen to bestow upon Julia, seemed to distrust the security of his own camp in his anxiety for her safety, and had sent her far away to the obscure retreat of Lesbos.<sup>1</sup> Cato, however, on his part, as

Cato's  
second nup-  
tials with  
Marcia.

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 66.; Dion. xlii. 2.

CHAP.  
XVII.

far from the trickery of the one, as from the timidity of the other, had chosen the very crisis of his own and the public safety to marry, or rather to remarry the widow of Hortensius. Marcia had already been espoused to him at an earlier period. But the Roman law allowed excessive facility of divorce; and this licence, which his contemporaries adopted from passion, avarice, or caprice, Cato had assumed for the sake of gratifying, not himself, but his friend. Hortensius was childless; Marcia had proved herself fruitful; and the philosopher gravely transferred the mother of his children to the household of the voluptuary.<sup>1</sup> But this second union, after answering every purpose for which it was contracted, had been dissolved by death; and the matron, however faithful she had proved to her second husband, was more proud of the name of her first.<sup>2</sup> She proposed that they should be reunited, and proved the genuineness of her devotion by the perils which she sought to share.<sup>3</sup> The nuptials were solemn and private, as befitted the

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 25. I have omitted some of the most extraordinary details of this transaction. Cæsar, in his satire which he designated *Anticato*, charged the philosopher with having had an eye to the great wealth which Hortensius had left to his widow; but we may trust, I hope, to Plutarch's indignant disclaimer: ὁμοιον γὰρ ἐστὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ μαλακίαν ὀνειδίζειν καὶ κατηγορεῖν αἰσχροκέρδειαν Κάτωνος (c. 52).

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. ii. 343. :

“Liceat tumulto scripsisse Catonis  
Marcia.”

<sup>3</sup> *Id.* ii. 346. :

“Non me lætorum sociam rebusque secundis  
Accipis; in curas venio partemque laborum.  
Da mihi castra sequi :”

it seems, however, that Cato left Marcia in Italy to superintend his domestic affairs. Plut. *l. c.*

time and circumstances.<sup>1</sup> Only one eye was deemed worthy of witnessing them: Brutus alone might attest the weakness or the strength of Cato.<sup>2</sup>

Cæsar arrived at Brundisium at the beginning of the Roman year, and he had probably been the more anxious to reach the coast without loss of time, as the season, which was really a little past mid-autumn, was still favourable for transporting his army across the sea. He had summoned twelve legions to meet him at the place of embarkation, but their numbers were very incomplete. The losses of the Spanish and the earlier Gaulish campaigns, the fatigues of marches so long and so uninterrupted, above all, the autumnal fevers of the Apulian coast, had reduced their ranks<sup>3</sup> to mere skeletons. All the vessels that could be collected for the transport of these troops would not contain more than fifteen thousand infantry and five hundred cavalry, notwithstanding that the baggage was left behind; yet this small number comprised the complements of seven legions.<sup>4</sup> Before embarking, Cæsar harangued his soldiers, declaring that he was now demanding of them the

Cæsar  
crosses over  
to Epirus.

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. ii. 365.:

“Sicut erat, mœsti servans lugubria cultus,  
Quoque modo natos hoc est amplexa maritum:  
Non soliti lusere sales, nec more Sabino  
Excepit tristis convicia festa maritus.”

<sup>2</sup> *Id.* ii. 371.:

“Junguntur taciti, contentique auspice Bruto.”

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 2.: “Multi Gallicis tot bellis defecerant, longumque iter ex Hispania magnum numerum diminuerat, et gravis autumnus in Apulia circumque Brundisium omnem exercitum valetudine tentaverat.”

<sup>4</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 2—6.



CHAP.  
XVII.

last sacrifice he should have to require, and assuring them that the abandonment of their baggage should be recompensed by rich booty and a munificent largess. They replied with enthusiasm that his orders should be obeyed, be they what they might. On the second day, the fifth of January, the expedition came safely to land, near a place called Palæste.<sup>1</sup> The pilots had selected a sheltered beach upon which their vessels could be run with safety, though surrounded on all sides by the dangerous promontories of the Ceraunian mountains. They had received orders to avoid the harbours on the coast, which were all understood to be occupied by the enemy: but the construction of the Roman galleys gave great facilities for debarkation, and for this purpose a naval armament might avail itself of coves, creeks, and sandbanks, such as in modern times are only accessible to the light craft of the smuggler.

Tardy activity of the Pompeian fleets.

It cannot be supposed, however, that Cæsar trusted entirely to fortune in thus launching upon an element occupied by an overwhelming naval force. He must have obtained intelligence that the Pompeian commander Bibulus was lying completely off his guard at Coreyra, with the hundred and ten vessels which he retained under his immediate orders. Nor was he ignorant that another hostile squadron was stationed at Oricum, at no great distance from his destined landing-place.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 6. The reading of the codices in Pharsalus or Pharsalia, which is evidently a mistake or corruption. Lucan (iv. 460.) supplies the name adopted in the text :

“ Palæstinas uncis confixit arenas.”

Either of these armaments would have sufficed to destroy his defenceless flotilla ; but the police of the seas was imperfectly kept by the naval science of the ancients ; their vessels were ill-adapted for cruising through variable weather ; and the use of oars acted almost like steam in giving wings to weakness, and baffling the vigilance of a blockade. Bibulus was deeply mortified at an exploit, the success of which was sure to be attributed to his own remissness. It was not, however, too late to divide the invader's forces, and make it impossible either for a second detachment to cross over, or for the first to return. He rushed himself to sea, sending orders to all his officers to issue simultaneously from their stations on the coast. From Corcyra to Salona the Ionian gulf was swept by their squadrons. Cæsar despatched his lieutenant Fufius Calenus with the empty transports to thread the hostile armaments, and bring over his remaining forces from Brundisium. But, neglecting to take advantage of the night breeze, he was descried by the enemy, and thirty of his vessels were intercepted and burnt, with their crews on board. Octavius, who commanded a portion of the Pompeian fleet, was less successful in an attack upon Salona, a stronghold of Cæsar's in Illyricum, and was compelled to retreat from before it with some loss. Bibulus continued to keep the sea, notwithstanding the approach of the winter season, and although Cæsar's operations shut him out from nearly every port on the coast into which he might have run for shelter.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 7—9.

CHAP.  
XVII.

Pompeius  
moves from  
Thessalo-  
nica, and  
throws  
himself be-  
fore Dyr-  
rhachium.

Pompeius was in Macedonia, and had hardly received information of his rival's unexpected landing in Epirus, while Cæsar was already reducing his fortresses and dispersing his garrisons. The citizens of Oricum and Apollonia refused to shut their gates against the consul of the republic, and compelled the Pompeian lieutenants, Torquatus and Staberius, to withdraw their forces. Several other towns soon followed this example, and, in the course of a few days, the states of Epirus sent a formal deputation to declare their submission to the invader who bore the insignia of the Roman government.<sup>1</sup> Pompeius was now in full march for Dyrrhachium, which he was exceedingly anxious to save from the enemy. The news of his repeated disasters met him at each successive stage of his advance, and such terror did the name of Cæsar strike into the minds of his soldiers, that they began already to melt away from him, as they had abandoned his lieutenants in Italy the year before. Drooping and straggling, and throwing away their arms, the march of the Pompeian legions began to assume the appearance of a flight. Labienus came forward to check the progress of desertion, by taking the solemn military oath of adherence and obedience to his general. The formula was successively tendered to the principal officers, to the tribunes, the centurions, and the legionaries. This appeal to the spirit of discipline seems to have revived the courage of the soldiery. Dyrrhachium was effectually covered by the lines behind which the Pompeians now entrenched

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 12.



themselves on the right bank of the Apsus ; while Cæsar, finding his scanty forces insufficient to assail them, took up his position on the left to protect the towns in his rear which had submitted to him, and resolved to pass the winter under canvas.

Meanwhile, attempts were made on each side to delude the other by negotiations. Cæsar employed the mediation of Vibullius, the Pompeian officer whom he had twice captured, first at Corfinium, and again in Spain. The terms which he offered were, that each chieftain should disband his troops simultaneously, and refer the adjustment of their disputes to the senate and people ; an arrangement which had by this time become more than ever impracticable. Cæsar's only object in proposing it must have been to gain time for the arrival of reinforcements. On the other hand, Bibulus and his colleague, being now excluded from almost every point of the coast, and severely harassed by the weather and want of necessaries at sea, were anxious to conclude an armistice for their own immediate convenience. But Cæsar understood their object, and refused to listen to their proposals. He was justly incensed against Bibulus, who, having succeeded in deterring Calenus from putting again to sea, had made prize of a single vessel which had straggled from the main body of the fleet, and massacred the crew. But the fatigues of his naval campaign, joined to his excessive mortification at Cæsar's having so narrowly escaped him, had completely broken the health of the Pompeian commander. He fell a sacrifice to his anxiety to redeem his character as a vigilant

The Pompeian admirals attempt to prevent the passage of Cæsar's second division.

CHAP.  
XVII.

---

officer with the party which had intrusted to him so important a command.<sup>1</sup> He showed, indeed, ferocity enough to satisfy the most bloodthirsty of the faction, but he had no other claim on their approbation. The only service he had performed was to disperse his vessels up and down the coast of Epirus, so as to watch every creek and strand upon which Cæsar's second division might seek to effect a landing. Cæsar himself complained that Antonius neglected more than one favourable opportunity of making the passage. He might have made a feint to draw off the attention of Bibulus, and have selected a point for running on shore where the numbers of his opponents would be insufficient to cope with him. Upon the death of Bibulus, the several detachments of the collective fleet seem to have been left at the disposal of their respective commanders. Pompeius was apparently too much disconcerted by the precarious position of his affairs to pay due attention to what was after all the most important point for his interests, the prevention of the junction of Cæsar's two divisions. L. Scribonius Libo, who had commanded under Bibulus a detachment of fifty ships, now took upon himself to act with this force independently. He quitted the coast of Epirus, and, crossing the straits, established a blockade of Brundisium, taking possession of the island which lay at the entrance of the harbour, and cruising before it with a force which alone was more numerous than any Antonius could bring against it. The great difficulty which the ancients experienced

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 18.

in conducting operations of this kind lay in the incapacity of their vessels for sufficient stowage of provisions and water. They were unable to keep the sea with a view to effectual observation. The numerous flotilla which still lingered along the shores of the opposite coast could not have been better employed than in ministering to the necessities of the blockading squadron. But Libo's manœuvre, far bolder and more decisive than any of Bibulus or even of Pompeius, failed from the want of co-operation. He was deceived indeed with the idea that he could maintain himself by the possession of the little island he had seized, and even assured Pompeius that he might withdraw the rest of his fleet into port, and trust to him alone to frustrate the passage of the Cæsarians. Antonius, however, disposed his cavalry skilfully along the coast to prevent any of Libo's foragers landing in quest of water and provisions, and the Pompeian was compelled at last to abandon his position, and resort once more to the same feeble and inefficient tactics which had rendered Bibulus contemptible.<sup>1</sup>

Some months had been consumed in these desultory operations, and great must have been Cæsar's impatience at being prevented from acting more boldly by the absence of so large a portion of his forces. While in this state of suspense and comparative inactivity, it must have added very much to his anxiety to hear of the progress of an attempt at counter-revolution in Rome and Italy. Cicero's correspondence has preserved to us the record of

Intrigues of  
M. Cælius  
at Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 23, 24.



CHAP.  
XVII.

the zeal with which M. Cælius Rufus had advocated Cæsar's cause at the period of his invading Italy. He had used his best endeavours to cajole Cicero into acquiescence in the proconsul's views, and his old intimacy with his correspondent, and the terms of playful familiarity in which he addressed him, pointed him out as the likeliest person to sway the vacillating orator.<sup>1</sup> Cælius had been only a late convert to Cæsar's party. As one of the tribunes in the time of Pompeius's sole consulship, he had exerted himself in defence of Milo, and had asserted on that occasion the principles of the most violent of the oligarchs. But he seems to have been won over to the popular side by the seductions of Curio, whom he was persuaded to accompany on the famous expedition to Cæsar's camp at Ariminum. The proconsul's blandishments may have completed the work of conversion; and from that period, as we have seen, Cælius devoted his talents, which were considerable, to the establishment of the new order of things. Cæsar had rewarded him by obtaining for him the election to the prætorship, second in dignity; the chair of the prætor of the city was occupied at the same time by C. Trebonius, whose fidelity had been longer tried, and whose services were undoubtedly more conspicuous. Cælius, witty, vain, and dissolute, was dissatisfied with this post, and sought to raise himself to higher distinctions by studying the gratification of the popular wishes.<sup>2</sup> He declared

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* viii. 15—17., comp. *ad Div.* ii. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 20, 21.; Liv. *Epit.* cxi.; Dion. xlii. 23, 24.; Vell. ii. 68.

with plausible eloquence that Cæsar's enactments had not gone far enough for the relief of the needy citizens. He promised to lend all the sanction of his office to any debtor who should appeal against the decisions of his colleague, according to the tenor of the recent enactments for the adjustment of debts. He even proposed himself a new law for the greater relief of the debtor by the spoliation of his creditor. The multitude were well pleased with these revolutionary proceedings, and it became necessary for the consul and higher magistrates at once to resist such democratical encroachments. Cælius was hurried on his career by the still increasing demands of the passions he had evoked. Tumults arose in the city; the consul applied to the senate for unusual powers: it was decreed that Cælius should be suspended from his functions, and the execution of this decree was enforced with a high hand, which controlled all opposition, and drove the discomfited demagogue from his chair of office. Baffled in his schemes and unprepared with resources, he now professed his intention of appealing personally to Cæsar, and under this pretence he left the city to repair the web of his intrigues in greater security at a distance.

Though the consul had been able to maintain the peace of the city with the opportune assistance of a body of soldiers which was passing through at the time on its way into Gaul, Cælius, it appears, had persuaded himself that Cæsar's government had already fallen into general odium there, and that with the exception of a wretched pack of

He attempts to raise an insurrection against Cæsar in Italy in conjunction with Milo.

CHAP.  
XVII.

money-lenders, the whole population was prepared to rise against his authority. It was only the dread, he argued, of the vengeance which Pompeius had vowed to wreak upon all who had ever submitted to his rival that caused any delay in effecting a counter-revolution. New views of ambition began to open upon him. Instead of inviting Pompeius to hasten across the sea and recover Italy and Rome, while his enemy would be detained by the want of ships from following him, he left him to the chances of an encounter, which, from his knowledge of Cæsar's veterans, he believed would be unfavourable, if not fatal to him, while he conceived the design of seizing the prize himself.<sup>1</sup> Milo, who, as the only political exile excepted from the late amnesty, had just grounds of indignation against Cæsar, had taken advantage of the disturbed state of affairs to come secretly into Italy, and call to his standard the remnant of the armed bands with which he had been wont to domineer over the factions of the city. Cælius had been allowed to leave Rome unmolested, and was already engaged in secret intrigues with this rash adventurer; but the consul had directed one of the tribunes to attend upon him and observe his movements. His resorting to Campania roused suspicion, and he was summoned back to the neighbourhood of the city; but, in deference to his

<sup>1</sup> See a letter of Cælius to Cicero, written apparently at the moment of his leaving Rome. Cic. *ad Div.* viii. 17.: "Quod si timor vestræ crudelitatis non esset, ejecti jam pridem hinc essemus. Nam hic præter fœneratores paucos, nec homo nec ordo quisquam est, nisi Pompeianus . . . vestras copias non novi: nostri valde depugnare et facile algere et esurire consuerunt."



noble birth and the high office which he still claimed, the watch which was kept over him was relaxed, and the more so, perhaps, after the speedy defeat of Milo before Capua. Cælius effected his escape, and followed the traces of his new confederate in the Lucanian mountains. Here Milo was striving to kindle heath and forest with the flame of predatory insurrection. At the same time he addressed his solicitations, on the one hand, to the municipal authorities in the neighbouring towns, asserting that he was acting under the direction of Pompeius and Bibulus, while he held out, on the other, to the needy and profligate the usual promises of a revolutionary agitator. But his career was speedily cut short ; for in an attempt to seize the town of Cosa he was slain by the blow of a stone hurled from the walls. Soon afterwards Cælius entered Thurii unarmed ; his levity prompted him, alone and defenceless, to make another effort ; but when he tried to corrupt the fidelity of some Gaulish and Spanish horse whom Cæsar had stationed there, they turned round upon him with indignation and slew him. With the death of the two chieftains the seeds of this paltry insurrection were scattered to the winds.<sup>1</sup>

While these desultory movements in the interest of the Optimates were in progress in Italy, their great champion still kept close in his quarters at Dyrrhachium, not venturing to trust his half-trained forces in conflict with Cæsar's veterans. The

Cæsar attempts to cross the Adriatic in a violent tempest.

<sup>1</sup> Cæsar and Dion. *ll. cc.* The story is told with some discrepancy by these two writers. The narrative of the latter has the appearance of greater accuracy in detail.

CHAP.  
XVII.

withdrawal of Libo's squadron from the coast of Apulia had left open the harbour of Brundisium. Antonius was well aware of his commander's impatience to combine all his forces together on the other side of the channel; nor was he or the other officers in command at all deficient in zeal to perform the duty expected of them. But once baffled in their attempt to effect the passage, and awed perhaps by the savage vengeance which Bibulus had wreaked upon his captives, they let slip more than one opportunity of embarking with a favourable wind. The winter was now nearly over, and with the prevalence of milder weather the Pompeian squadrons would find it easier to keep an effectual blockade. Accordingly, Cæsar sent repeated messages, urging Antonius to put to sea at all hazards. He represented that the loss of the vessels was of little consequence. If the troops could only be run ashore any where on the beach, it mattered not that the ships were exposed to the beating of the surf, or liable to be seized by the enemy.<sup>1</sup> It is related that, in a transport of impatience, for his situation was now becoming every day more critical, he determined to hazard the passage in person, and that too in the face of a violent tempest. This daring enterprize he was obliged to conceal from his own soldiers, and in a private vessel of only twelve oars he braved the chances of shipwreck or of capture. The sailors, however, could make no way gainst the fury of the winds and waves, and his life was probably saved

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 25.

by yielding to the storm. The undertaking was bold to the verge of rashness. Cæsar himself, it must be observed, does not mention it, and we may suspect that the circumstances have been distorted or coloured by successive rhetoricians, with the wish to trace throughout the exploits of the most successful of adventurers that implicit reliance upon fortune, which is all that ordinary men can discover in the most consummate calculations of the statesman or the warrior. Perhaps the whole story was invented to introduce the brilliant apophthegm which Cæsar is said to have addressed to the dismayed sailors: "Fear nothing; you carry Cæsar and his fortunes."<sup>1</sup>

At last Antonius embarked his forces, the men and officers being equally clamorous to be carried across. They consisted of four legions and eight hundred cavalry. The south wind, with which he sailed, was not favourable for shaping his course for Oricum. As the breeze freshened, his vessels were wafted considerably to the northward, and passed off Apollonia and Dyrrhachium.<sup>2</sup> They were descried by Coponius, who commanded a Rhodian squadron in the service of Pompeius at the latter port. He immediately gave them chase, and his swift war-vessels, though only sixteen in number, were more than a match both in speed and strength for the transports in which the Cæ-

Antonius effects the passage with the second division

<sup>1</sup> Florus, who is the first to tell the story, makes no mention of this celebrated saying (ix. 8.). Appian (ii. 58.), Dion (xli. 46.), Plutarch (*Cæs.* 38.), repeat all the circumstances with little variation. Lucan (v. 577. &c.) amplifies them with some of his wildest hyperboles.

<sup>2</sup> *Cæs. B. C.* iii. 26. foll.



CHAP.  
XVII.

sarian legions were embarked. The wind, however, now blew so strongly as to enable Antonius to keep his start of the pursuer, and enter the haven of Nymphæum, which lay some hours' sail to the north of Dyrrhachium. The mouth of this harbour directly faced the south, and if it was easy for Antonius to make it, it would not be more difficult for Coponius to follow. But the wind suddenly shifted to the south-west, and drove the Pompeian vessels with violence upon the coast. Here they were all dashed to pieces, their crews falling into the hands of the enemy. Cæsar, however, treated them with studied kindness, and he takes care to inform us that he sent them safe home to their native island, from which they had been summoned to maintain a cause in which they took little interest. Very different was the fate of the complement of one of Antonius's vessels. Two ships of the squadron had parted company with the main body in the night, and came to anchor off Lissus, three miles to the south of Nymphæum. Here Otacilius Crassus commanded for Pompeius. He surrounded them with a swarm of boats and transports, and invited them to surrender. One of the two, which carried a division of two hundred and twenty men belonging to a newly-raised legion, promptly obeyed, under a promise that the men's lives should be spared. But the Pompeian officer carried out the system of his colleagues without regard to mercy or good faith, and caused them all to be massacred. The complement of the other, which was a battalion of veterans, maintained their courage in the last extremity. Though suffering from fatigue and

sea-sickness, and entirely ignorant of the strength of their enemies, they ran their ship on shore, and threw up a hasty entrenchment, behind which they repulsed the attack of the Pompeians, and were enabled eventually to escape to the camp of the main body. Crassus had not the means of offering any resistance to the large force now collected so near him. He retired from Lissus, which immediately opened its gates to Antonius. The transports were sent across the gulf once more to bring over a detachment which was still expected, and Cæsar was speedily apprised of the place and circumstances of his lieutenant's landing.

Manœuvres  
of the hos-  
tile armies.

The course of Antonius's fleet had been observed by both armies in their quarters on the Apsus. Both were equally eager to follow it; the Pompeians with the view of protecting Dyrrhachium, the Cæsarians in the hope of at last effecting the long-desired junction of their forces. Pompeius, on the right bank of the river, was able to move without delay, while his enemy, to whom the stream offered a considerable impediment, was obliged to seek a ford higher up. Pompeius hoped to surprise Antonius, and conducted his march with secrecy as well as speed: but his movements were discovered to the new comers by the natives of the country, and they had time to entrench themselves, while they sent messengers to inform their general of their arrival and position. On the second day Cæsar made his appearance, and Pompeius, not venturing to expose himself at the same time to an attack both in front and rear,

CHAP.  
XVII.

Cæsar  
blockades  
Pompeius  
within his  
lines at  
Petra.

hastily withdrew to a place called Asparagium<sup>1</sup>, where he found a suitable spot to establish his fortified lines.

Even when his forces were so much less numerous, Cæsar had been eager to press the enemy to a battle. He had now doubled his available numbers, and had succeeded in dislodging Pompeius from the position which he had selected to cover Dyrrhachium, so that he had every reason to anticipate compelling him to fight at a much greater disadvantage. With this view he followed the steps of the retreating army until he arrived before their new encampment, where he drew out his legions in order of battle, and vainly hoped that his challenge would be accepted. But Pompeius kept close within his lines. Cæsar again broke up from his position, and, making a circuit to disguise the object of his movement, threw himself before the walls of Dyrrhachium in such a manner as to cut off all communication between the city and the camp of its defenders. Pompeius had attempted to anticipate this manœuvre, but his cautious circumspection was baffled by the activity of his adversary's movements. Firmly resolved as he was not to commit his half-trained battalions to a premature engagement with their veteran enemy, it was necessary to seize a position in the neighbourhood, lodged securely in which he might watch their operations and profit by cir-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 30. The locality of Asparagium is not accurately known. It was on the left bank of the Genusus, and within one day's march of Dyrrhachium, as appears from Cæsar, *B. C.* iii. 76. The reading (iii. 41.), "in Macedoniam," must certainly be corrupt.



cumstances. A cliff on the sea-coast, distinguished from its bold projection with the appellation of Petra or the Rock<sup>1</sup>, offered a favourable post for the development of these defensive tactics. It stood at a short distance from Dyrrhachium, which contained the stores and arsenals of the republican army; it possessed certain natural advantages for defence, and the anchorage it commanded was extensive and tolerably sheltered. At this spot his troops might rely upon the supply of all their wants from the sea<sup>2</sup>; but, secure though he was of this element, Pompeius made himself independent of distant resources by drawing military lines in front of his position, fifteen miles in length, and thus inclosing in a strong entrenchment a large tract of cultivated soil. To these limits, however, his bold and unwearied assailant now determined to confine him. Cæsar planted himself firmly in front of the Pompeian position, and actually carried a counter-rampart parallel to the whole sweep of its defences, through an arc not less than seventeen miles in length, from one extreme point on the coast to the other. These extraordinary works were not raised on either side without frequent skirmishes. The forces of Pompeius were the most numerous, and the extent of his works was less, so that he was able to bring greater strength to bear in any attacks he chose to make upon the enemy. He was also superior in light troops, whose services were eminently useful in this kind of engage-

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. vi. 16.:

“ Quemque vocat collem Taulantius incola Petram.”

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 65.: πάντα πνεῖν ἄνεμον Πομπηίῳ.

CHAP.  
XVII.

---

ment ; and his success in these desultory conflicts so encouraged him, that he was reported to have declared he would consent to forfeit all claim to military skill if his adversary escaped without fatal disaster from the position he had so rashly taken up. His boast, as we shall see, was not far from being fully accomplished. Nevertheless, Cæsar, though sometimes repulsed from the positions he attempted to seize, and much harassed and impeded in the progress of his operations, completed his chain of towers connected with ditch and rampart from shore to shore, and thus presented the extraordinary spectacle of a superior force commanded by the most experienced general of the age blockaded in the centre of the country he had himself chosen for the campaign.<sup>1</sup>

Character  
and authen-  
ticity of the  
commentaries  
on  
the civil  
war attri-  
buted to  
Cæsar.

As the crisis of the great contest approaches, we become naturally more anxious to assure ourselves of the fidelity of the narrative before us. This narrative is given in full detail in the Commentaries of the principal actor in the events themselves : the works of later writers add nothing to the particulars, but tend generally to confirm his account. Cæsar's history of the Civil War has indeed come down to us incomplete ; the text in many places is very corrupt ; and its geographical inaccuracies are many and palpable. The account even of the military operations is occasionally confused and inconsistent ; but perhaps the most surprising defect of the work is its want of breadth

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 42—44. ; Dion. xli. 50. ; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 61. ; Lucan. vi. 29—63.

and largeness of view. It contains no general survey of the state of parties and affairs, so essential for understanding the political bearing even of the military transactions; and the discovery it professes to make of the author's own motives and objects must be pronounced for the most part frivolous and unworthy of the occasion. The genuineness of the work is nevertheless generally admitted.<sup>1</sup> If we are justly disappointed at the narrowness of the sphere over which the writer's observation ranges, compared with the vast extent of view which he might have opened to us, we may, on the other hand, esteem ourselves extremely fortunate in the possession of a record

<sup>1</sup> The question of the genuineness of the first seven books of the Commentaries on the Gallic and the three books on the Civil War seems to lie in a narrow compass. The ancients understood that Cæsar wrote commentaries on these wars, and that he compiled ephemerides, or memoranda, of his military actions generally; also that he left some imperfect notices of the Alexandrian and African campaigns, which were reduced to the form of commentaries by another hand. My belief is that the ephemerides were the rough notes from which Cæsar himself either wrote, or dictated, or superintended the composition of the Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars, and that the same notes furnished the groundwork for the subsequent compilation by others of the eighth Gallic book, and those on the Alexandrian, African, and perhaps the Spanish campaigns. But that the seven books *B. G.* and three *B. C.* were written by the same person I can hardly doubt. The style and still more the character of the two works seem to be nearly identical, the only difference being such as one might expect, that the latter is written with a little less care and appearance of literary ambition. The manifest errors it contains can only be attributed to corruption of the text. To suppose that Cæsar wrote commentaries, and that the next generation suffered them to be entirely lost and superseded by the writings of any other person, whether the genuine memoirs of a contemporary, or either the acknowledged compilation or the fictitious exertion of a later age, is the last resource of the morbid scepticism which cannot suffer any author to say more or less than harmonizes with its own gratuitous canons of historical criticism.



CHAP.  
XVII.

which bears upon it, on the whole, the stamp of truth and candour more conspicuously than the writings perhaps of any other party politician. The contemporary whose impeachment of its fidelity has had the greatest weight with later critics was notorious, it should be remembered, for trivial and perhaps spiteful detraction.<sup>1</sup> In the relation of some minor events the author, it may be conceded, has occasionally used some artifice to disguise his failures, but seldom or never to enhance the merit of his successes. But I have abstained generally from questioning the accuracy and fairness of minute details, as disagreeable both to the writer and the reader where there is so little room for criticizing them with any certainty. In some places I have tacitly corrected what seemed to me errors, or smoothed over apparent inconsistencies; but in all the main features of the narrative I am content to rely on the authority before me, leaving it to the reader's own judgment to supply what he may think imperfect, or apply a corrective to what may appear to him partial.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> C. Asinius Pollio, one of Cæsar's officers, who wrote a history of the civil wars. For his remarks on Cæsar, Cicero, Livy, and Sallust, see Suet. *Jul.* 56., *Ill. Gramm.* 10.; Quintil. i. 5. 56., viii. 1. 3., xii. 1. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Among the modern works which have lain open before me in studying the events of the Civil War, has been that of the late lamented Arnold, who wrote the biography of Julius Cæsar for the *Encycl. Metropolitana*. In vigour and perspicuity of narrative this early essay is not inferior to the more mature and better known historical compositions of its distinguished author; but I cannot help thinking that, at a later period of his life, he would have considerably modified the moral and political views it exhibits. I detect some places in which the author's prejudice against Cæsar seems to have misled him in the statement of facts, and still more where he appears to me to have un-

CHAP.  
XVII.

---

Review of  
the calculations on  
which  
Cæsar planned his  
operations.

The manœuvres of two Roman armies in front of one another may be compared to the single combats of the mail-clad knights of the middle ages. Equal strength, arms, and skill might render victory on either side impossible. When every artifice had been exhausted to entice the one or the other into a false move, it was only by superior patience and endurance that the conflict could be decided. Such might seem to be the respective position of the enemies now confronting each other. The one had posted himself behind his impregnable entrenchments (for the entrenchments of the Roman legionary were quite impregnable to assailants not superior in numbers or military art), and the other had drawn a line of circumvallation around his antagonist, and held him almost a prisoner within his own works. If the one army was superior in numbers, this advantage was fully counterbalanced at the outset by its inferior discipline and self-confidence. But these were defects which Pompeius relied on time to supply. He resolved to decline a battle, and the longer the enemy persevered in his blockade, the more certain was he of being enabled in the end to cope with him successfully.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, he

duly disparaged his motives and exalted those of his opponents. But on a question of pure literary criticism any opinion of Arnold's must be of very great weight, and I much regret that we do not possess the deliberate judgment of his later years as to the genuineness of the Commentaries on the Civil War, which in the article referred to he appears to reject with undue precipitation.

<sup>1</sup> The Roman officers devoted long and patient attention to exercising their recruits preparatory to leading them into battle. The skill, endurance, and confidence of the individuals were much more important in ancient warfare, particularly on the system practised by

CHAP.  
XVII.

abided with impassive serenity the ultimate victory of which he felt assured. To Cæsar, however, the advantage was direct and immediate, of standing forth in the eye of the world as the assailant and challenger of the once boastful hero who now seemed to shrink, craven and crestfallen, behind his battlements. This attitude of defiance was in itself an omen of success. At Rome the dictator's friends appealed to it as a proof of his intrinsic superiority, and the waverers could no longer gainsay them.<sup>1</sup> Close at hand the effect was still more signal. Though Epirus was the theatre which Pompeius had himself chosen for the contest, it would seem that his hold upon the favour of the natives was by no means strong. Cæsar, far from his own proper resources, was able to draw largely upon the goodwill of the provincials, many of whose towns had surrendered to him with every appearance of alacrity. At the same time he had taken measures to keep in check the armies which Pompeius was assembling in his rear. The

the Romans, than in modern. The same time and care were bestowed on restoring the discipline and moral feelings of an army which had been dispirited by defeat. Vegetius (iii. 10.) gives minute directions for the requisite exercises: labour in the trenches was one element in the system. It was long remembered as a maxim of Scipio Africanus: "Fodientes luto inquinari debere qui madere hostium sanguine non-  
luissent." Flor. ii. 18.

<sup>1</sup> See a letter of Dolabella to his father-in-law, Cicero (Cic. *ad Div.* ix. 9.), urging him to espouse the side of the dictator, written just at this time. "Animadvertis Cn. Pompeium nec nominis sui nec rerum gestarum gloria, neque etiam regum atque nationum clientelis, quas ostentare crebro solebat, esse tutum: et hoc etiam, quod infimo cuique contigit, illi non posse contingere, ut honeste effugere possit, pulso Italia, amissis Hispaniis, capto exercitu veterano, circumvallato nunc denique."



forces of Scipio in Macedonia were confronted by the dictator's lieutenants with an adequate armament, and, from the Ionian shore to the Ægean, the fear or favour of the natives was conciliated to him, for the most part, by the brilliancy of his recent combinations. Precarious, therefore, as his position was, with a superior army in front, and an unsecured country in the rear, his game was played on a masterly calculation of the chances in his favour, and it may be confidently asserted that as a military operation it deserved success.

The first chance which entered into the great captain's calculation was that of provoking the enemy to engage with forces as yet untrained and dispirited. In this he was disappointed. Pompeius kept himself closely within his lines, while the blockading army was suffering, as he knew, from a scarcity of provisions. But the sturdy veterans had often lived before, and fought too, on worse and scantier fare.<sup>1</sup> They threw their coarse, unpalatable loaves into the quarters of the Pompeians, that they might know the kind of spirits they had to deal with. Meanwhile, with the advance of spring the green crops began to ripen, and the enthusiasm of the Cæsarians in their general's cause warmed still more at the prospect of greater plenty and a more familiar diet. They declared they would gnaw the bark from the trees before they would suffer Pompeius to escape out of their hands. Nor was the condition of the

Pompeius  
keeps  
steadily  
within his  
lines.

<sup>1</sup> Duruy (*Hist. des Romains*, ii. 495.) observes on this occasion: "On a remarqué que nos soldats manquaient de vivres quand ils gagnèrent les plus belles victoires des dernières guerres."

CHAP.  
XVII.

besieged much better. Though supplied with provisions by means of the fleet, they were in great want of water, for Cæsar had dammed up or turned the watercourses which ran from the surrounding heights into the space inclosed by his lines, and the Pompeians were obliged to have recourse to the wells which they sank in the sands and marshes of the sea-shore.<sup>1</sup> At the last extremity Pompeius might no doubt have effected his escape on board his vessels<sup>2</sup>; but in so doing he would have broken up all his plans, he would have incurred infinite disgrace, and his vigilant enemy would hardly have allowed him to execute such a movement without scaling his undefended ramparts, and cutting off at least a portion of his followers.

Pompeius  
gains some  
advantages  
at sea.

It is remarkable, however, that Pompeius, whose fame as a naval conqueror was almost equal to his military reputation, should have availed himself so little of his superiority at sea throughout this campaign. The co-operation of land and sea armaments was little understood by the Romans. We have seen how ill the fleet was seconded in its attempt to blockade the harbour of Brundisium; and now, in its turn, it seems to have contributed very inefficiently to the support of the land forces

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 49. : "Omnia enim flumina atque omnes rivos qui ad mare pertinebant Cæsar aut averterat aut magnis operibus obstruxerat." The latter operation is hardly conceivable; besides that within so wide a circuit there must have been numerous springs and streams, as Lucan, only too magniloquently, observes :

"Flumina tot cursus illinc exorta fatigant,  
Illic mersa, suos."

<sup>2</sup> See Dolabella's letter to Cæsar (*Cic. ad Div.* ix. 9.).

within the lines of Petra. But it is impossible to suppose that Cæsar, who had combined his land and sea forces so skilfully both in his contest with the Veneti and in the siege of Massilia, would have made so little use of this important arm if the superiority had been on his own side. As it was, however, the little flotilla in which he had run his troops over was completely cut off. He had laid it up at Oricum, where he caused the harbour to be blocked up by sinking a vessel in its mouth, and he also stationed there a garrison of three cohorts. But Cnæus, the spirited son of the great Pompeius, made a dashing attack upon this stronghold, cut out four of the vessels, and burnt the rest. After this exploit he made an attempt upon Lissus, and succeeded in entering that port also and burning a number of transports or merchant vessels, but was repulsed from the walls by the bravery of the citizens, who were devoted to Cæsar's cause.<sup>1</sup>

A naval armament which required a military guard for its defence, was an incumbrance to Cæsar rather than a source of strength, and it is probable that he was not much discomposed by the loss of it. He was now thrown entirely upon the disposition of the provinces themselves for the means of providing for his army, and, if requisite, of recruiting it. It was necessary to detach various bodies of troops to secure the co-operation of the natives and Roman citizens, and counterwork the influence which the enemy might still exert upon them. With this view L. Cassius Longinus led

Cæsar establishes communications with Ætolia, Thessaly, and Macedonia.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 39, 40.



CHAP.  
XVII.

the twenty-seventh legion, with two hundred cavalry, into Thessaly, where Cæsar's interests were maintained by a strong party under the direction of a young patrician of the highest rank, named Petreius. A smaller force was despatched into Ætolia, under C. Calvisius Sabinus, to provide supplies for the camp before Petra. At the same time Cn. Domitius Calvinus took the great eastern road leading across the Candavian mountains into Macedonia, where there was a considerable Cæsarian party, which had already invited assistance against the Pompeians.<sup>1</sup> This detachment consisted of two complete legions and five hundred cavalry, for as Macedonia lay in the direct route from the eastern provinces, it was in this region that the advance of Scipio required to be arrested.

Scipio advances with his legions from Syria, lingers for a time in Asia Minor, and arrives at last in Macedonia.

Scipio was zealous in the cause of his son-in-law, nor was there any one of the senatorial chiefs whose personal interests were more deeply involved in its success. He was a man of resolution, also, and not deficient in military conduct; yet his proceedings in the command of the eastern provinces were marked by great want of activity. He withdrew every battalion that could be spared from the frontiers of the empire, leaving them almost undefended in the presence of the formidable Parthians. He recruited his legions among the provincials of Syria and Asia Minor, and gradually assembled his whole force at Pergamus, in Phrygia, where he established his head-quarters for some months. His troops were for the most part fully trained to war, so that the delay in his movements could not

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 34, 35. 55.

be attributed to the necessity of devoting time to exercising them. Even had this been the case, he might have led them into Epirus, and thus have united the two great divisions of the Pompeian armies before Cæsar's arrival on the coast. He may have pleaded, perhaps, in excuse for his neglect, the reluctance of the Eastern legions to be led against their own countrymen, and their mortification at being required to abandon the interests of the republic in those parts to the mercy of an insolent enemy. It was only by giving up to them, if Cæsar may be believed, the plunder of various cities in Asia, that the proconsul first debauched and so bound them to his service.<sup>1</sup> But it is more probable that Scipio was intriguing to secure his influence with this division of the army, to enable him to claim a share in the command of the combined forces. Accordingly, he proceeded to ingratiate himself with his soldiers by severe exactions upon the subject provinces. His officers were clamorous; they declared, not untruly, that in leaving Rome they had abandoned their personal means of subsistence, and they demanded a full compensation for their sacrifices in the spoil of the provinces in which they were quartered. Every personage of rank and influence was propitiated by the lucrative government of some city or district. The maintenance of a large and licentious army in the midst of a wealthy and feeble population may, indeed, suffice to tell its own tale. It requires no statement of the historian to convince us that the proconsul himself, his retinue, his officers, and his

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 32.

CHAP.  
XVII.

soldiery, vied with each other in oppressing the unfortunate provincials. Yet Scipio could not shake off the yoke of military obedience. He had devoted to plunder the temple of Ephesus, a shrine of almost unparalleled wealth, and had assembled the senators and principal officers upon the spot to apportion the treasures among them, when peremptory orders arrived from Pompeius to join him without delay.<sup>1</sup> The despatch contained, perhaps, bitter reflections upon the character of his proceedings, which could not fail to excite displeasure and alarm in the more politic commander. The hungry expectants were dismissed ungratified, and the temple was saved. Scipio now summoned his troops to active service. He crossed the Bosphorus, and was pursuing the great road westward, which led through Thessalonica and Pella, when he learnt that Calvinus was strongly posted directly in his front, while, at the same time, the more circuitous route through Thessaly was occupied with a smaller detachment by Longinus.

Undecisive  
operations  
in Mace-  
donia.

His advance thus intercepted, Scipio acted with great vigour and promptitude. He approached within twenty miles of his opponent in front, as if with the purpose of fighting, and then, leaving only a handful of men under Favonius to amuse him, turned sharply to the left, perhaps at the spot where the road to Thessaly diverged from Pella, and pushed on rapidly over the frontier mountains to cut off the division of Longinus before it could receive succour. But Calvinus was quickly apprised of his manœuvre, and, knowing

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 33.



that Favonius was unsupported, advanced without a moment's delay to attack him. Cassius had already moved in retreat, and Scipio dared not follow him and leave Favonius in such apparent jeopardy. He retraced his steps with reluctance, and rescued his lieutenant at the moment when the enemy was about to fall upon him. But with all his forces re-united he was still indisposed to meet Domitius in the field. His retirement behind entrenchments was hailed by his opponents as nearly equivalent to a defeat, for, in the wavering state of opinion among the provincials, the party which maintained the most confident demeanour was sure to carry off the palm of popular favour. Some skirmishes ensued, with various success; but, on the whole, the two armies continued watching each other, without coming to any decisive action, while the course of events was unfolding far more important results under the immediate eye of the great rivals.<sup>1</sup>

Appius  
Claudius  
consults the  
oracle of  
Delphi.

While these movements were in progress, however, Cæsar had detached another small division under Fufius Calenus to promote his interests in Achaia.<sup>2</sup> The senate had entrusted that province to Appius Claudius, whose zeal for the cause of the nobles was by no means equalled either by his judgment or activity. He abandoned the plain duties before him to inquire idly into the secrets of futurity. The champion of antiquated political forms took counsel at the shrine of an effete superstition. The oracle of Delphi had fallen into oblivion or contempt in the general decay of faith, or

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 36—38.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 55.

CHAP.  
XVII.

on the discovery of its profligate corruption. Whatever credit might still attach to their pretensions to divine inspiration, its hierophants were no longer the confederates or the creatures of the statesman. They were roused from the languid enjoyment of ample revenues and traditional dignity by the perilous compliment now paid to their obsolete functions. Alarmed and bewildered, they sought to disclaim the invidious responsibility: "The destinies of Rome," they said, "were recorded once for all in the verses of the Sibyl: the conflagration of their temple by the Gauls had choked the cave with cinders, and stifled the voice of the god: he who spurned from his shrine the profane and unrighteous, found none to address in these degenerate days." But all these evasions were vain. Appius demanded the event of the war, and pertinaciously claimed a reply. The priestess took her seat on the fatal tripod, inhaled the intoxicating vapours, and at last delivered the response which her prompters deemed the most likely to gratify the intruder: "Thou, Appius, hast no part in the civil wars: thou shalt possess the hollow of Eubœa." The proconsul was satisfied. He determined to abandon all active measures for the party which had entrusted the province to him, and fondly hoped that, in retiring to the deep recesses of the Euripus, where the sea rushes through the gorge between Aulis and Chalcis, the waves of civil war would pass by him, and leave him in undisturbed possession of his island sovereignty. But he had scarcely reached the spot when he was seized with fever, and the oracle was triumphantly fulfilled by

His delusion and death.

CHAP.  
XVII.Cæsar oc-  
cupies  
Achaia.

his death and burial on the hollow shore.<sup>1</sup> From this time the interests of the nobles met with no fostering care throughout the province of Achaia; and, on the approach of Calenus, the Pompeians found themselves so weak, that they abandoned the whole of Greece north of the isthmus, and contented themselves with fortifying the access to the Peloponnesus by land, the coast being secured by the undisputed supremacy of their naval armaments. It would seem that by this time Cæsar had established his interests on a solid foundation throughout the provinces from Epirus to Thrace, and from Illyricum to the Gulf of Corinth. He had restored the balance of power between himself and his rival upon the very theatre of war which the latter had chosen, and which he had had a whole year to fortify and secure.

Operations  
before  
Petra.

The military operations which were conducted during this interval before the walls of Petra were of so complicated a character that, in the absence of local knowledge, and with no other guide than the Commentaries, which at this juncture are both obscure and defective, it would answer no purpose to attempt to describe them in detail. Skirmishes were constantly occurring throughout the whole extent of the lines. Cæsar enumerates the occurrence of not less than six in a single day; and in these earlier engagements it would appear that the advantage generally rested with the Cæsarians. One circumstance which he mentions in regard to them is curious, nor does there seem any reason to

<sup>1</sup> Val. Max. i. 8. 10.; Lucan. v. 122. foll.



CHAP.  
XVII.

suspect him of misrepresenting it. It was found, he says, after a series of these petty combats, that two thousand of the Pompeians had fallen, while of his own men only twenty had been killed; on the other hand, of those engaged in a certain position not one escaped without a wound. If any inference can be drawn from so remarkable a disparity of loss, it would seem to show the great superiority of the Cæsarians in the use of their weapons, and is a striking proof of the advantage which the well-trained veteran derived from his superior skill in the warfare of those times. But if these repeated engagements gave occasion for the display of more than usual valour and devotion on the part of Cæsar's veterans, and one of them could exhibit his shield pierced in one hundred and twenty places<sup>1</sup>, they served, nevertheless, at the same time to exercise the Pompeian recruits in the use of their arms, and to raise them gradually to a level with their presumptuous assailants. There was one part of Cæsar's works which had not been completed. He was conscious that, with the command of the sea, Pompeius could turn his besieger's flank and attack him in the rear, by landing troops at a point outside his own lines. To provide against such a movement, Cæsar drew a second line of entrenchments from the shore parallel to his principal line, leaving a certain interval between them, and of such a length that, in order to double them,

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 53. This was the centurion Scæva, whose prowess as recorded by Cæsar, Suetonius, and Appian, to set aside the hyperboles of Lucan, was more like that of a hero of romance than of a military veteran, according to modern ideas.

the assailant would have to penetrate inland a considerable distance from his ships.<sup>1</sup> But, to carry out this mode of defence, it was necessary to draw a transverse line along the coast to connect the first rampart with the second. This lateral entrenchment had not been completed, and, accordingly, there remained an open space between the two lines, into which Pompeius was able to throw a body of men from his vessels. This detachment not only made good its landing, but found the Cæsarians unprepared, and working at the entrenchments without their arms. It would seem that Cæsar's numbers were not adequate, especially after their late reductions, to carry out works of such immense magnitude, or to defend them when completed. In this quarter his troops were routed and thrown into confusion. He was compelled to withdraw them from the ground on which they were posted and content himself with the construction of a new encampment to confront the enemy, who had thus established themselves in a position in the rear of his trenches. The besiegers were much disheartened at the unexpected vigour which their opponents had exhibited, and their general strove in vain to rally their confidence. He was himself aware that his position was lost almost beyond recovery, for the connexion between the different parts of his immense lines was dislocated, and the ground, intersected by so many walls and trenches, presented serious impediments to the rapid movement and concentration of his forces. His eagle eye discerned one Pompeian

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 63.

CHAP.  
XVII.Discomfi-  
ture of  
Cæsar.

division separated from the main body and unsupported. He moved with a very superior force against it; but the difficulties of the ground baffled all his combinations; his men, dispirited and out of breath, straggled up to the object of their attack, were repulsed with steady gallantry, and, when a larger force came to the rescue of the Pompeians, were completely discomfited, and driven back in confusion to their lines.<sup>1</sup>

Triumph of  
Pompeius's  
military  
skill.

The rout and disorder of the vanquished party were so complete, that Pompeius could only imagine that their rapid flight was a feint to lure him on to incautious pursuit. He abstained from pressing his advantage<sup>2</sup>; indeed the impediments of the ground would have retarded his advance, while it favoured his opponent's well-known ability in rallying his broken ranks. He had gained, indeed, a complete victory, for it was now impossible for Cæsar to hold his position. Pompeius had fully carried out the plans he had in view from the first, for he had steadily refused to be drawn prematurely into a decisive engagement; he had trained his men at leisure, and had at last thrown them upon their besiegers with equal confidence and superior numbers. He now broke triumphantly through the toils with which his enemy had surrounded him, and his fortunes seemed to emerge

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 69, 70.; Frontin. *Stratagem.* iii. 17. 4.; Orosius (vi. 15.) here supplies what was required to account for this extraordinary rout of the Cæsarian veterans.

<sup>2</sup> He is said to have been dissuaded by Labienus: but Cæsar himself was reported to have acknowledged that the war might have been brought to a close that day if the enemy had known how to use his victory. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 62.



with all their former brilliancy from the cloud which so lately obscured them. When Cato, indeed, beheld the bodies of a thousand citizens extended on the ground he covered his face and wept.<sup>1</sup> But with his single exception, both the general and his officers now abandoned themselves to unbounded exultation. All the flattering hopes which had sustained them through the winter, of soon returning to Rome to satiate their vengeance or their cupidity, damped as they had been by the course events had recently taken, now returned in their original freshness. They made no account of the disadvantages under which Cæsar had fought, and claimed the victory as the reward of their own valour and conduct. Pompeius alone had any apprehension of the result of a general engagement, to which his adherents now looked forward with impatience. In the midst of his triumph he exhibited signs of moderation which they ascribed only to pusillanimity. He accepted indeed the title of Imperator with which the victorious legions saluted him; but on this, which was perhaps the first occasion of that honourable distinction being awarded in a civil war, he declined to adopt the usual insignia by which it was accompanied, and wreathed neither his despatches nor his fasces with laurel. But his followers had no such scruples: their leader probably had not the power, if even he had the will, to restrain them in the display of their arrogance and violence. Labienus was particularly anxious to distinguish himself among his new friends. He demanded and

Exultation  
and violence  
of his parti-  
zans.

<sup>1</sup> Zonaras, *Annal.* x. 8.

CHAP.  
XVII.

obtained of Pompeius the unfortunate men who had been made prisoners in the late engagement. Upbraiding them ironically with cowardice and desertion of their ranks, he ordered them all to be put to the sword in the presence of the applauding Pompeians.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar<sup>1</sup>  
moves  
towards  
Thessaly.

But the gain of a victory was not sufficient to counterbalance the loss of time and reputation which Pompeius had submitted to undergo. One month earlier the defeat of Cæsar would have been his destruction, for he had then secured no friends to favour him in his retreat, and no second field on which to develop the resources of his genius. But now looking calmly around him, he saw that it was necessary to draw from the seaboard, and remove the war to a wider theatre in Macedonia or Thessaly. There he could unite all his forces and reconstruct the plan of the campaign. With unabated alacrity he prepared to execute this new project. The sick were sent forward, in the first instance, together with the baggage, under the escort of a single legion. The rest of the army left the camp in successive detachments, and Cæsar himself, having confronted his victorious enemy to the last, followed his advancing legions with such celerity as to overtake and combine his march with them.

He anticipates the various plans the enemy may adopt.

The destination of the army, in the first instance, was Apollonia; for it was there that Cæsar had made arrangements for the care of his wounded, and there lay the treasure which was

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 71. : "Interrogans, solerentne veterani milites fugere, in omnium conspectu interfecit."

amassed for the pay of the legionaries. From thence he despatched letters of exhortation to his allies, explaining the real state of his affairs, and sent forward detachments to occupy the most important points on the sea-coast. His first anxiety was to effect a junction of the main body of his troops with Calvinus.<sup>1</sup> He calculated that if, by such a movement, he could draw Pompeius from his lines at Petra to protect Scipio from the combined forces of the Cæsarians, he should find an opportunity for compelling him to engage. But if Pompeius should avail himself of the retreat of his antagonist to recross the Adriatic<sup>2</sup>, it was then his intention to march through Illyricum with his whole army, and confront the enemy in Cisalpine Gaul, if not before Rome itself. If, another alternative, Pompeius should prefer keeping close to his present quarters, and forming successively the sieges of Oricum, Lissus, and Apollonia, in order to cut Cæsar off from the sea, and deprive him of all succour from Italy, he then contemplated advancing against Scipio in Macedonia, and thus forcing the senatorian general to hasten to his colleague's relief.

Cæsar sent forward despatches to notify his approach to Calvinus, and to convey the necessary instructions for his guidance. But the pompous announcement of their victory which the conquerors had circulated in all directions, had so imposed upon the inhabitants of the intervening districts,

Cæsar effects a junction with the division of Calvinus on the frontiers of Epirus and Thessaly.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 75. foll.

<sup>2</sup> This was the advice of Afranius, but Pompeius did not choose to withdraw so far from his Eastern allies. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 65.



CHAP.  
XVII.

---

that they considered Cæsar's cause as lost, and were eager to conciliate the victors by intercepting his messengers. Calvinus meanwhile, after keeping his ground for a considerable time in front of Scipio on the Haliacmon, had been compelled to withdraw by the want of provisions, and had fallen back upon the road to Dyrrhachium, as far as Heraclea, a town on the frontiers of Macedonia, at the foot of the Candavian mountains. He supposed that, in making this retrograde movement, he was only approaching nearer to the base of Cæsar's operations, and rendering a junction with him more sure, whatever fortune might befall his general's arms in Epirus. But Cæsar, by the circuit which he was obliged to make in order to visit Apollonia, had abandoned to his adversary the direct route into Macedonia; and this was the line upon which Pompeius was already advancing, the noise of the breaking up of Cæsar's camp having advertised him of his sudden retreat. It was by accident only that Calvinus became apprised of the danger that was gathering in his rear. Certain Allobroges, who had recently deserted from Cæsar to his opponent at Petra, happened to fall in with the scouts sent out by Calvinus to collect information. Though now arrayed on different sides, yet from old habits of familiarity they did not scruple to enter into converse with one another, and the retreat of Cæsar in one direction, together with the advance of Pompeius in the other, were disclosed just in time to allow Calvinus to break up his camp and set out in a southerly direction to meet his general. The Pompeians arrived at his deserted

quarters only four hours after he had quitted them; but he was already beyond the reach of pursuit, and the two great divisions of the Cæsarian army effected their junction at Æginium, on the confines of Epirus and Thessaly.

From this point Cæsar advanced to Gomphi, a town which had lately volunteered to place itself under the banner of his lieutenants, but which now, excited by the exaggerated report of his disasters, shut its gates against him, and sent pressing messages both to Scipio and Pompeius to come to its relief. Scipio, however, had withdrawn as far as Larissa, and Pompeius had not yet entered Thessaly. The activity of Cæsar's operations was such as to prevent the possibility of aid being rendered to the devoted city. Arriving before the walls in the morning, he had prepared all the requisite works and machinery for the assault by three o'clock in the afternoon, and carried the place by storm the same evening. To reward the energy of his soldiers, and at the same time to inspire a salutary sense of his undiminished power, he gave up the town to pillage: but this was for a moment only, for he was immediately on his march again, and appeared straightway before Metropolis, which took warning by the fate of its neighbour, and surrendered without a blow. All the towns of Thessaly, except Larissa, followed this example without delay, thus giving Cæsar complete possession of the broad champaign country watered by the Peneus and its tributaries. Throughout this fertile region the corn was abundant and now nearly ripe. Cæsar had no difficulty in maintain-

Cæsar fixes  
his quarters  
in the plain  
of Thessaly.

CHAP.  
XVII.

Arrogance  
of the se-  
natorial  
chiefs :  
their in-  
trigues and  
mutual  
jealousies.

ing his soldiers there, and he now confined his movements to the plain southward of the Enipeus, deliberately awaiting the expected attack.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar had directed his advance upon the route which traverses the southern part of Thessaly, abandoning any attempt to prevent the junction of the two main divisions of the enemy's forces, which, when thus combined at Larissa, formed an aggregate of imposing magnitude. Pompeius now condescended or was compelled to share with his father-in-law the honours of the chief command. But the responsibility still attached to him alone, and the impatient senators were convinced that he purposely protracted the war, to enjoy the supremacy in the camp which must be relinquished in the city.<sup>2</sup> Domitius taunted him with the name of Agamemnon, king of the kings before Troy; Favonius only exclaimed with a sigh, "We shall not eat our figs this year either at Tusculum." But the proud array of the combined armies inflamed more than ever the hopes of their order; their numerical superiority to Cæsar was greater now than even at Petra, and the impatience to strike the blow which should free them for ever from his harassing persecution became universal and overwhelming. The chiefs contended openly among themselves for the places and dignities which should fall to their lot upon Cæsar's de-

<sup>1</sup> Appian (*B. C.* ii. 67.) supposes that Cæsar was in want of provisions, and that Pompeius wished to protract the campaign in order to profit by his necessities : but it appears that the resources of a large extent of country were now at his command.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 67., *Cæs.* 41.; Appian. *l. c.*



struction. They already assigned the consuls for several years to come; while among the candidates for the highest offices, Domitius Scipio and Lentulus Spinther were most clamorous for the supreme pontificate<sup>1</sup>, Fannius coveted the villa of Atticus, and Lentulus Crus laid his finger on the house of Hortensius and the gardens of Cæsar.<sup>2</sup> The mutual jealousy of these competitors led to intrigues and recriminations which loosened the bands of authority and discipline. Attius Rufus came forward to accuse Afranius of deliberate treachery in the Spanish campaign; L. Hirrus, a man of some note in the party, having had the honour of competing on one occasion with no less a rival than Cicero, being absent from the camp on a mission to the Parthians, might fear to be thrust altogether aside in the scramble for the anticipated dignities; and Domitius proposed in council that judgment of death or confiscation should be passed at the close of the war upon every member of the senate convicted of the crime of having remained at Rome during the struggle, or even who, after joining its standard, should have continued a spectator rather than an actor in its ranks.<sup>3</sup>

It is possible that this menace pointed among others at Cicero, who may have advanced claims

Their dissatisfaction with Ci-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 83.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 6. If this is correct, it would seem that Marcia did not bring the property of Hortensius to Cato as her dowry on their resumption of the nuptial relation, and therefore there was probably no second marriage.

<sup>3</sup> Cæs. *l. c.* This is fully confirmed by Cicero. Even Atticus, he says, was among the proscribed: and further, "Omnes qui in Italia manserant, hostium numero habebantur."

CHAP.  
XVII.

cero's conduct.

to a larger share in the contemplated distribution of rewards than were deemed proportionate to his actual services. He had been present in the camp at Petra, and had freely expressed his disgust at his leader's policy in allowing himself to be shut up in so dishonourable a position. Cicero, indeed, was one of the few sensible men who had deprecated forcing Pompeius to a premature engagement; but while he confessed that the troops of the republic were not equal in training to their adversary's veterans, he had persisted in urging the adoption of measures still more certainly inefficient, and had paraded his impracticable notions of the authority and dignity of the senate in a question of mere military means.<sup>1</sup> At last, when Pompeius advanced into Thessaly, he pleaded ill health as an excuse for remaining behind<sup>2</sup>, declining at the same time all public command, and contenting himself with sending his son to follow the fortunes of the common cause. The proposition of Domitius, if carried into effect, would have fallen with its full weight upon one who had thus offended the zealots of his party.

The opposing armies take up their positions in the plain of Pharsalia.

At length Pompeius moved to the southward from Larissa upon the road to Pharsalus, which forms the line of communication between Thessaly and Greece. The city of Pharsalus occupied a rocky eminence connected with the northern spurs of the

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* iv. 7.: "Non iis rebus pugnabamus quibus valere poteramus, consilio, auctoritate, causa, quæ erant in nobis superiora; sed lacertis et viribus, quibus pares non fuimus." He used similar expressions in a letter to Torquatus (*Div.* vi. 1.).

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cic.* 39.; Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 4.

chain of Othrys, upon the verge of the plain, five or six miles in width, which extends along the left bank of the river Enipeus. The direction of Pompeius's march led him to the foot of a gentle acclivity, which bounds this plain to the east, and it was on this height, to all appearance, that he selected the spot for his encampment. Beneath it he drew up his forces, resting on his entrenched lines, and thus prepared he challenged the enemy to attack him in the position he had chosen. The fortified post of Pharsalus itself lay at no great distance on the left, a little in advance of his array; but the inhabitants, who had submitted to Cæsar's requisitions in the absence of his adversary, were now glad to shut their gates, and gazed, perhaps with indifference, upon the preparations which were making to decide the war before their eyes.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, Cæsar had pitched his own camp in the centre of the same plain, a little to the west of Pharsalus, at a distance of thirty stades, or about four Roman miles from that of his opponent.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Two cities rose successively on or near the site of Pharsalus, and it is possible that at the period of the battle the place may have been deserted. If so, this would account for the remarkable fact that Cæsar makes no mention of it, and also for its playing no part in the details of the operations conducted so close to it. See Ersch und Gruber's *Encyclopädie*, art. "Pharsalische Schlacht," by Eckermann.

<sup>2</sup> I have endeavoured to comprise in the text all the marks of locality which Cæsar, Appian, and Plutarch furnish for understanding the battle of Pharsalia; what further explanation is required I have derived from Colonel Leake's account in his *Travels in Northern Greece* (i. 445., iv. 477.), and I have to acknowledge his kindness in elucidating some points on which he has allowed me to refer to him. Dodwell and Clarke traversed the plain, but their observation was extremely cursory, and their statements, in some respects, strangely conflicting. The lively professor, indeed, acknowledges that he trotted across it in a thick fog. A comparison of the earlier maps



CHAP.  
XVII.

Assured of the revived confidence of his veterans, he was anxious to draw Pompeius into a general engagement in the open country between them. He arrayed his forces at first in front of his own encampment, and gradually pushed his lines still nearer to the enemy's position. The result of some skirmishes of cavalry showed that his slender squadrons, supported by picked men of the infantry, trained to run and fight between their ranks, could stand without flinching the onset of undisciplined numbers. But Pompeius, though urged by the pressing solicitations of his unruly followers, still hesitated to descend from his vantage ground. Thus baffled, Cæsar was preparing to shift his quarters, and engage his adversary to follow him into another part of the country where the supplies were less exhausted, and where his vigilance might seize some opportunity of compelling him to fight. The movement he now threatened upon Scotussa would have thrown him between the Pompeian army and the base of its operations at Larissa, and was calculated to rouse

Cæsar  
threatens  
to move on  
Pompeius's  
flank.

with Col. Leake's shows a marked discrepancy between them, and even Kiepert's differs in some degree from this latter, though far more opposed to the previous ones. The great difficulty of Col. Leake's explanation is that, from the position he assigns to the Pompeian camp, the routed army must have turned at least a right angle in its flight to Larissa, besides crossing the broad channel of the Enipeus, neither of which circumstances are alluded to by the authorities. I cannot persuade myself, however, that the localities in their present configuration admit of any other hypothesis. It would be interesting to examine them, with the view of inquiring whether any material change has taken place in the course of the Enipeus and its tributary streams. The battle of Plassy was fought on the left bank of the Hooghly, which now, I believe, flows over its site, and in another hundred years will probably have transferred it to its right.

it from its wary inaction. It was the morning of the ninth of August: the trumpets had already sounded to march in the Cæsarian encampment, the legionaries had buckled on their arms and equipments, and the camp-followers were striking the tents, when news arrived that the Pompeians had advanced a little beyond their ordinary position in front of their entrenchments, and were already deploying their long columns on the level plain.<sup>1</sup> Their general had yielded with a sigh to the importunities of his followers, declaring that he could no longer command and must submit to obey.<sup>2</sup> During the interval of suspense the minds of both the great leaders had been agitated, it was said, by melancholy reflections on the impending crisis. The one was haunted even in his sleep by the delusive vision of his splendid theatre, and by the echoes of popular applause which had so often greeted him there.<sup>3</sup> Even Cæsar acknowledged his dejection at the prospect of an encounter, which, he said, whatever were the event, would be the commencement of many evils.<sup>4</sup> But his men

Pompeius  
offers him  
battle.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 85. Aug. 9. A. U. 706 = June 6, B. C. 48. The day is recorded in the Kalendar. Amitern. v. Id. Sext.: "Soli Indigeti in colle Quirinale Fer(iæ) q(uod) eo d(ie) C. Cæs. C. F. Pharsali devicit." Orelli, *Inscr.* ii. p. 397.; Fischer, *Röm. Zeittäf.* Lucan's assertion (vii. 410.),

"Tempora signavit leviorum Roma malorum,  
Hunc voluit nescire diem,"

has perplexed the critics. He means probably that the anniversary of Pharsalia was not marked in the calendar as a dies nefastus, like those of Allia and Cannæ.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 86.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 69.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 42.; Flor. iv. 2.; Lucan. vii. 9.

<sup>4</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 69. The widespread presentiment of evil recorded in such striking language by Lucan (vii. 187.) may be re-

CHAP.  
XVII.

were full of ardour; they had invoked upon themselves, self-accused, the terrors of military execution, to atone for their pusillanimity in the disasters before Petra, and when their leader had recently offered to wait for further reinforcements, they had impatiently demanded to be pitted against the enemy unrecruited.<sup>1</sup>

Array of  
the con-  
tending  
armies.

The arrangements for the battle were of the simplest kind. The plain was open, without any natural features to give an advantage to one side over the other; nor did either army seek the cover of artificial defences. The contest was to be decided by downright fighting of man and man. The rugged banks of the Enipeus afforded equal protection to one flank of either army, so that both could concentrate the whole of their covering squadrons of cavalry and light troops on the other. Pompeius ranged his legionary force so as to rest its right wing on the river, Scipio commanding in the centre, Lentulus on the right, and Domitius on the left. In the left wing also the general himself took his station, at least at the commencement of the encounter.<sup>2</sup> The cavalry, on which, from its numbers and composition, as well as from the level nature of the ground, Pompeius placed his principal reliance, was stationed at the extremity of the left wing. The days had long gone by when the cavalry of a Roman army was composed of the

ferred, perhaps, to contemporary tradition. Comp. Plut. *Cæs.* 47.; Dion. xli. 61.; Gell. xv. 18.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 63.; Plut. *Cæs.* 43.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the statements of *Cæs. B. C.* iii. 88. with Plut. *Cæs.* 44.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 76. Lucan places Domitius on the right. It is probable that Pompeius shifted his own position in the course of the battle.



knights who served the commonwealth on horseback. In later times that force had been furnished entirely by the foreign auxiliaries, while the more distinguished of the citizens officered the legionary infantry. But now the flower of the Roman nobility mounted their horses, and crowded into the ranks<sup>1</sup>, forming, no doubt, the finest body of cavalry the republic had ever sent into the field. The statement which Cæsar gives of the numbers arrayed on each side is confirmed by Appian, apparently from independent sources.<sup>2</sup> The Pompeian army consisted of a legionary force of one hundred and ten cohorts, making an aggregate of forty-five thousand men, while the cavalry amounted to seven thousand, bearing a much larger proportion to the whole amount than was usual in the Roman armies. Two thousand picked men were also dispersed through the ranks of the infantry to animate the less experienced by the example of their courage and discipline. The cavalry was supported by detachments of slingers and bowmen, who fought intermixed with the horses; and there were also several squadrons of mounted auxiliaries, principally from Pontus and Cappadocia.<sup>3</sup> The forces of the allied kings and states which the senate

<sup>1</sup> This is distinctly stated by Frontinus, *Strateg.* iv. 7. 32., and is evidently implied in Plutarch's account of the battle.

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 70.

<sup>3</sup> Lucan. vii. 225. :

“Cappadocum montana cohors et largus habenis  
Ponticus ibat eques.”

But he places them quite at random,

“Juxta fluvios et stagna undantis Enipei.”

No doubt they were posted on the opposite side of the plain, at the extreme left of the position.

CHAP.  
XVII.

---

brought also into the field must have been exceedingly numerous<sup>1</sup>; but the pride of the Roman tacticians seldom condescended to compute them, and Pompeius himself seems to have had little confidence in their assistance, keeping them throughout the day in the back ground, where they only served to encumber the field, and straiten the position of the effective combatants. On the other hand, Cæsar had eighty legionary cohorts in line, so much reduced by the losses of their numerous campaigns as to amount to no more than twenty-two thousand fighting men; while in cavalry he was exceedingly weak, having only one thousand horsemen; but these were a well-trying body of Gaulish veterans, on whom, as we have seen, he could place entire dependence. His subsidiary forces must have been also much inferior in numbers to those of the enemy. Besides Germans and Gauls, he was attended by some recent levies from Greece and Thessaly. But the work of the day was to be performed by the veteran legionaries, and their leader knew and relied on the spirit which linked man to man among them; for every private seemed to feel that his general's eye was upon himself personally, and the sentiment with which the centurion Crastinus greeted him, as he passed along the ranks, was responded to by one and all. "My general," he exclaimed, "I will so

<sup>1</sup> Florus, in a passage apparently corrupt, seems to count the whole numbers engaged on both sides at not less than three hundred thousand men. This is undoubtedly a gross exaggeration; but the statements of Appian (*B. C.* ii. 70, 71.) leave no doubt that, besides the Italian forces, as he calls them, there were large bodies of allies on both sides, and especially on the Pompeian.

bear myself this day, that, whether I survive or fall, you shall have cause to thank me." It was Crastinus that hurled the first pilum, and commenced the fray.<sup>1</sup>

Such was the eagerness with which Cæsar accepted the proffered challenge, that he ordered the works of his camp to be levelled for his battalions to deploy in line without obstruction, and take up their ground instantaneously.<sup>2</sup> With forces so inferior, and posted in the middle of an open plain, he was well assured that the enemy would attempt to outflank him. Yet he could not venture to extend his front. He retained the usual battle array, drawing up his legionary cohorts in three lines, of which the third was destined to act as a reserve. To support his small body of cavalry, which occupied the extreme right of his position, he stationed in their rear six cohorts taken from the third line, disposing their front obliquely so as to sustain the anticipated movement of the enemy on his flank.<sup>3</sup> He took up his own position with

<sup>1</sup> The body of Crastinus was discovered on the field, the face pierced with a sword wound. Cæsar accorded to it peculiar honours. *Plut. Pomp.* 71.; *Appian.* c. 82. Lucan has a bitter imprecation against him (*vii.* 470.):

"Di tibi non mortem quæ cunctis pœna paratur,  
Sed sensum post fata tuæ dent, Crastine, morti."

<sup>2</sup> *Lucan.* *vii.* 326.:

"Sternite jam vallum fossasque implete ruina,  
Exeat ut plenæ acies non sparsa manipulis."

*comp. Appian. B. C.* *ii.* 74., who, however, does not understand the meaning of the operation.

<sup>3</sup> *Lucan.* *vii.* 522.:

"Tenet obliquas post signa cohortes."

This seems to be the best explanation of this difficult passage. *Comp. Cæs. B. C.* *iii.* 89.



CHAP.  
XVII.

---

Battle of  
Pharsalia.

The Cæsarians charge  
the Pompeian infantry,

the tenth legion at the right of his line, to encourage the cavalry by his immediate proximity, and to share with his favourite battalions the post of greatest danger and responsibility.

Pompeius, as was expected, directed his cavalry to charge and turn the flank of the opposite ranks<sup>1</sup>: meanwhile, he made no demonstration of attack with his infantry, but ordered his lines to await the onset of the Cæsarians without advancing, according to the usual practice, to arrest it in mid career. He expected, we are informed, that the assailants would be exhausted by their own impetuosity, and fall into confusion on meeting the steady points of their adversaries' swords. But he had not calculated on the admirable training and tact of the practised veterans. When they saw that the opposite ranks did not advance to meet them, they drew up of their own accord, recovered their breath and their order, and then rushing forward again with a barbaric shout, discharged their pikes at a distance of twenty paces, and drew their swords with as much vigour and composure as their antagonists who had remained stationary. The Pompeians, on the other hand, crowded by their own numbers, and curbed by their officers, met the attack with none of the animation which

<sup>1</sup> The circumstances of the battle are minutely described by Cæsar, *B. C.* iii. 92—95., and his narrative is fully borne out by Appian, Plutarch, and Dion. Lucan is useful for illustration; but none of the historians give any colour to the statement he introduces for effect, that a last great stand was made in the centre by the flower of the Roman nobility (vii. 545.):

“Ventum erat ad robur Magni mediasque catervas . . . .  
Constitit hic bellum, fortunaque Cæsaris hæsit:  
Non illic regum auxilium,” &c.

the soldier acquires in the act of charging: yet they fought for a time manfully, and a bloody encounter, sword to sword, took place along the opposing lines.<sup>1</sup> Perhaps Pompeius's motive in not allowing his line to advance was to draw the Cæsarians onwards, and so throw upon their rear the cavalry which was beginning to operate on their flank. Against this manœuvre Cæsar had provided, to the best of his means, by keeping a third line in reserve; but the charge of the Pompeian cavalry was not, as it happened, sufficiently successful to call forth the application of this resource. It had brought, however, its overwhelming weight of men and horses to bear with formidable effect upon the slender Gaulish squadrons. Unable to sustain the shock, they had given way before it, but still keeping their ranks unbroken, and making face to the right so as to cover as much as possible the flank of the infantry. The six Cæsarian cohorts which had been drawn up obliquely for the same purpose now advanced between the intervals of these squadrons. The legionary, well armed, active, and expert, was generally more than a match for cavalry<sup>2</sup>; for the

and repel  
the attack  
of their  
cavalry

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. vii. 489.:

“Sed quota pars cladis jaculis ferroque volanti  
Exacta est? odiis solus civilibus ensis  
Sufficit, et dextras Romana in viscera ducit.”

<sup>2</sup> The Highlanders who routed the English cavalry at Preston Pans, were directed to strike at the noses of the horses, which wheeled round and became unmanageable. Comp. Lucan. vii. 528., where, however, he seems to attribute too much of the blame of discomfiture to the cowardice of the auxiliary cavalry. Florus says: “Cohortes tantum in effusos equites facere impetum, ut illi esse pedites, hi venire in equis viderentur.”

CHAP.  
XVII.

horses of the mounted squadrons which attended the Roman armies were generally small and light, their accoutrements clumsy, and their training comparatively defective. The appointments of the Pompeians, indeed, were more than usually complete; their cavaliers were armed to the teeth, and if their conduct and discipline were inferior, their spirit was confident and high. But the Cæsarians, intermingled with the horses of their Gaulish allies, who returned with renewed ardour to the combat, made havoc among these gallant patricians. "Strike at their faces" was the order which passed down their ranks; and, whether they used the sword or the pilum, they wasted not a single blow on the mailed panoply of their adversaries, but thrust at their faces with a sure and vigorous aim that disconcerted the bravest of the Roman youth.<sup>1</sup> The Pompeian squadrons were

<sup>1</sup> Compare Plutarch's description (*Pomp.* 71.). Cæsar's well-known command, *miles, faciem feri*, was explained by the ancients on the supposition that the Pompeian cavalry being composed in great part of the young Roman nobility, the surest means of putting such coxcombs to flight was to threaten their faces with disfigurement. But this explanation rests on no good authority, nor have we any reason to doubt the gallantry of the young patricians who composed this force. Germanicus (*Tac. Ann.* ii. 15.) ordered his soldiers, on engaging the Germans, "*ora mucronibus quærere*," telling them at the same time not to be discouraged by the great size of their shields. These shields covered the whole body, leaving only the face to aim at. In the same manner the Roman cavaliers were thoroughly armed, and the soldiers who had been accustomed to engage the half-clad Gauls might require this advice on meeting an enemy so differently equipped. Cæsar's command, therefore, was just such as an officer of the life-guards at Waterloo might have addressed to his men before they encountered the French cuirassiers; and it is well-known that by this lunge at the face many a personal combat was decided on that day.

The body armour of the Romans consisted generally of a headpiece and cuirass; his face and throat were bare, and the belly and thighs



completely broken, and driven in confusion to the adjacent hills, while the light-armed auxiliaries, no longer protected, were cut to pieces, and the Cæsarians, flushed with victory, advanced on the flank and rear of the main body.

Cæsar instantly called up his third line, and made a general advance upon the opposing battalions, already shaken by the first charge they had sustained, and now reeling under the sudden blows which assailed them on the flank. At the commencement of the battle he had ordered his men to confine their aim to the Romans opposed to them, and not waste their strength on the allies, whose slaughter would count little towards deciding the event.<sup>1</sup> But as soon as the fortune of the day had declared in his favour, he commanded them to abstain from the blood of citizens, and devote themselves to completing their victory by the destruction of the barbarians.<sup>2</sup> The hearts of the Pompeian legionaries were not in their work. As each Cæsarian confronted an opponent, he communicated to him the order he had received, and the Pompeians gladly availed themselves of the

Rout of the  
Pompeian  
forces, and  
flight of  
Pompeius.

only slightly protected by a loose fringe or kilt. The sword-cut could hardly take effect except above or below the breast. Accordingly, a sword-wound is generally described by the Roman writers as on the face or neck (ore, jugulo), or belly (visceribus). "Struck to the heart" is a phrase unknown to the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 74. : ἔχεσθε οἷν μοι τῶν Ἰταλῶν μόνων.

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 80. : ἀψαυστέιν τῶν ὁμοεθνῶν, ἐπὶ δὲ τοὺς συμμάχους μόνους χωρεῖν, καὶ τοῖς ἡσσωμένοις προσεπέλαζον, παραινούντες ἀδειῶς ἐστάναι . . . διεκθέοντες δὲ αὐτοὺς οἱ τοῦ Καίσαρος τοὺς συμμάχους οὐ δυνάμενους ἀντέχειν ἀνῆρουν. So Florus, "Parce civibus." Suet. *Jul.* 75. : "Acie Pharsalica proclamavit ut civibus parceretur." Lucan. vii. 319. :

"Civis qui fugerit esto."

CHAP.  
XVII.

welcome respite, and even opened their ranks to let the victors rush upon their allies, who were crowded in unavailable masses behind them. Among these almost unresisting multitudes a great slaughter took place. Pompeius had already abandoned the field, retiring moodily to his entrenchments at the first inclination of fortune. He made dispositions indeed for the defence of the works; but the routed battalions, instead of rallying to man the ramparts, fled with precipitation past them, and took refuge on a hill at a little distance. The discomfited general, alone in his tent, was soon roused from his sullen despondency by the shouts of the enemy pressing upon his outworks; exclaiming with peevish impatience, "What, assault even my camp!"<sup>1</sup> he mounted his horse and galloped with a handful of attendants through the Decuman gate.

Cæsar  
pursues the  
fugitives.

The conquerors burst into the encampment, where they found every preparation made for celebrating an assured victory.<sup>2</sup> Tables were laid for the banquet, and decked with splendid services of plate; the tents of Lentulus and others were already embowered in ivy. This display of luxury and magnificence astonished and tempted the rude veterans; but, before they could address themselves to the spoil, their services were again required by their indefatigable general, and such was their devotion to him that they consented, at his earnest entreaty, to leave the fruits of victory untasted until they had dislodged the routed army from the fastnesses to which it had fled. The Pompeians

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 81.; Plut. *Pomp.* 72.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 97.; Plut. *l. c.*

were too much dispirited to make any resistance. Shivered once more at the first onset, they poured in broken masses over hill and plain. But Cæsar was not yet satisfied. Allowing a part of his troops only to return to the camps, he led four legions in hot pursuit, and at the distance of six miles found a large body of the fugitives posted on an eminence overhanging a stream. He set his men immediately to throw up entrenchments, and cut off their approach to the water. This last labour was accomplished before nightfall; and when the Pompeians perceived that their means of watering were intercepted, they listened to the summons of the heralds who required their surrender. A few only of the senators escaped in the darkness.

Early on the morrow the fugitives descended from their position, as required, and, approaching in the attitude of suppliants, demanded grace of the conqueror. Cæsar hastened to reassure them by expatiating on the lenity which had marked his conduct throughout the contest; nor did he falsify on this occasion the character he was so proud to claim. The battle of Pharsalia, it was allowed even by his contemporaries, was honourably distinguished in the annals of civil warfare; from the close of the day no more blood was shed; the fugitives were spared, and the suppliants received mercy.<sup>1</sup> Nor, indeed, was the carnage of the com-

His clemency to the vanquished: number of the slain.

<sup>1</sup> It is strange that Dion should make a statement which is contradicted by every other writer. He says, xli. 62.: τῶν δὲ δὴ βουλευτῶν τῶν τε ἱππέων ὅσους μὲν καὶ πρότερόν ποτε ῥηκτικῶς ἤλειψαι ἀπέκτεινε. On the other hand, we read in (1.) Cæsar himself, i. 98., "Omnes conservavit." (2.) Cic. *pro Marcell.* 3., *pro Ligar.* 6.: "Quis non eam victoriam



CHAP.  
XVII.

bat proportioned to its results. The victors lost thirty centurions, and two hundred, or, as the highest estimate stated, twelve hundred legionaries: of the vanquished there fell ten senators, forty knights, and six thousand of all ranks.<sup>1</sup> But this return does not include the loss of the auxiliaries, which, at least on the Pompeian side, must have been much greater. It may be added that Cæsar's clemency was not dictated merely by policy. He mourned over the destruction of so many brave men, even at the moment which satiated his own thirst for power and glory. "They would have it so," he exclaimed, as he traversed the field strewn with the corpses of the honoured dead; "after all my exploits, I should have been condemned to death had I not thrown myself upon the protection of my soldiers."<sup>2</sup> The most distinguished of the slain was L. Domitius, a man conspicuous among the basest of his class for treachery, the fiercest for ferocity, and the most rancorous for personal malice. He was cut down in the flight by Cæsar's cavalry.<sup>3</sup> In the course of this history, we shall

Domitius  
slain in the  
pursuit.

probet, in quâ occiderit nemo nisi armatus?" (3.) Vellei. ii. 52.: "Nihil illa victoria mirabilius . . . fuit, quando neminem nisi acie consumptum patria desideravit." (4.) Sueton. *Jul.* 75.: "Nec ulli perisse nisi in prælio reperiuntur," with three exceptions which occurred at a later time. (5.) Florus, iv. 2. 90., speaking generally, "Reliqua pax incruenta, pensatum clementia bellum," &c.

<sup>1</sup> This was the statement of Asinius Pollio, who was present in the battle. Others swelled the loss of the Pompeians to 25,000. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 82.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 30.: "Hoc voluerunt: tantis rebus gestis condemnatus essem, nisi ab exercitu auxilium petissem." So Plut. *Cæs.* 46.

<sup>3</sup> Cicero (*Philipp.* ii. 29.) seems to insinuate that he was slain in cold blood by Antonius.

have to brand the name of Domitius through several succeeding generations as the symbol of falsehood, cruelty, and vindictiveness. We may lament that Lucan condescended to embalm the memory of the victim of Pharsalia in verses of more than usual power and pathos; perhaps they were meant as a tribute of flattery, however unavailing, to his detestable descendant, the emperor Nero.<sup>1</sup>

The conqueror was satisfied with the solid fruits of victory, without claiming the title of imperator; he demanded no triumph nor thanksgiving from a senate of his own partizans; a piece of moderation which, however trifling it may appear in our eyes, was thought worthy of being recorded to his honour by a reluctant panegyrist.<sup>2</sup> He bestowed his pardon and even his favour upon the chiefs of the opposite party who offered to lay down their arms. Among these was M. Brutus, who had escaped from the field, and got safely into Larissa; but, hearing of his leader's flight, and despairing of the cause, he had voluntarily tendered his submission. Assuredly this conclusion of his campaign contrasts mournfully with Lucan's address to the future hero of the republic. Unennobled by honours and offices, he had escaped, in the mass of the combatants, the deadliest aim of the Cæsarians. Yet how fatal a weapon did he wield! He is bid to reserve it for

M. Brutus  
surrenders,  
and is taken  
into favour  
by Cæsar.

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. vii. 599. :

“Mors tamen eminuit clarorum in strage virorum  
Pugnacis Domiti . . . victus toties a Cæsare, salva  
Libertate perit; tunc mille in vulnere lætus  
Labitur, et venia gaudet caruisse secunda.”

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* xiv. 8.; Drumann, iii. 516.

a fitter day and a riper victim. The foe has not yet scaled the tyrant's citadel, or merited, at the summit of all human power, to bow to the sacrificial steel.<sup>1</sup> Such is the strain of the poet; the historian quietly assures us that Cæsar learnt in confidential discourse with his captive the direction of his adversary's flight; not, perhaps, that Brutus intentionally betrayed so important a secret, but his warmth of temperament and want of reserve made him more dangerous as a friend than as an enemy. Admitted to familiarity with his new leader (for he seems to have placed himself at once freely at Cæsar's disposal) he exerted his influence to conciliate him towards Cassius, and, at a later period, moderated his wrath against Juba. Cæsar generously indulged this impetuous zeal, and was touched by its openness, however little it was tempered by prudence or reflection. "As for this young man," he observed of him, "I know not what he wants, but whatever he does want, he wants vehemently."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. vii. 586. seqq.:

"Illic plebeia contactus casside vultus,  
Ignotusque hosti, quod ferrum, Brute, tenebas!"

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 6.



## CHAP. XVIII.

POMPEIUS SEEKS REFUGE IN EGYPT.—TREACHEROUS POLICY OF THE ADVISERS OF KING PTOLEMÆUS.—POMPEIUS IS ENTICED FROM HIS VESSEL AND MURDERED.—THE FUGITIVES FROM PHARSALIA REASSEMBLE AT DYRRHACHIUM AND CORCYRA.—CICERO WITHDRAWS FROM THE CONTEST.—SCIPIO ASSUMES THE COMMAND.—CÆSAR FOLLOWS IN PURSUIT OF POMPEIUS: RECEIVES THE SUBMISSION OF C. CASSIUS: REACHES EGYPT, AND PAYS HONOUR TO THE HEAD OF POMPEIUS.—UNDERTAKES TO SETTLE THE AFFAIRS OF THE KINGDOM.—FASCINATIONS OF CLEOPATRA.—DISCONTENT OF THE ALEXANDRIANS: THEY RISE AGAINST CÆSAR AND BLOCKADE HIM IN THE PALACE.—THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR: INTRIGUES, DEFEAT, AND DEATH OF PTOLEMÆUS.—CÆSAR PLACES CLEOPATRA ON HIS THRONE.—PHARNACES ATTACKS THE ALLIES OF THE REPUBLIC, AND DEFEATS CALVINUS.—CÆSAR MARCHES AGAINST HIM: HE IS ROUTED AT THE BATTLE OF ZELA AND SLAIN.—ARROGANCE OF THE CONQUEROR, A. U. 706, 707, B. C. 48, 47.

THE remnant of the vast Pompeian host was scattered in various directions. No reserve had been provided on the battle field, nor had any place been assigned in the neighbourhood for rallying in the event of disaster. The fleet was far distant, and dispersed on various petty enterprizes. Yet the resources which remained to so great a party, even after their signal defeat, were abundant and manifold.<sup>1</sup> But Pompeius himself, mortified and

CHAP.  
XVIII.

Pompeius escapes to the sea-coast: he takes ship, seeks his wife and son at Lesbos, and finally demands an asylum in Egypt.

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. viii. 273.:

“ Sparsit potius Pharsalia nostras  
Quam subvertit opes.”

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

bewildered, abandoned every thing, and sought only to save his own life. He fled through Larissa, declining the shelter of its walls, and, penetrating the defiles of Tempe, gained the Thesalian shore at the mouth of the Peneus.<sup>1</sup> Here he fell in with a merchant vessel lying off the coast, the master of which recognized and generously offered to take him on board, together with Lentulus Spinther, Lentulus Crus the consul of the preceding year, Favonius, the Galatian chieftain Deiotarus, and a few more. Pompeius dismissed the slaves who had hitherto accompanied him, assuring them that they at least had nothing to fear from the conqueror: it was to the loyalty of Favonius that he owed the common offices of menial attendance. The master of the vessel undertook to carry him wherever he should appoint. He only cast anchor off Amphipolis, in Macedonia, to provide himself with a sum of money, and then steered for Lesbos, where his wife Cornelia, and his younger son, Sextus, were also received on board. From thence, without a moment's delay, the fugitives proceeded to run along the Asiatic coast, and in their progress they were joined by another vessel with a few more adherents of the ill-fated cause. Among these were some personages of rank; and on landing at last on the shores of Cilicia, a miniature senate was convened, and a mock deliberation held under the presidency of the late consul, to determine what course should finally be taken. We are assured, strange as it may appear, that the wish of Pompeius himself

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 73.

was to seek an asylum in Parthia. Whether he hoped to lead the murderers of Crassus against his detested rival, or only to watch in security the progress of events, nothing can show more strongly than such a project the state of abject humiliation to which he was reduced.<sup>1</sup> Orodes had just inflicted another insult upon the majesty of the republic in throwing her ambassador, Hirrus, into chains, because Pompeius had refused to buy his alliance by the surrender of Syria. It was but too evident that his consent to receive Pompeius himself must be obtained by submitting to still greater sacrifices. But to these affronts Pompeius, it seems, could have submitted; the arguments which induced him to renounce such a plan were drawn from the danger it seemed to threaten to his own person, or at least to the honour of his handsome wife.<sup>2</sup> The next alternative which suggested itself was to retire into Africa, where the king of Numidia had proved his devotion to the benefactor to whom he owed his sceptre, by his signal service in the destruction of Curio. In Africa two legions awaited their general's arrival, flushed with victory and devoted to his party. The resources of the province were immense: it offered its harbours for the reception of his magnificent fleets; while, separated from Europe by the breadth of the Mediterranean, it might defy Cæsar for months even to approach it. The fatuity of Pompeius in deciding against the course which held

<sup>1</sup> Dion (xlii. 2.) cannot believe it possible that Pompeius contemplated taking refuge in Parthia.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 76.; Lucan. viii. 412.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 83.



CHAP.  
XVIII.

out so flattering a prospect seems indeed inconceivable. But it would appear that he still looked fondly to the East as the quarter of the world associated with his greatest triumphs, and where the prestige of his name had taken, as he imagined, the deepest root. Perhaps he wished to make himself at all events independent of the succour of his own countrymen.

State of  
Egypt.  
Quarrel  
between  
Ptolemæus  
and Cleo-  
patra.

The king whom the Roman government had imposed upon the Egyptian people had died three years previously. He had requited the favour of the republic by a will<sup>1</sup> in which he had placed his kingdom under the guardianship of Rome, while he nominated his son Dionysius, or, as he was afterwards called, Ptolemæus the Twelfth, and his daughter Cleopatra, both under age, as joint successors to his throne. It was in accordance with the national usages that this joint authority should be consolidated by the marriage of the brother and sister, the former of whom was seventeen years of age and the latter about two years his senior. The senate had appointed Pompeius guardian of the kingdom, and possibly the authority this appointment gave him, and the influence he already exercised through it, assisted in determining his choice of a place of refuge. But, at the moment of his arrival off the shores of Egypt, the existing government was less than ever competent to extend its protection to so dangerous a suppliant. The throne had become an object of deadly contention between the brother and sister. Cleopatra had been driven from Alexandria by a popular insur-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 108.

rection, and the ministers of her youthful consort, who had apparently instigated the tumult, took advantage of its success to exclude her from her share in the sovereignty. The royal child was directed in all his counsels by a junta consisting of Pothinus, a Greek eunuch of the court, Theodotus, a rhetorician, who held the ostensible office of preceptor to the sovereign, and Achillas, an officer of the Egyptian army.<sup>1</sup> These men had acquired a complete ascendancy over their tender charge, and they used their influence unscrupulously for the furtherance of their private schemes. They had stationed Ptolemæus at the head of his troops in the neighbourhood of Pelusium, to await on the frontiers of the kingdom the invasion of Cleopatra, who had found means to raise a military force for the assertion of her rights.<sup>2</sup> The hostile armies were arrayed almost in sight of each other at the foot of the Casian hills, when Pompeius appeared off the coast with a slender flotilla bearing about two thousand soldiers, whom he had collected in his flight. The Egyptian ministers hoped to exclude the Romans, in the state of anarchy into which they appeared to have fallen, from the interference they had so long exercised in the affairs of their country; they might also apprehend that the new comer, if admitted within their confines, would rather assist the injured sister than confirm the usurpation of the brother. Pompeius sent a message to the young king requesting the favour of a hospitable reception. His application gave rise to anxious discussion in the royal council. If any

Pompeius  
requests an  
asylum at  
Alexandria.  
Crafty po-  
licy of the

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 77.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 103.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

king's  
advisers.Pompeius  
is invited  
to land,

of the king's ministers was honest and bold enough to insist on the obligations of good faith and gratitude, his counsels were speedily overruled by the arguments of a subtler policy. It was dangerous to expose the kingdom to the wrath of Cæsar by receiving his defeated enemy; it was dangerous to reject the petition of a suppliant whom the fortune of war might yet restore to power. The only remaining course, which seemed to avoid every danger and combine every advantage, was to invite the unfortunate visitor to the shore and make away with him at once. Such a crime might expect the gratitude of the conqueror, since it would effectually cripple and distract the plans of his adversaries. Accordingly, the treacherous counsel was adopted. A small fishing boat was speedily equipped, and Achilles, with a few attendants, among whom, to inspire confidence in the intended victim, were Septimius, an old comrade in arms, and another Roman officer named Salvius, proceeded to invite Pompeius into the presence of the sovereign.<sup>1</sup> The meanness of the vessel assigned to convey so noble a passenger was excused by the alleged shallowness of the water near the coast; but it was really so contrived to exclude a retinue sufficient for his protection. The Roman officers, indeed, who had crowded into the ship from which their chief was about to take his departure, beheld the Egyptian galleys ranged along the shore, and the evident falsehood of the plea awakened their worst apprehensions. But Pompeius, prepared to dare or to submit, combated their fears, and re-

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 104.; Plut. *Pomp.* 78, 79.



pelled their entreaties to remain. He took leave of his friends with a faint smile, repeating the words of the poet: He who repairs to a tyrant becomes his slave, though he set out a freeman.<sup>1</sup> He descended into the fatal bark. The distance to the shore was considerable, and the passage was made in painful and ominous silence. The illustrious fugitive recognized and courteously addressed Septimius, but his salutation was acknowledged only by a bow without a word. The silence continued, and Pompeius took up a roll of parchment on which he had written the speech he proposed to address to the king, and occupied himself in studying it. Meanwhile, Cornelia and her friends watched from the ship the progress of the boat with the deepest anxiety, and when the king's soldiers and attendants were seen crowding towards the point where Pompeius appeared about to land, they indulged in the hope that he would yet meet with an honourable reception. But at the moment when Pompeius was taking the hand of an attendant to help himself to rise, Septimius approached from behind and struck him with his sword. The victim knew his fate, and, without attempting to struggle against it, drew his toga over his face with both his hands, and so fell mortally wounded. His head was immediately severed from his body, and carried away as a proof of the accomplishment of the bloody order. The trunk was thrown out

and treacherously  
murdered.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 85.; Plut. *l. c.* Dion. xlii. 4. The lines are from a play of Sophocles:

ὅστις γὰρ ὡς τύραννον ἐμπορεύεται  
κείνου 'στὶ δοῦλος καὶ ἐλεύθερος μὴ.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

of the boat and abandoned in the breakers.<sup>1</sup> The friends of the murdered man beheld the deed from afar, and, uttering a shriek of horror, hurried away from the Egyptian galleys which were already moving to intercept them.<sup>2</sup> When the bystanders had satiated their curiosity with gazing on the mangled remains, a freedman of Pompeius, who alone kept watch over them, drew the headless corpse from the water's edge, wiped from it the sand and brine, and wrapped it in his own cloak. The wreck of a small fishing-boat furnished him with wood<sup>3</sup>; and in heaping up a rude and hasty pyre he was aided by an ancient Roman soldier who had followed his patron's banner in the wars. The shadowy pageant of the Egyptian monarchy, its king, its satellites and armies, had vanished from the solitary beach, when an exile and a menial muttered with trembling haste the last farewell to the "Mighty Victor" of the East, "the "Mighty Lord" of the Imperial Senate. The wretched obsequies were allowed to pass unheeded; but when Lentulus Crus landed soon afterwards on the spot, he was seized and put to death, as a victim second only in importance to Pompeius himself.

Murder of  
L. Lentulus  
Crus.

Reflections  
on the  
death of  
Pompeius.

Thus fell the illustrious chief whom alone of all their champions the Romans had distinguished by the appellation of the Great, a title which seemed peculiarly appropriate to one whose rapid conquests in Asia could only be paralleled by those of the Macedonian Alexander.<sup>4</sup> His fate continued to point a moral to the latest period of the Empire,

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 79, 80.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. viii. 709. 720.

<sup>3</sup> Lucan. viii. 755.

<sup>4</sup> Pompeius himself affected this comparison from an early period.

and its consummation deserved to be regarded as the most tragic incident in Roman history.<sup>1</sup> He had earned greater popularity, and he had perhaps surpassed his rivals more conspicuously, than any Roman before him; and, in the same proportion, his fall was more disastrous and his end more miserable. Yet one would suppose that no acute observer could have failed to predict his discomfiture; for every move he had made for many years, whether in politics or latterly in war, had been a manifest blunder. All generals, it has been said, make mistakes, and he is the greatest who makes the fewest; but the conduct of Pompeius throughout his last campaigns had been a series of mistakes, against which the renown of his genius can scarcely maintain itself. On the whole, history presents few instances so remarkable of the enervating effect of early success and long prosperity. The redeeming feature of his latter years was serenity and mildness; his passions cooled with satiety, and the impetuous ambition of his youth stagnated at last in apathy and pride. He was roused from his dream of pre-eminence to repel the aggression of a more ardent rival; and it was truly said of the two illustrious competitors for power that Pompeius could bear no equal, Cæsar no superior.<sup>2</sup> Pompeius fell at the close of his fifty-eighth year, on the anniversary of his triumph

Comp. Sallust. *Fr. Hist.* iii. p. 216., ed Gerl. min.: "Cn. Pompeius a prima adolescentia sermone fautorum similem fore se credens Alexandro regi, facta consultaque ejus quidem æmulus erat."

<sup>1</sup> Comp. Vell. ii. 58.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. i. 125.:

"Nec quemquam jam ferre potest, Cæsarve priorem.  
Pompeiusve parem."



CHAP.  
XVIII.

Final disposal of his remains, and honours paid to them.

over the greatest but one of his opponents, the renowned king of Pontus.<sup>1</sup> His ashes, hastily entombed on the margin of the waves<sup>2</sup>, were removed, it is said, at a later period by the pious care of Cornelia, and enjoyed their final rest in the mausoleum of his Alban villa<sup>3</sup>, the ruins of which are pointed out at this day. Such is the statement of his biographer; but the poet who sings his funeral dirge knows nothing of this honourable interment. Lucan bewails the disgrace of the illustrious remains, still confined to their wretched hole scratched in the sand<sup>4</sup>, and surmounted by a fragment of stone on which the bare name of "Magnus" had been traced with a burnt brand.<sup>5</sup> The imperial dynasties which owed their elevation to the victory of Pharsalia had no interest in paying honour to the champion of the commonwealth; and it was reserved for the most enlightened and the most humane of the emperors, at a distance of a hundred and sixty years, to raise a fitting monument to Pompeius on the spot where his body had been burnt.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. viii. 797.:

"Situs est qua terra extrema refuso  
Pendet in Oceano."

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Pomp. in fin.*

<sup>4</sup> Lucan. viii. 756.:

"Exigua trepidus posuit scrobe."

<sup>5</sup> Lucan. viii. 793.:

"Hic situs est Magnus."

<sup>6</sup> Spartian. *Hadrian.* 7.; Dion. lxix. 11.; Appian. ii. 86.: ἐζήτησεν καὶ εὗρεν ἐπ' ἐμοῦ Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς Ἀδριανὸς ἐπιδημῶν. κ. τ. λ. The emperor offered a line for an inscription: τῷ ναοῖς βριθοντι πόση σπάρις ἔπλετο τύμβου. *Anthol. Gr.* ii. 286.

Cato leads  
the Pompeian forces  
from Dyrrhachium  
to Corcyra.

The nobles betrayed their own cause at Pharsalia by their want of courage and self-devotion. It is in vain that Lucan rounds a poetical period with the names of the Lepidi, the Metelli, the Corvini, and the Torquati, whom he supposes to have fallen in the last agony of the defence<sup>1</sup>: of all the great chiefs with whom we are familiar as leaders in the Pompeian camp, Domitius alone perished on that day, and even he was killed in the act of flying.<sup>2</sup> The fragments of the mighty ruin were scattered far away from the scene of disaster. Pompeius and a few adherents fled, as we have seen, in one direction to Larissa; a larger number escaped by the road to Illyricum, and met again within the walls of Dyrrhachium. The principal reserve of the Pompeian forces was there commanded by M. Cato, and there also was the common resort of the wavering and dissatisfied, such as Varro and Cicero, who wished to secure their own safety in either event. The fleets of the republic, under Octavius and C. Cassius, still swept the seas triumphantly; the latter had recently burnt thirty-five Cæsarian vessels in the harbour of Messana. But the naval commanders were well aware that their exploits

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. vii. 583.:

“ Cædunt Lepidos, cæduntque Metellos  
Corvinosque simul, Torquataque nomina legum.”

A similar remark has been made on the battle of Waterloo. “ Except Duhesme and Friant, neither of whose names were very much distinguished, we hear of no general officers among the French list of slain.” Paul’s *Letters to his Kingsfolk*, p. 191.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 99. Cicero truculently insinuates that Antonius put him to death in cold blood after he had surrendered. See *Philipp.* ii. 29.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

could have little influence on the event of a contest which was about to be decided by the whole military force of the Roman world; and forming their own plans, and acting for the most part independently, they began more and more to waver in their fidelity to the common cause. As soon as the event of the great battle became known, the squadrons of the allies made the best of their way home, while some, such as the Rhodians, attached themselves to the conqueror. At the same time the turbulence of the soldiers in garrison at Dyrrhachium broke through all restraint. They plundered the magazines and burnt the transports on which they were destined to be conveyed to some distant theatre of protracted warfare. The desertion of the allies, the mutinous spirit of the troops, and the report of the numerous adhesions which Cæsar was daily receiving from the most conspicuous of the nobles, convinced Cato that the last hope of keeping the party together, and maintaining the struggle effectually, depended upon the fate of Pompeius himself. In the event of the destruction of the acknowledged chief of the senate, he only contemplated restoring to the shores of Italy the troops confided to him, and then betaking himself to retirement from public affairs in some remote province.<sup>1</sup> While the fatal catastrophe was yet unknown he withdrew from Dyrrhachium to Corcyra, where the head-quarters of the naval force were established; and there he offered to surrender his command to Cicero as his superior in rank. But the consular declined the perilous

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 55.



honour, and refused to take any further part in a contest which, from the first, had inspired him with distrust and remorse. The young Cnæus Pompeius had urged the exercise of summary vengeance upon whomsoever should threaten defection at such a crisis, and it was with difficulty he was restrained from using personal violence against Cicero, when he declared his intention of embarking at once for Italy.<sup>1</sup> The recreant consular's life was barely saved by Cato's vigorous interference. At Corcyra many of the fugitives from the field of battle rejoined their confederates. Among them were Scipio and Afranius, the former of whom now assumed the command of their combined forces, and it was upon him, as soon as the fact of Pompeius's death was ascertained, that the leadership of the party most naturally devolved.<sup>2</sup>

Meanwhile, Cæsar followed up his success with unabated activity. He allowed his soldiers at the most only two days' repose on the scene of their triumph, and amidst the spoils they had acquired.<sup>3</sup> His care was divided between improving the victory he had gained in the East, and securing his acquisitions in the West. With the latter view he ordered Antonius to return to Italy with a large part of his forces, and watch over his interests in that quarter, where he apprehended that some of the beaten faction might hazard a descent upon the centre of his resources. He also required his lieu-

Cæsar follows up his victory.

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cic.* 39.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xlii. 10.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 87.

<sup>3</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 88. : αὐτὸς δ' ἐπὶ τῇ νίκῃ δύο μὲν ἡμέρας ἐν Φαρσάλῳ διέτριψε θύων. Cæsar himself declares that he reached Larissa the day after the battle.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

Submission  
of Athens  
and the Pe-  
loponnesus.

tenant Calenus to complete, without delay, the subjugation of Southern Greece. Athens had not yet opened her gates to him, but the event of the great battle determined her to obey his summons. The long resistance this city had made exposed it, by the laws of ancient warfare, to the vengeance of the conqueror; but Cæsar ordered it to be spared, for the sake, as he said, of its illustrious dead.<sup>1</sup> The Peloponnesus was now speedily evacuated by the forces of the republic, and Calenus occupied the points on the coast where he anticipated the possibility of fresh intrusion. Scipio had landed at Patræ, probably to receive the remnant of the Pompeian garrisons in that province, but straightway abandoned it, and stretched his sails for Africa.

Cæsar  
pursues  
Pompeius.

Cæsar devoted himself to the pursuit of Pompeius with the utmost energy and impatience, being anxious not merely to prevent his assembling a new armament, but if possible to secure his person. He pushed forward with a squadron of cavalry, and was followed by a single legion.<sup>2</sup> He reached Amphipolis just after the fugitive's departure, and, taking the route of Asia by land, crossed the Hellespont with a few small vessels. In the passage he fell in with the squadron of C. Cassius, who had been despatched to the Euxine to stimulate or co-operate with Pharnaces, king of Pontus, whose promised succours were urgently demanded. It was remarked as an extraordinary instance of the good fortune ever supposed to wait upon the mighty conqueror, that the mere terror of his name induced

C. Cassius  
surrenders  
to him.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 14.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 88.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 102. 106.

Cassius to surrender his galleys to a few fishing-boats.<sup>1</sup> There can be little doubt that the republican commander had already made up his mind to change his side, when accident threw this favourable opportunity in his way. As a man of influence and authority, as well as an able soldier, he was well received by his adopted leader, and the good offices attributed to Brutus could hardly have been required to conciliate to him the favour of Cæsar.

Having now arrived on the Asiatic coast, Cæsar advanced more leisurely. He had received information of Pompeius's flight to Egypt, and was aware that, if the suppliant were received there, he could not be dislodged except by regular military operations. He was content therefore to await the arrival of ampler succours, and employed himself in the meanwhile with repairing the injuries which Scipio was accused of having inflicted upon the unfortunate provincials. He earned their favourable opinion by the remission of taxes, and by restraining the exactions of the farmers of the revenue.<sup>2</sup> He saved a second time from spoliation the treasures of the Ephesian Diana, which Ampius, an adherent of the opposite party, had been on the point of

Cæsar arrives in Egypt.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 63.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 88.; Dion. xlii. 6.; comp. Cic. *ad Div.* xv. 15. Suetonius and Dion attribute this adventure to Lucius Cassius. The only personage we know of that name was a brother of Caius, one who has already been mentioned as serving in Cæsar's army before the battle of Pharsalia. The allusions, however, which Cicero makes to C. Cassius's abandonment of the republican cause (comp. *ad Att.* xi. 13. 1, 15. 2.) are hardly consistent with his being engaged in this occurrence, and I have great doubts as to the genuineness of the story.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 48.



CHAP.  
XVIII.

seizing. These benefits he accompanied with further favours and distinctions, and then handed over the government of the province to Calvinus, to whom he entrusted three legions, to defend it against Pharnaces and the other Oriental allies of the senate. Cæsar retained only two legions about his own person, and those so much reduced in number as to contain much less than half their proper complements. The whole of this force consisted of only three thousand two hundred infantry, and eight hundred cavalry<sup>1</sup>, and with these he sailed without hesitation for Egypt. It was only a few days after the death of Pompeius that he appeared thus attended off the port of Alexandria. No sooner was his arrival known than Theodotus hastened to meet him on board his vessel, and brought to him the head and ring of his murdered rival. The latter might be of important service to assure the wavering of the event which had occurred, and Cæsar took and preserved it for that purpose<sup>2</sup>; but from the mangled head he turned away with horror, and gave orders, with tears in his eyes, that it should be consumed with the costliest spices.<sup>3</sup> The ashes he caused to be deposited in a shrine which he erected to the avenging Nemesis.<sup>4</sup> The murderers were confounded and alarmed at the feeling he exhibited, nor were they less astonished, perhaps, at the perfect confidence with which he disembarked upon their coast, and claimed with his handful of

His horror  
on behold-  
ing the  
head of  
Pompeius.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 106.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xlii. 18.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 80., *Cæs.* 48.; Luc. ix. 1091.; Val. Max. v. 1. 10.

<sup>4</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 90.

followers to settle the concerns of a powerful kingdom.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

It had been Cæsar's policy to spare the wealth of the provinces which he wished to attach to his side, and his system was directly opposed to the confiscation of his enemies' estates; but his want of money was urgent, and it was in arranging the quarrels of a dependent kingdom that the best opportunity might be found for exacting it. This undoubtedly was the urgent motive which impelled him to intrude upon the affairs of a jealous people, in which his principal designs were in no way implicated.<sup>1</sup> When Auletes came to Rome to negotiate his restoration to the throne, he had purchased the support of the leaders of the senate by the most lavish bribes. Cæsar himself had received the promise of seventeen millions and a half of drachmæ<sup>2</sup>; an obligation which had never yet been discharged. He now confined his demand to ten millions, but sternly rejected the representations of Pothinus, who pleaded for a longer time for the payment of so large a sum. But even at the moment of landing Cæsar was warned of the difficulties into which he was rushing. His military force was contemptible; it was upon the dignity of his title as consul of the republic that he could alone rely. Accordingly, he entered the streets of Alexandria with all the insignia of his office, thereby offending the populace, who were easily persuaded that he offered an intentional insult to

Cæsar's  
object in  
interfering  
in the af-  
fairs of  
Egypt.

<sup>1</sup> Flor. iv. 2. 53.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 48. This sum may be computed in round numbers at 700,000*l.*

CHAP.  
XVIII.

their independence.<sup>1</sup> A riot ensued, in which many of the Cæsarian soldiers lost their lives. Cæsar felt that he had mistaken the character of the nation, and underrated their jealousy of foreigners. But policy would not allow him to give way. He boldly summoned the rival sovereigns before him, and offered to decide their disputes in the name of the republic. Ptolemæus left his camp at Pelusium, and gave Cæsar a meeting in the palace of Alexandria, where he soon found himself watched and detained as a hostage. Cleopatra had already implored the consul's mediation, and now, when her brother or his ministers obstructed her approach to his presence, she caused herself to be carried by stratagem into his chamber.<sup>2</sup> The fame of Cleopatra's beauty<sup>3</sup>, which was destined to become second only to Helen's in renown<sup>4</sup>, was already bruited widely abroad. She had been seen by M. Antonius during the brief inroad of Gabinius into Egypt; and grave legates of the republic had brought back to Rome glowing reports of the girlish charms of the Lagid princess. She was indeed, at the time of her introduction to Cæsar, not twenty years old, and her wit and genius in

His first  
interview  
with Cleo-  
patra.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 106.; Lucan x. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. Cæs. 49.

<sup>3</sup> Dion (xlii. 54.) and Plutarch (*Ant.* 27.) have particularly described her charms. From the latter we learn that her beauty was not regular or striking at first sight: *αὐτὸ μὲν καθ' αὐτὸ τὸ κάλλος αὐτῆς οὐ πᾶν δυσπαράελητον, οὐδ' οἷον ἐκπλήξαι τοὺς ἰδόντας· ἀφῆν δ' εἶχεν ἡ συνδιαίτησις ἀφύκτον*. Her talents were fully equal to the fascination of her appearance and manners.

<sup>4</sup> Cleopatra was compared with Helen not only for her beauty, but for the consequences it produced. Luc. x. 60.:

“Quantum impulit Argos  
Iliacasque domos facie Spartana nocenti,  
Hesperios auxit tantum Cleopatra furores.”



the arts of female conquest were yet unknown. Perhaps it was fortunate for their celebrity that the man upon whom she was first to prove their power was already predisposed to submit. Cæsar forthwith undertook the championship of the distressed beauty, for it suited his purpose to play off her claims against the haughty minions of her rival. In devoting himself to her cause he did not deny himself the reward of his gallantry<sup>1</sup>; but while he indulged in the luxuries and dissipations of the most sensual of capitals<sup>2</sup>, he kept his eye steadily fixed on his main object, and at the same time carefully guarded his own person from the machinations of his unscrupulous enemies.

The ministers of the young king were well assured that the reconciliation of the brother and sister would be the signal for their own disgrace. They employed every artifice to rouse the passions of a jealous mob, and alarmed the fanaticism of priests and people against a foreigner, whom they accused of desecrating their holy places, of eating accursed meats, and violating their most cherished usages.<sup>3</sup> Cæsar had despatched an urgent message to Calvinus to hasten to his succour with all the forces he could muster. But while waiting for the

Cæsar's  
precarious  
position.

<sup>1</sup> Luc. x. 74.:

"Sanguine Thessalicæ cladis perfusus adulter  
Admisit Venerem curis et miscuit armis.

<sup>2</sup> Luc. x. 109.:

"Explicuitque suos magno Cleopatra tumultu  
Nondum translatos Romana in sæcula luxus," &c.

<sup>3</sup> Dion. xlii. 54. ; Luc. x. 158.:

"Non mandante fame multas volucresque ferasque  
Ægypti posuere Deos."

CHAP  
XVIII.

arrival of reinforcements, the necessity of which he now keenly felt, he dissembled every appearance of apprehension, and occupied himself in public with the society of Cleopatra, or in conversation with the Egyptian sages, and inquiry into their mysterious lore.<sup>1</sup> His judgment was no more mastered by a woman's charms than by the fascinations of science: but the occupation of Alexandria was essential to his plans, and he assumed the air of curiosity or dissipation to veil his ulterior designs. With this view he visited with affected interest all the vaunted wonders of the city of the Ptolemies<sup>2</sup>, and even proposed, it was said, to relinquish his schemes of ambition to discover the sources of the Nile.<sup>3</sup> At the first outset of his career of glory, his imagination had been fired at Gades by the sight of Alexander's statue<sup>4</sup>; now that the highest summit of power was within his reach, he descended to the tomb of the illustrious conqueror, and mused perhaps on the vanity of vanities beside his shrouded remains.<sup>5</sup>

The Alexandrians  
rise against  
him.

The young king, though kept in hardly disguised captivity within the walls of his palace, had found means to communicate to his adherents the alarm

<sup>1</sup> See Lucan's beautiful episode (x. 181.):

" Si Cecropium sua sacra Platonem  
Majores docuere tui, quis dignior unquam  
Hoc fuit auditu, mundique capacior hospes ? " &c.

<sup>2</sup> Frontinus (i. 1. 5.) mentions this conduct of Cæsar in his collection of notable stratagems.

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 52. ; Luc. x. 191. :

" Spes sit mihi certa videndi  
Niliacos fontes, bellum civile relinquam."

<sup>4</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 7.

<sup>5</sup> The body of Alexander was embalmed, and the mummy pre-

and indignation with which he viewed the apparent influence of his sister over the Roman commander. The Macedonian dynasty which had reigned for three centuries in Alexandria was not unpopular with its Egyptian subjects. Though the descendants of Lagus had degenerated from the genius and virtues of the first sovereigns of their line, their sway had ever been mild and tolerant, and both conquerors and conquered reposed in equal security under the shadow of their paternal throne. Achilles, the general of the king's armies, had a force of twenty thousand men, consisting principally of the troops which Gabinius had employed in the restoration of Auletes, and which had been left behind for his protection. These men had for the most part formed connexions with the natives, and had imbibed their sentiments at the same time that they adopted their manners. The camp was filled, moreover, with a crowd of deserters and fugitive slaves from all parts of the Roman empire, for Alexandria was the common resort of the desperate and abandoned, who purchased impunity for their crimes by enlisting in the king's service.<sup>1</sup> These were the men who had placed Auletes on his throne, who had murdered the sons of the Roman legate Gabinius, and expelled Cleopatra from her royal

served in a glass case. See Strabo, xvii. 1.; Lucan. x. 20.; Stat. *Sylv.* iii. 3. 117.:

“Duc et ad Æmathios manes, ubi belliger urbis  
Conditor Hyblæo perfusus nectare durat.”

The sarcophagus in which the remains were inclosed, if tradition speaks true, is now in the British Museum.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 110.: “Fugitivisque omnibus nostris certus erat Alexandria receptus certaque vitæ conditio, ut dato nomine militum essent numero.”



CHAP.  
XVIII.

inheritance. They were the reckless agents of the populace of Alexandria in each capricious mood of turbulence or loyalty. They were now prepared to join in the general outcry against the intrusion of the Romans, and encouraged by their leader and Arsinoë, the younger sister of their sovereign, they entered the city, and imparted vigour and concentration to the hostile ebullitions of the multitude.

Cæsar fortifies himself in Alexandria.

Cæsar awaited anxiously the expected succours; in the mean time he sought to avert the danger by concession, and while he proposed that Ptolemæus and Cleopatra should resume their joint sovereignty, he was prepared to satisfy the claims of Arsinoë by surrendering to her, together with another younger brother, the province of Cyprus.<sup>1</sup> But before these arrangements were completed, the discontent of the Alexandrians revived with more alarming violence. A skirmish which occurred in the streets between the Roman soldiers and the Egyptians determined Cæsar to take the bold step of seizing and burning the royal fleet.<sup>2</sup> It was thus only that he could hope to keep the coasts open for the approach of his reinforcements. The city of Alexandria stretched along the sea-shore, and its port was formed by an island named Pharos, which lay over against it, and was connected with

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. *B. C.* iii. 111. The conflagration reached the shore and consumed a large portion of the celebrated library of the Ptolemies. Seneca asserts that four hundred thousand volumes perished (*de Tranquill.* 9.). The resignation he expresses under the loss, "multo satius est paucis te auctoribus tradere quam errare per multos," is severely rebuked by a modern devourer of large libraries (see Gibbon, *Decline and Fall*, ch. li.). Comp. Dion. xlii. 38.

the mainland in the middle by a narrow causeway and bridge. The island was occupied by the villas of the Alexandrians, and the suburbs of the great city. Its position enabled it to command the entrances of the double port which were apparently much narrower than at the present day. As a military position therefore it was invaluable, and while the tumult was raging in the streets Cæsar transported into it a portion of his troops, and seized the tower or fortress which secured its possession.<sup>1</sup> At the same time he continued to occupy a portion of the palace on the mainland, which held the keys of communication with Pharos by the causeway. He strengthened the defences with additional works, destroying in every direction the private houses of the citizens, which being built entirely of stone, even to the floors and roofs, furnished him with abundant materials for his massive constructions. The Egyptian troops set to work with no less energy in forming triple barricades of hewn stone at the entrance of every street, and thus entrenching themselves in a fortress in the heart of their city.<sup>2</sup> They looked forward already to the arrival of winter, and were convinced that the enemy must fall eventually into their hands, when he could no longer derive supplies from beyond the sea.

But in the meanwhile the shade of Pompeius began to be avenged on his murderers. At the commencement of the outbreak Cæsar had seized the person of Pothinus, who was in attendance upon the young king, and detecting him in cor-

Sudden end  
of Pothinus and  
Achillas.  
Arsinoë  
proclaims  
herself  
queen.

<sup>1</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 112.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. de Bell. Alexand. 1, 2.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

respondence with Achillas he put him summarily to death. Soon after, Arsinoë, who hoped to make use of the Egyptian general to elevate herself into the royal seat, having reason to be dissatisfied with his conduct, induced her confidant Ganymedes to assassinate him. The adhesion of the army she secured by a munificent largess, appointed Ganymedes her minister and general, and, assuming the diadem of her ancestors, caused herself to be proclaimed sole queen of Egypt.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar is  
blockaded  
in Alex-  
andria.

The Alexandrians pressed the blockade with pertinacity. They could not hope to dislodge the enemy by force, but they expected to reduce him by cutting off his means of subsistence. A contemporary writer describes the artificial contrivances by which the population of Alexandria obtained their water, an abundance of which is of such primary necessity in the climate of Egypt. It is well known that rain rarely falls there, nor were there living springs for the supply of fountains. The common people, indeed, were content with the water of the Nile in the turbid state in which it flows through their slimy plain; but the houses of the wealthier classes were supplied by means of subterranean channels, with which the whole city was mined, and through which the stream of the river was carried into reservoirs, where the noxious sediment was gradually deposited. Such of these channels as led to the parts of the city occupied by the Romans the Alexandrians obstructed, so as to prevent the river from flowing into them, while on the other hand they filled

<sup>1</sup> Auct. de Bell. Alex. 4.; Dion. xlii. 39.



them with sea-water, raised by hydraulic machinery, in the construction of which they were eminently expert. This operation caused at first great consternation among the Romans, and still more among the native population shut up within their defences. But its effect was defeated by Cæsar's sagacity. He caused his soldiers to dig pits on the sandy beach, and the brackish water which oozed up in them furnished a sufficient supply, not altogether unfit for drinking.<sup>1</sup> At the same time the arrival of a legion from Asia, with a convoy of provisions and military stores, at a point a little to the west of Alexandria, revived the courage of the besieged, and restored the fortunes of their commander.

The Rhodian vessels which had betaken themselves to Cæsar's side were now of great service to him in establishing a communication with these reinforcements. The islanders of Rhodes had succeeded to the nautical skill of Athens and Corinth, and were among the most expert mariners of the time. Combined with the small flotilla which Cæsar had brought with him, and the ships which had lately arrived, these new allies presented a formidable force. The Egyptians, however,

Cæsar  
swims for  
his life.

<sup>1</sup> When the English besieged Alexandria in 1801, they cut the canal which supplied it with water; but the French garrison found a sufficient quantity in the tanks. Water, however, might have been procured by digging, though not in large quantities nor very good. Wilson's *Exped. to Egypt*, p. 215. Cæsar's expedient has been resorted to by exploring parties on the coast of Australia. See for instance Eyre's letter to the Colonial Secretary of Swan River in the *Journal of the Geogr. Soc.* xiii. 180. Captain Marryat, in one of his novels, mentions this filtration of saltwater by percolation through sand as an authentic, though little known fact.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

though the royal fleet had been destroyed, possessed considerable resources for the equipment of a naval armament. They collected from every quarter all the vessels they could muster, and hastily constructed others, till they found themselves in a condition to dispute once more the approach to the harbour. Nor were they less vigorous in the attack they made upon the enemy's defences by land. The crisis of danger called forth all Cæsar's energies: he never exposed his person more boldly, or encountered more imminent peril. At one moment he was so hard pressed as to be forced to leap from his vessel into the sea, and swim for his life, carrying his most valuable papers in his hand above the water, and leaving his cloak in the possession of the assailants, who retained it as a trophy, as the Arvernians had preserved his sword.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar re-  
stores Pto-  
lemaeus to  
his subjects.

The Egyptians indeed were ultimately worsted in every encounter, but they could still return to the attack with increased numbers, and Cæsar's resources were so straitened, that he was not disinclined to listen to terms of accommodation, the insincerity of which was transparent. The Alexandrian populace declared themselves weary of the rule of their young princess, and disgusted with the tyranny of Ganymedes. Their rightful sovereign once restored to them, they would unite heartily with the republic, and defy the fury of the upstart and the usurper. It cannot be supposed that the Roman general was deceived by these protestations: the bad faith of the Alexan-

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 40.; Suet. *Jul.* 64.

drians was already proverbial in the West. But he expected perhaps that the rivalry of Ptolemæus and Arsinoë would create dissension in their camps: he may have preferred coping with the young king in open war, to keeping a guard over him, and watching the intrigues with which he beguiled his captivity: possibly the surrender was made in concession to a pressure he could not resist, and was adopted as a means of gaining time. But when Ptolemæus was restored to his subjects, and immediately led them to another attack upon the Roman position, the soldiers are said to have felt no little satisfaction at the reward of what they deemed their general's weak compliance.<sup>1</sup>

Battle of  
the Nile,  
and death  
of Pto-  
lemæus.

Cleopatra, whose blandishments were still the solace of the Roman general throughout his desperate adventure, rejoiced to see her brother thus treacherously array himself in rash hostility to her protector. The toils were beginning to close around the young king. Mithridates of Pergamus, an adherent in whose fidelity and conduct Cæsar placed great reliance, was advancing with the reinforcements he had been commissioned to collect in Syria and the adjacent provinces. He reduced Pelusium, the key of Egypt by land as Pharos was by sea, and crossed the Nile at the head of the Delta, routing a division of the king's troops which attempted to check his progress. Ptolemæus led forth his army to give battle to the new invader, and was followed by Cæsar. The Romans came up with the Egyptians, crossed the river in the face of their superior numbers, and attacked them

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *Bell. Alex.* 24.



CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

in their entrenchments, which, from their knowledge both of the Macedonian and the Roman art of war, were probably not deficient in scientific construction. But the shock of the veterans was irresistible. The Egyptians fled, leaving great numbers slaughtered within the lines, and falling into their own ditches in confused and mangled heaps. The fugitives rushed to the channel of the Nile, where their vessels were stationed, and crowded into them without order or measure. One of them in which Ptolemæus had taken refuge was thus overladen and sank.<sup>1</sup>

The Alexandrians submit to Cæsar, who restores Cleopatra.

This signal defeat, and still more the death of their unfortunate sovereign, reduced the defenders of the monarchy to despair. The populace of Alexandria issued from their gates to meet the conqueror in the attitude of suppliants, and with the religious ceremonies by which they were wont to deprecate the wrath of their legitimate rulers. He entered the city, and directed his course through the principal streets, where the hostile barricades were levelled at his approach, till he reached the quarters in which his own garrison was stationed. He now reconstituted the government by appointing Cleopatra to the sovereignty, in conjunction with another younger brother, while he sent Arsinoë under custody to await his future triumph at Rome. The throne of his favourite he pretended to secure by leaving a Roman force in Alexandria. The pride of the republic was gratified by thus advancing another step towards the complete subjugation of a country it had long coveted. Cæsar was anxious

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *Bell. Alex.* 29—31.

that so much Roman blood as has had been shed in his recent campaigns should not appear to have sunk into the earth, and borne no fruit of glory and advantage to the state. The whole of this episode in his eventful history, his arrogant dictation to the rulers of a foreign people, his seizing and keeping in captivity the person of the sovereign, his discharging him on purpose that he might compromise himself by engaging in direct hostilities, and his taking advantage of his death to settle the succession and intrude a foreign army upon the new monarch, form altogether a pregnant example of the craft and unscrupulousness of Roman ambition.<sup>1</sup>

But in their deadly contests with their neighbours, the wolves of Italy were not always the assailants. The dependent monarchies on the frontier watched the intrigues of the Roman forum, and profited by the disasters of its chiefs and parties. The discomfiture of the senate let loose upon the republic a new assailant, the son of its most inveterate and dangerous foe. Pharnaces, to whom Pompeius had granted the kingdom of the Bosporus, in reward for his unnatural treachery, had held aloof from the great gathering of the Eastern auxiliaries in the republican camp. C. Cassius, as we have seen, had been despatched, before the event of the contest was ascertained, to stimulate his flagging zeal in his patron's cause. But when the event of Pharsalia became known to him, he augured that the time was come for resuming the independent attitude of his illustrious father, and wresting the ancient patrimony of his house from the Roman yoke. He first made a descent upon

Pharnaces  
attempts to  
recover his  
father's  
empire,

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 44.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

the Lesser Armenia and Cappadocia, where Deiotarus and Ariobarzanes occupied the precarious thrones upon which Pompeius had seated them. At the moment when Calvinus received his leader's pressing message to send all his available forces to his aid in Egypt, he was summoned also to defend these petty princes whose dominions were the outworks of the empire itself. Deiotarus had been one of the most devoted of the Pompeian allies; but he had recently submitted to Cæsar, and engaged to furnish a sum of money for the demands of his troops. This obligation he declared it would be impossible for him to discharge, unless he were protected from the spoiler: but Calvinus protested that he held the honour of the republic far dearer than gold, and required Pharnaces to desist from insulting the majesty of Rome. He put himself in motion with one Roman legion, having sent two to Cæsar, and was joined by two others which Deiotarus had equipped and trained on the Roman model, and by an equal number from Cappadocia. He had with him also another legion which had been recently levied in Pontus, so that his force might justly inspire him with confidence. Pharnaces retreated from Cappadocia, and attempted to amuse the advancing enemy by negotiations, while the fate of Cæsar was yet in the balance. But Calvinus pressed upon him, and demanded a battle. The conflict resulted in the complete defeat of the Roman army, with the loss of a large number of knights of illustrious family. Calvinus effected an orderly retreat, but he abandoned both Armenia and Cappadocia to the invader, and the Roman

He defeats  
the Roman  
lieutenant  
Calvinus.



province of Pontus fell again for a moment under the sway of the dynasty of Mithridates.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

The Cæsarians suffer reverses in Illyricum.

Cæsar's policy required him to postpone the pursuit of his own personal enemies to the duty of chastising the invaders of the empire. The partizans of the old broken faction which still called itself the senate and people of Rome were gathering head; and the difficulties in which their adversary was entangled in the East, together with other misfortunes which befel his cause in various quarters, encouraged many who had thrown away their swords in the flight from Pharsalia to return to the standards of Scipio and Labienus. Cæsar himself, even in the moment of victory, was well aware that the strength of his opponents would not succumb under a single defeat; and when he determined himself to follow in the track of Pompeius, he provided against the revival of the beaten party in the very countries which had witnessed their disaster. He had commissioned his lieutenant Cornificius to hold Illyricum with two legions, and an additional force of new recruits was summoned from Italy to support him in that province and secure the possession of Macedonia. These reinforcements were led by Gabinus, the profligate adventurer who had first made himself notorious by his base subserviency to Pompeius, and who now threw himself without a blush into the party of his victorious rival. But his new service was one of great difficulty. Octavius still rode with a powerful fleet in the Adriatic; and though he had failed in preventing the transit of Gabinus, he cut

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *Bell. Alex.* 34—40.; App. *B. C.* ii. 91.; Dion. xlii. 46.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

Death of  
Gabinus.

Vatinius  
obtains a  
success at  
sea.

Affairs of  
Spain.  
Miscon-  
duct of  
Cæsar's  
lieutenant,  
Q. Cassius  
Longinus.

him off from further communication with Italy, and intercepted his supplies. The country in which the Cæsarian forces were moving was so exhausted by the support of immense armies, that they were sorely pressed for sustenance, while they were unable, from the want of military stores, to make any impression upon the strongholds which they invested. The natives were so harassed by the exactions made upon them, and so emboldened by these favourable circumstances, as to rise against them in the neighbourhood of Salona, and inflict severe loss on their feeble battalions. It was not without leaving two thousand men and many officers on the field that Gabinus could effect his entrance into safe quarters at Salona; and cooped up for months in that fortress, the state of his affairs so depressed his spirits that he sickened and died. This reverse, however, was in a great measure retrieved by the exploit of Vatinius, who attacked the fleet of Octavius with an inferior force, and obtained such an advantage over it, as to induce its gallant commander to desist from cruising in the narrow seas, and betake himself first to the coast of Greece, and eventually to Africa.

It was in vain that Cæsar set an example of moderation in his treatment of the provinces; his lieutenants were inaccessible to the motives which guided him. The common vice of proconsular extortion had well-nigh overthrown his party in Spain. Q. Cassius Longinus, already mentioned as one of the pretended patriots who fled to the camp at Ravenna, had been appointed to the government of the Further Province. He had for-

inerly served as quæstor in the same country under the proconsulate of Pompeius, and was already infamous there for his cruelty and rapacity.<sup>1</sup> But Cæsar could not refuse to reward the services of a man so highly connected. He nearly paid dear for his compliance. Cassius had already irritated his people by his exactions, when an order arrived from Cæsar to transport a military force into Africa, to curb the active partizanship of Juba, who was sending assistance to Pompeius in Macedonia. The proprætor was well pleased to have the conduct of an enterprize which promised to open a fair field for plunder. He made his preparations on a large scale, and his demands upon the resources of the province added, probably, to the odium he had already incurred. Certain citizens of Italica entered into a conspiracy against his person. He was severely wounded, and being supposed dead, one of his officers, Laterensis, prepared to assume the command, to the great joy of the soldiers, who detested their general. But Cassius surviving the blows which had been inflicted upon him, such was the discipline of the legions that they immediately returned to their fidelity. The conspirators, and with them Laterensis, who was also implicated in their abortive deed, were delivered up and put to death with torture. The news of the victory of Pharsalia which now arrived, rendered the proposed expedition unnecessary; but Cassius proceeded to indemnify himself for his disappointment by redoubling his exactions upon the people subjected to him. The passions of the provincials were more

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *Bell. Alex.* 49—64.; Dion. xlii. 15, 16.



CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

than ever inflamed. The legions in occupation had been either raised or recruited in the province, and partook fully of the feelings of their countrymen. The authority of the prætor was at length shaken off, and his quæstor Marcellus invited by acclamation to take the command. Cassius, who retained only a small force about his own person, now called to his support both Lepidus, the proconsul of the Hither province, and Bogudes, king of Mauritania, while he fortified himself on a hill over against the city of Corduba. Marcellus boldly summoned him to surrender. Lepidus on his arrival took the side of the new prætor, for he was convinced that the consul's interests required his lieutenant to make a full atonement for conduct so injurious to his cause. Cæsar subsequently acknowledged this service, in assigning to Lepidus the honour of a triumph, though in fact he had fought no battle.<sup>1</sup> Cassius, however, was not to be easily dislodged from his position; but when his successor, Trebonius, arrived in the province at the commencement of the following year, he voluntarily relinquished his hostile attitude. Being allowed to retire unmolested with his ill-gotten treasures, he took ship at Malaca for Italy, but was lost in a storm off the mouth of the Iberus. But the legions were conscious that their act of insubordination could not easily be forgiven by a Roman emperor. They now meditated defection to his adversaries, and sent secret envoys to treat with Scipio in Africa.<sup>2</sup> The result of Cassius's misconduct was not yet fully developed.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xliii. 29. The soldiers who proved so unfaithful to Cæsar

The confidence which Cæsar felt in the stability of his arrangements in the capital was strongly marked by his protracted absence from it. The ferocious menaces of the Pompeians against all who submitted to his ascendancy had tended to attach firmly to him the great mass of the resident citizens. But we may imagine the state of anxious suspense in which the upper classes of Rome awaited the event of the long operations in Illyricum and Thessaly. Servilius, Cæsar's colleague in the consulship, exercised paramount authority in the city. He exerted all the vigilance of an established tyranny in sounding the feelings of the populace, and surrounding every suspected enemy with secret spies. Every courier who arrived with news of Cæsar's successes was received with spontaneous or forced acclamations. But there were not wanting sinister rumours of his discomfiture; and there were many turbulent spirits in the great focus of confusion who secretly welcomed and disseminated them. The report of the victory of Pharsalia announced a catastrophe too momentous to command immediate belief. The conqueror himself had sent no official notification of the event to the senate; he felt that it was unbecoming in him to offer formal congratulations on a triumph over his fellow-citizens. But, as soon as the fact was sufficiently established, the government gave orders for the removal of the statues of Pompeius and Sulla, which courted the public gaze in front of the rostra. This

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

The result of the battle of Pharsalia and the death of Pompeius announced at Rome.

were mostly Afranians, who had been drafted into the victorious ranks. Comp. Dion. xliii. 36.

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

was a final declaration of defiance, not towards Pompeius only, but towards his party; and many still feared and hesitated when they surveyed the manifold resources of the great Roman oligarchy, and mused on the rapid reverses of civil warfare. The disasters of Marius had been even more humiliating; yet Marius had returned in triumph to the scene of his former greatness, he had wreaked an awful retribution on his enemies, and had died in the enjoyment of yet another consulship. The rumours of Pompeius's assassination were obstinately discredited; but the most incredulous were at last convinced by the fatal token of his ring, transmitted by Cæsar to Rome.

The senate  
and people  
heap  
honours  
upon Cæsar:  
Oct. A.U.  
706.

From this moment the face of things was entirely changed; the previous hesitation had been inspired by timidity, not by any remains of love for the murdered hero. From henceforth every scruple about paying court to the conqueror vanished. His flatterers multiplied in the senate and the forum, and they only vied one with another in suggesting new honours for him. Decrees were made, conferring upon him alone unbounded authority over the lives and fortunes of the vanquished. When the news arrived that the standard of the republic was again raised in Africa, the power of making war and peace was surrendered to his sole decision. Indeed, it was only for the sake of appearances that the senate and people went through the form of making these decrees. They affected to give a semblance of legal authority beforehand to acts on which their absent ruler had already resolved. He was next created dictator for the

He is  
created dic-



CHAP.  
XVIII.

space of a whole year<sup>1</sup>; upon which he appointed Antonius, whom he had sent back to Italy, his master of the horse. Antonius constantly appeared in the city in arms, and caused both offence and alarm by the military state he maintained. But the insecurity of his position demanded such precautions. A popular sedition was excited by the intrigues of Dolabella, who had tried to ingratiate himself with the people in his office of tribune by reviving the measures of spoliation projected by Cælius.<sup>2</sup> He found himself thwarted, as always happened in similar cases, by a rival occupant of the tribunitian bench, equally unprincipled and equally anxious to distinguish himself by rushing to the protection of the menaced interests. Antonius was compelled to step in with a military force, in defiance of the sanctity of the much abused office, and vindicate the supremacy of the dictator and the senate against both the contending parties. He acted with unflinching vigour against the excited populace, and quelled the riot with the slaughter of eight hundred citizens.<sup>3</sup> His armed mediation between the demagogues was maintained, however, with scrupulous moderation. He abstained from putting forth his strength to crush their noisy pretensions, so that they continued from time to time to disturb the tranquillity of the city, and were only lulled by the periodical rumours of Cæsar's approach. As soon as the dictator was known to be still engaged abroad, they constantly

---

tator for  
one year.

Intrigues of  
Dolabella  
repressed by  
Antonius.

<sup>1</sup> Dating from October, A. V. 706. See Fischer, *R. Z.* p. 282.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xlii. 32.; Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 12.; Liv. *Epit.* cxiii.

<sup>3</sup> Liv. *l. c.*

CHAP.  
XVIII.

broke out afresh; nor did they finally subside till his actual arrival quelled disaffection, and awed every passion to obedience.<sup>1</sup>

Disaffection  
of Cæsar's  
veterans in  
Italy.

Cæsar received information of these disturbances when he was already on his march from Alexandria to confront the invaders of the empire on the borders of Pontus. Nor were these civil commotions the only clouds which lowered in the horizon of Italy. A spirit of insubordination had broken out once more among the legions. The twelfth and even the tenth, on whose valour he had so long implicitly relied, had dared openly to disobey the orders of their officers. These two legions had been transported from Macedonia, and were now quartered in Campania. They demanded lands and largesses, and when it was announced that they were required to pass over to Sicily, they refused again to quit the soil to which they looked for their reward, and enter upon another career of unrequited service.<sup>2</sup> But even this alarming intelligence could not divert Cæsar from the enterprize on which he was bent, from which he expected to reap such a harvest of wealth as should relieve him for the future from all pecuniary embarrassments. He contented himself with despatching orders to Antonius to reduce the mutineers to submission by threats or promises; but he was not aware, probably, of the lengths to which they had already gone in stoning the officers who had been sent to remonstrate with them.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 17—33.; Plut. *Cæs.* 51., *Anton.* 9.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xlii. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 21.: "Legio xii., ad quam primum Sulla venit, lapidibus egisse hominem dicitur."

CHAP.  
XVIII.

He advances  
to encounter  
Pharnaces,  
and defeats  
him in the  
battle of  
Zela.

Meanwhile, his advance through the provinces of Asia was like a triumphant pageant. The servile spirits of the Orientals were prostrated before the conqueror of the great Pompeius, whom they had long regarded as the type of invincible power. Deiotarus threw himself at the feet of the hero, and gave utterance to the most abject excuses for having ventured to attend upon the vanquished leader. He confessed that, as a dependant on the majesty of the republic, it was not for him to interfere in the controversies of her rival factions, but simply to obey the ministers of her power on his frontier. But Cæsar, though he condescended to accept this submission, replied, haughtily, that the battle of Pharsalia was no party quarrel, but the vindication of the senate and the consulate against rebels and traitors. He did not, however, relax for a moment from the customary rapidity of his movements. Pharnaces was struck with consternation at the doom which was approaching him. The crafty Asiatic was well aware of the circumstances of Italy, and of the urgent necessity for Cæsar's speedy return thither. But it was in vain that he opened negotiations in the hope of amusing his adversary. Cæsar would give ear to no trifling messages: he pressed resolutely forward, and finally came up with the barbarian host at the town of Zela in Pontus. The champion of Asia summoned all his energies for the last struggle on a field where his father had gained one of his greatest victories over the detested republic.<sup>1</sup> A great and

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. Mithr.* 120.



CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

bloody battle ensued<sup>1</sup>, in which the Roman arms were crowned with complete victory. The barbarian forces of the East, once broken and routed, never rallied again. Pharnaces himself escaped from the field, but only to fall in an obscure conflict with a barbarian neighbour.<sup>2</sup> His kingdom had been already stripped from him by a decree of the conqueror, and conferred upon the chieftain of Pergamus<sup>3</sup>, whose services in Egypt have been already mentioned.

Cæsar's  
character  
corrupted  
by his in-  
tercourse  
with Cleo-  
patra.

Cæsar allowed himself to cast only one longing glance towards the frontiers of Parthia, and then resolutely turned his face westward. Perhaps he was even then revolving in his mind the gigantic schemes of Oriental conquest which he announced at a later period, but was destined never to undertake. From this period, however, we begin to trace a change for the worse in his character. The hero whose freedom from display had so long charmed the world became intoxicated by the fumes of Eastern incense, and the disposal of forfeited crowns. He now affected to admire the good fortune of Pompeius, whose exalted reputation was built upon the defeat of the servile armies of Asia.<sup>4</sup> The rapidity of his own conquest he signalized by the arrogant bulletin, which has passed into a familiar proverb, "Veni, vidi, vici."<sup>5</sup> But

<sup>1</sup> Kalendar. Amitern. Orell. *Inscr.* ii. 397. : "iv. Non. Sext. feriæ quod eo die C. Cæsar C. F. . . . in Ponto regem Pharnacem devicit.  
<sup>2</sup> Aug. 707 = 20 Mai. 47. A.C."

<sup>3</sup> Appian. *B. Mithr.* l. c.; Dion. xlii. 47.

<sup>4</sup> Dion. xlii. 48.

<sup>5</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 35.; App. *B. C.* ii. 91.

<sup>6</sup> Plutarch (*Cæs.* 50.) says that this expression was used in a letter

his intercourse with Cleopatra had corrupted the proud simplicity of the Roman statesman. He already meditated to bring her to the capital, and there parade her in the face of his countrymen as the partner of the honours they lavished upon himself. The Romans regarded any avowed and permanent connexion with a foreigner, and more especially an Oriental and an Egyptian, as something monstrous and incestuous, and in violating their prejudices he chilled their applause, and converted their cordial greetings into the hollow flattery of fear. But the sorceress of the Nile had not only corrupted the consul's patriotism, she had enchanted him with the poisoned cup of Canopic luxury. She had taught him to despise as mean and homely the splendour of the Circus and the Capitol. She had imbued him with the gorgeous and selfish principles of Oriental despotism, and debased him to the menial adulation of slaves, parasites, and eunuchs.<sup>1</sup> It is with no wish to heap unmerited obloquy on a woman whose faults were those of her birth and position, that history brands with infamy her influence on the Roman hero. Regardless of her personal dignity, and indifferent to human life, she maintained herself on an Oriental throne by the arts of an Oriental potentate. The course of her chequered career will display to us

to one Amintius; the name is probably a mistake. Suetonius (*Jul.* 37.) asserts that the three words were inscribed on a banner, and carried in Cæsar's triumph. Appian and Dion refer to them as notorious.

<sup>1</sup> Luc. x. 127.:

"Tum famulæ numerus turbæ, populusque minister . . .  
Nec non infelix ferro mollita Juventus."

CHAP.  
XVIII.

---

hereafter a character in which good contended with evil, Macedonian magnanimity with Egyptian suppleness. But in this place it becomes us to remark the fatal effect of a connexion of disparagement, by which Cæsar felt himself degraded in the eyes of his own countrymen. If from henceforward we find his generosity tinged with ostentation, his courage with arrogance, his resolution with harshness; if he becomes restless, and fretful, and impatient of contradiction; if his conduct is marked with contempt for mankind rather than with indulgence to their weaknesses, it is to this impure source that the melancholy change is to be traced.



## CHAP. XIX.

CHARACTER OF CÆSAR'S POLICY IN ROME.—HE ASSUMES THE DICTATORSHIP FOR THE THIRD TIME.—HE QUELLS A MUTINY AMONG HIS SOLDIERS.—THE SENATORIAL PARTY COLLECT THEIR FORCES IN AFRICA.—CATO LANDS AT CYRENE, CROSSES THE LIBYAN DESERT, AND JOINS THE FORCES OF SCIPIO AT UTICA.—CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA DECIDED BY THE VICTORY OF CÆSAR AT THAPSUS.—DISPERSION OF THE REPUBLICAN FORCES, AND DEATH OF THEIR PRINCIPAL LEADERS.—CATO UNDERTAKES TO DEFEND UTICA.—HIS ADHERENTS ABANDON THE CONTEST.—HE COMMITS SUICIDE.—THE DICTATORSHIP FOR TEN YEARS AND OTHER DISTINCTIONS SHOWERED UPON CÆSAR.—ON HIS RETURN TO ROME HE CELEBRATES FOUR TRIUMPHS, AND GRATIFIES THE PEOPLE WITH SHOWS AND LARGESSES.—DEDICATION OF THE JULIAN FORUM.—THE WAR RENEWED BY CNÆUS POMPEIUS IN SPAIN.—HE IS SUPPORTED BY CÆSAR'S DISCONTENTED SOLDIERS.—CÆSAR'S FINAL CAMPAIGN, AND DECISIVE VICTORY AT MUNDA.—OF ALL THE SENATORIAL LEADERS SEXTUS ALONE REMAINS IN ARMS.—DISTURBANCES IN SYRIA. (SEPT. A.U. 707.—APRIL, A.U. 709.)

THE dictator landed at Tarentum in the month of September. He arrived laden with the spoils or presents of Eastern cities and potentates; he had carried off in every quarter the treasure which had been contributed for his rival's use; and to punish the city of Tyre for its devotion to the Pompeian family, he had rifled the great temple of Melcarth or Hercules, not inferior in fame and opulence to the same god's most western shrine at Gades.<sup>1</sup> He accepted golden crowns, a decorous expression

CHAP.  
XIX.

---

Cæsar arrives in Italy. The nobles make their submission to him.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 49.

CHAP.  
XIX.

for large donatives, from the chieftains who solicited his favour. Two things, he used to say, were needful for getting and keeping power, soldiers and money, and each of these was to be gained by means of the other. The immense sums he thus amassed were destined to satisfy the demands of his veterans, to provide for the expenses of his triumph, and to amuse the populace of the city with spectacles, largesses, and buildings, on a scale of unexampled magnificence. In reassuming the government of Italy, Antonius received express orders to prevent any partizans of the senate from landing in the Peninsula. Many of the nobles were most anxious to make their submission to the new government. They trusted to recover thereby their houses and estates, and escape the proscription and confiscation now generally apprehended. But Cæsar, in the unsettled state of men's minds at Rome, could not admit into the city another possible element of discord.<sup>1</sup> He insisted that the deserters from the Pompeian standard should personally repair to him at Alexandria; and during his residence in Egypt there were many such who sought him in his quarters, and devoted themselves with professions of zeal to his service. Cicero alone, whose escape from Italy had apparently been connived at by Antonius at an earlier period, now obtained permission to establish him-

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 7. : "Ad me misit Antonius exemplum Cæsaris ad se literarum, in quibus erat, se audisse Catonem et L. Metellum in Italiam venisse, Romæ ut essent palam: id sibi non placere, ne qui motus ex eo fierent; prohiberique omnes Italia nisi quorum ipse causam cognovisset."

self at Brundisium.<sup>1</sup> Further he was not allowed to proceed, and he remained there for many months in a state of great perplexity and apprehension. On the one hand, cut off from the enjoyment of his estates, and debarred the exercise of his talents in the forum, he was reduced, together no doubt with many others of the proud nobility of Rome, to considerable pecuniary embarrassments<sup>2</sup>; on the other, he had the mortification to learn that his brother Quintus, who had abandoned his general and patron at the commencement of the war, had now thrown himself at Cæsar's feet, and was trying to regain the favour he had forfeited by calumniating his more scrupulous relative.<sup>3</sup> Still shaken by every breath of rumour, which at one moment resounded with the successes of the conqueror in the East, and echoed at the next the vaunting anticipations of the republican champion in Africa<sup>4</sup>, the vacillating statesman awaited the result of events in uneasy seclusion. But when he heard of Cæsar's arrival on the coast, he finally yielded to the impulse to which he had been long inclined. He immediately came forward, in hopes of being the first to greet the new ruler of the common-

<sup>1</sup> Cicero urged that he had received an invitation from Dolabella at Antonius's instigation: he goes on to say, "Tum ille edixit ita ut me exciperet et Lælium nominatim. Quod sane nollem. Poterat enim sine nomine res ipsa excipi."

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 11. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 8.: "Quintus misit filium non solum sui deprecatores sed etiam oppugnatorem mei" (comp. 12—14.).

<sup>4</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xi. 10. (xii. Kal. Feb. A. U. 707.): "De Africanis res longe alia nobis, ac tu scripseras, nuntiantur. Nihil enim firmitus esse dicunt, nihil paratius. Accedit Hispania et alienata Italia; legionum nec vis eadem nec voluntas; urbanæ res perditæ."



CHAP.  
XIX.

wealth, while Cæsar was generously desirous of sparing him the humiliation of mingling with the crowd who were hastening upon the same business.<sup>1</sup> Received with affability, and treated with a show of confidence, Cicero retired with more cheerfulness than he had long experienced to the shades of his Tusculan villa; and whether there or at Rome, his placing himself under the protection of the new government gave it some colour of authority in the eyes of his clients and admirers.

His firmness  
in protect-  
ing them  
against the  
cupidity of  
his own  
party.

The conduct of his own friends in the city was a subject of greater anxiety to Cæsar, on assuming his place at the head of affairs, than the intrigues of his adversaries. He rebuked the turbulent proceedings of Dolabella, but abstained from punishing one with whose services he could not well dispense. He maintained firmly the principles of his own recent enactment regarding the debtors' claims<sup>2</sup>; nor could they dispute the fairness of an arbitrator who replied to their clamours by declaring that no man in Rome was more deeply interested in the terms of the compromise than himself.<sup>3</sup> On the other hand, he winked at the private irregularities by which Antonius had disgraced his leader's party hardly less than his own character; nor would he listen to the counsels of those who exhorted him to issue a decree of proscription against his enemies. It may be doubted whether his sentence

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cic.* 39.

<sup>2</sup> Dion's apparent statement to the contrary (xlii. 51.) refers undoubtedly to the compromise which Cæsar effected between the debtors and their creditors in his first dictatorship. Drumann, iii. 567., anm. 67.

<sup>3</sup> Dion. xlii. 50.

of confiscation extended further than to the estates of Pompeius himself and his two sons.<sup>1</sup> In making these examples, he probably wished to stigmatize the family of his personal rival as fomenters of a mere private quarrel, and thus to distinguish their cause from that of a great national party. But it was impossible for the citizens, when they saw the house of the illustrious Pompeius on the Palatine sold for Cæsar's own profit, not to attribute such an action to cupidity or vindictiveness. Antonius, with his usual reckless prodigality, outbade every competitor; but he was surprised and offended when he found himself compelled to pay down the stipulated price.<sup>2</sup> He deemed that his services, both past and in prospect, might command so trifling an indulgence as release from a paltry debt. He found, however, that his patron was in earnest, and prudently submitted to the affront.

It is impossible not to admire the lofty idea which Cæsar conceived of the claims and duties of the monarchy he sought to establish. He felt that he occupied his exalted eminence by virtue of his acknowledged superiority to all around him in strength and sagacity of character. Obedience he demanded as submission, not to his own arbitrary caprice, but to the principles of reason. He claimed that his word should be law, as the recog-

Cæsar's policy in securing the services of men of all parties.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *de Off.* i. 14., *Tusc.* i. 35., *ad Att.* xi. 20.; Val. Max. vi. 2. 11.; Dion. xlii. 50.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 25. The authority for this part of the anecdote is surely suspicious. That the estates of the Pompeii were sold and purchased partly by Antonius is stated by Dion, xlv. 9.

CHAP.  
XIX.

nized expression of the necessities of the time. It was because they had become obviously inapplicable to existing circumstances that the formal usages of the commonwealth were made to give way to the hand of the innovator. When Cæsar elevated individuals to civil offices before the legal age, he assumed that the old checks upon precocious ambition or popular favouritism were no longer required. In widening the doors of admission to the public boards and corporations<sup>1</sup>, he was accommodating them to the increase in the number of candidates eligible to official distinction. If he replenished the senate with a crowd of men of inferior rank, selected from the most distinguished officers of his army, he was infusing new and healthy blood into a body debilitated by luxury, and deprived by the recent wars of a large portion of its members. In making his appointments to the highest offices of the state, in which the people hardly sought to retain even a nominal share, he had the great difficulty of all usurpers to surmount, to satisfy the claims of his adherents without destroying the dignity and usefulness of the offices themselves. Lepidus, who had rendered Cæsar a great service by his promptness in securing him his first dictatorship, was gratified with the proprætorship in Spain, and upon his return was allowed the honours of a triumph, though he had performed no military exploit, and acquired no trophies except the presents he had extorted from the provincials.<sup>2</sup> The good offices of Calenus and Vatinius were rewarded with the enjoyment of the

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 51.<sup>2</sup> Dion. xliii. 1.



consulship for the three months of the year which remained after Cæsar's return to Rome.<sup>1</sup> Salustius, the historian, had a strong claim upon Cæsar's favour, on account of his expulsion from the senate by Appius Claudius, which he justly attributed to his political rather than to his moral delinquencies. The doors of that assembly were again opened to him by his appointment to the prætorship. But if the ruler of the commonwealth condescended in some instances to allow the claims of party to influence his favours, he felt for the most part that true dignity and policy required him to obliterate any such distinctions, and make all men feel practically that they stood upon the same level of common inferiority and dependence upon himself. In the distribution of the provinces, the offices which the candidates had previously served, and even the ranks in which they had stood on the field of Pharsalia, were equally disregarded. Submission to the new government was the only condition required for the honour of sharing in its emoluments. Marcus Brutus, who had been so prominent a champion of the senate, received an equal mark of confidence with Decimus, who had served Cæsar with fidelity and success throughout the Gallic wars. The one received the government of the Cisalpine Gaul, the other that of the province beyond the mountains. A crowning act of magnanimous self-reliance was the restoration of the statues both of Sulla and Pompeius<sup>2</sup>, which the obsequious Cæsarians had

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xlii. 55.<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 75.; Plut. *Cic.* 40.: ἔφη γὰρ ὁ Κικέρων, ὅτι ταῦτα τῇ

CHAP.  
XIX.

overthrown in imitation of the previous examples of so many party leaders of less lofty character. But if the new hero could thus defy comparison with the most illustrious of the dead, much more did he feel himself exalted above all living competition.

Cæsar assumes the dictatorship for the third time: Oct. A.U. 707.

Upon his return to Rome, Cæsar caused himself to be created dictator for the third time, and again for an annual term. He designated himself and Lepidus consuls for the ensuing year. But it deserves to be remarked, that he now described himself on his coins as dictator for the second, and not for the third time. He thus turned men's eyes upon himself as the founder of a new order of things; for the first appointment had been made in accordance with constitutional precedent, and was a last vestige of the republic; while those which succeeded were altogether irregular, and betokened the establishment of a new monarchical era.<sup>1</sup> In the meantime the disaffection of the legions in Campania caused Cæsar the greatest disquietude; for the forces of the enemy were daily augmenting in Africa, and it was incumbent upon him to go forth without delay, and combat them on another field of battle. Sallustius, who had been sent to quell the rising mutiny, was driven back to Rome ignominiously.<sup>2</sup> Two senators of prætorian rank, Cosconius and Galba, had been slain in the tumult.

He quells a mutiny among his soldiers.

φιλανθρωπία Καῖσαρ τοὺς μὲν Πομπηίου ἴστησι, τοὺς δὲ αὐτοῦ πῆγνυσιν ἀνδρίαντας.

<sup>1</sup> See Drumann, iii. 565. This is true of some of the coins of this date, on which we read "cos. tert. dict. iter.;" but others are inscribed more correctly.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xlii. 52.; App. B. C. ii. 92.

The refractory legions, imbued with the blood of their officers, marched in a state of frantic excitement to the gates of the city, and pitched their tents in the Campus Martius. Cæsar sent once more to inquire what were their demands, but they replied that they would confer only with himself in person. All the military force he had in attendance upon him consisted of the few cohorts with which Antonius had recently maintained the peace of the city, and even of the fidelity of these he was doubtful. He relied on his own courage to save him. Without betraying any symptoms of anxiety, he confronted the mutineers, and demanded what it was they desired. They claimed their discharge and the liquidation of their long arrears; if required, as they expected, for further service, their swords must be bought by an extraordinary largess. But Cæsar acted over again the part which had succeeded so well at Placentia. He took them immediately at their first word: they had claimed their discharge; they were discharged. The composure and deliberateness of his resolve was signified in the word "Quirites," by which he addressed them.<sup>1</sup> The legionaries were at once overcome with shame and confusion; the veterans of the tenth especially felt the deepest remorse at the injustice of which they now accused themselves. But this time the indignant general remained cold and unmoved. He refused to lead his ancient favourites to another field of glory; he only per-

<sup>1</sup> See the parallel occurrence above, Vol. II. p. 222. It seems not improbable that Cæsar employed the same mode of rebuking his rebellious soldiers on two distinct occasions.



CHAP.  
XIX.

mitted them to follow him, and exacted of their officers the most dangerous services, in which he did not choose to sacrifice the men whom he really loved. Nor did he miss the opportunity of the first occurrence of a breach of discipline to remind its authors of their recent misconduct, and to dismiss them with ignominy from his ranks.<sup>1</sup>

Scipio joins  
Varus and  
Juba in  
Africa.

The chiefs of the republican party who had met at Corcyra soon began to act independently of each other, without submitting to any recognized leader or plan of operations. While Scipio, their ostensible head, led the largest division of their forces to the province of Africa, to effect a junction with the victorious armies of Varus and Juba<sup>2</sup>, Labienus directed his course further to the East, and made an attempt to possess himself of Cyrene, which, however, resisted and repulsed him. Cato united himself with Cnæus Pompeius, and fell in at Patræ with Petreius and Faustus Sulla. Their combined squadrons now crossed from the shore of Greece to that of Africa, with the intention of following the general who had abandoned them, and whom their last accounts represented as having betaken himself to Egypt. But when they met the flying vessels which bore Cornelia, together with Sextus, from the scene of her husband's murder<sup>3</sup>, being unaware of Cæsar's movements, and how scanty were his military equipments, they turned their faces from the East, at a juncture when an act of energy and boldness might have retrieved every

Cato on  
hearing of  
the death of  
Pompeius  
crosses over  
to the coast  
of Africa.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afric.* 54.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 56.; App. *B. C.* ii.

<sup>3</sup> Lucan. ix. 46.

disaster. Cnæus, indeed, urged with all the vehemence of his character a desperate attack on his father's murderers<sup>1</sup>, but he was overruled by the cautious prudence of Cato, who was now only anxious to unite together in one spot the scattered fragments of the party. The Roman general landed his little army in the neighbourhood of Cyrene, and demanded admittance. The inhabitants again closed their gates, but they had more respect for Cato than for their last assailant, and yielded on the first demonstration of force.<sup>2</sup> Cato only required rest and provisions, and allowed no violence to be exercised against them; a rare act of clemency in a leader of the republican party towards a town which had made any show of resistance to its authority.<sup>3</sup>

From Cyrene Cato set sail to the westward. His flotilla seems to have reached the Lesser Syrtis in safety, but at that point it was assailed by a tempest, by which it suffered considerably, and it was not deemed prudent to coast those dangerous shores any further in the boisterous season which had now set in.<sup>4</sup> The vessels were left in charge of Cnæus, to await more favourable weather for the continuation of their voyage.<sup>5</sup> But Cato was impatient of further delay, and having laid before his followers the dangers of the route he was de-

He traverses  
the Libyan  
desert.

<sup>1</sup> Luc. ix. 150. 166.

<sup>2</sup> Luc. ix. 297.; Plut. *Cat. Min.* 56.

<sup>3</sup> Cato had himself sacked the town of Phycus in Crete for refusing shelter to his vessels. Luc. ix. 40.

<sup>4</sup> Luc. ix. 320.

<sup>5</sup> Lucan, ix. 374.:

“Hæc eadem suadebat hyems quæ clauserat æquor.”

CHAP.  
XIX.

terminated to take, put himself at the head of a devoted band, and led the way into the depths of the desert which skirts the head of the Lesser Syrtis.<sup>1</sup> If the winter was about to commence, it may have made the march more practicable than it would have been at any other season of the year.<sup>2</sup> Nevertheless, the scarcity of water, the excessive heat, and, it is added, the noxious reptiles by which some districts were infested, rendered it a succession of unprecedented hardships. The inhospitable sands stretched for a distance of seven days' journey.<sup>3</sup> The camel, it must be remembered, was only known to the Romans as a denizen of Bactria and Arabia<sup>4</sup>; the ocean sands of the African continent had never yet been navigated by these ships of the

<sup>1</sup> Lucan makes Cato land in the neighbourhood of the lake Tritonis, that is, at the Lesser Syrtis. He is the only author who gives any local details of this expedition, and our confidence in him is shaken by his introducing the temple of Hammon into the line of march. See Luc. ix. 511. seqq. The superstitious character of Labienus is indeed noticed incidentally by Plutarch, *Cic.* 38.: *Λαβίου δὲ μαγείαις τισὶν ἰσχυριζομένου*, and I think it probable that the curious episode in the *Pharsalia*, in which Labienus advises Cato to consult the oracle of Jupiter Hammon, which the sage refuses to do, is founded upon some real fact, though its local application is undoubtedly fictitious.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. ix. 375. Plutarch says the same, but they were misled perhaps by the unreformed calendar. See the following note.

<sup>3</sup> This is Plutarch's statement. Lucan makes the march through the desert occupy two whole months (ix. 940.):

“Bis positis Phœbe flammis, bis luce recepta  
Vidit arenivagum surgens fugiensque Catonem.”

I conclude that this was the whole time from Cyrene to Utica. Pompeius was killed Sept. 29. = July 24. Cato must have landed at Cyrene within the first month from that date, and left it probably before the end of a second. The two following months would include December of the Roman calendar, September or October of the real time. Strabo (xvii. 3. 20.) makes the time thirty days.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. *H. N.* viii. 26. Plutarch says that Cato employed a large number of asses to carry water.



desert.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, the difficulties and privations of such a march are not to be estimated by our modern experience. Undoubtedly it deserves to be commemorated as one of the greatest exploits in Roman military history. The poet of the republic exalts it indeed above the three triumphal processions of Pompeius, above the victories of Marius over the tyrant of Numidia. He turns with pardonable enthusiasm from the deified monsters, the Caligulas and Neros of his own day, to hail its achiever as the true father of his country, the only worthy object of a freeman's idolatry.<sup>2</sup>

The arrival of Cato and his gallant band at the head-quarters of the republicans at Utica was followed at a later period by that of Cnæus; and in the course of the next year, A. U. 707, the remains of the great host of Pharsalia were assembled, with many additional reinforcements, under the banners of the oligarchy. These forces amounted to not less than ten complete legions, and their chiefs relied for support upon the whole military resources of Juba<sup>3</sup>, who could bring one

Great muster of the republican chiefs at Utica.

<sup>1</sup> That is, not to the westward of Egypt. Pharaoh had camels; and the Israelites, on their coming out of Egypt, are forbidden to eat the flesh of the camel. Strabo (xvii. l. 45.) speaks of the camels of Coptos and Berenice.

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. ix. 598.:

"Hunc ego per Syrtes Libyæque extrema triumphum  
Ducere maluerim, quam ter Capitolia curru  
Scandere Pompeii, quam frangere colla Jugurthæ.  
Ecce parens verus patriæ, dignissimus aris  
Roma tuis, per quem nunquam jurare pudebit;  
Et quem si steteris unquam cervice soluta  
Tunc olim factura Deum."

<sup>3</sup> Auct. B. Afr. l. 19.

CHAP.  
XIX.

---

hundred and twenty elephants into the field, and squadrons of light cavalry, wild and numberless as the waves of the stormy Syrtis. The officers began to brag of their future triumphs almost as loudly as recently at Thessalonica. Their notes of confident defiance were re-echoed to the opposite shores of Italy, and caused fresh dismay to the time-servers, who had abandoned the good cause on the event of its first discomfiture. Strange, indeed, it must seem, that the leaders of so powerful an army should have made no attempt to regain their footing in the country to which all their hopes pointed, and which lay at only three days' sail from the Gulf of Carthage. It is possible that they purposely refrained in order that the population of Rome and Italy might feel the full effect of the tyranny or anarchy which was said to prevail under the new regime, and learn from bitter experience the weight of the yoke to which they had submitted. Expecting to see the colossus which Cæsar had reared fall to pieces by its own weight, and overwhelm the arch-traitor in its ruins, they had neglected the opportunity of crushing him in Alexandria, no less than the means of intercepting him on his passage from Greece to Italy. This inaction may be partly accounted for by the jealousies which already prevailed among the chiefs of the party. Juba also, whom both Scipio and Varus strove by every means to attach to themselves respectively in their rivalry for the leadership, was doubtless anxious to retain the Roman forces, in their present position, both for his own security, and with a view to the recompense he

expected for his aid, if the power of the enemy should be overthrown on the shores of Africa. Of the remnant of those who had fought at Pharsalia Scipio stood the highest in rank and consideration; he could boast of having been associated in command with Pompeius himself. But Varus was proud of his share in the defeat of Curio, and declared that, as proconsul of the African province, he would yield the supreme authority to no man within the limits of his own government. The army, indeed, would have settled the dispute by conferring the first place on Cato by acclamation; a remarkable tribute to the personal influence of one who, in point of fact, had never measured his sword with an enemy in the field. But that noble-minded man felt that it would be unbecoming to usurp the place of an officer of higher rank, and immediately devolved the command upon Scipio the consular.<sup>1</sup> The name of Scipio was one of good omen for a campaign in Africa; but his first act was to authorize the destruction of the city of Utica, at the instance of Juba, who was jealous of its power and splendour as the rival of his own neighbouring city of Zama, and represented it as dangerous to the republican cause from the disaffection imputed to its inhabitants.<sup>2</sup> Fortunately Cato possessed sufficient influence to save it; but Scipio affected to make him responsible for its good behaviour, and was glad to thrust him on one side, by giving him the command there, while he shifted

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 57.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 87.; Dion. xlii. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Plut., Dion. *ll. cc.*; Liv. *Epit.* cxiii.



CHAP.  
XIX.

the quarters of his own army to the neighbourhood of Adrumetum.<sup>1</sup> Cato, indeed, was obliged to adopt vigorous measures of precaution. He expelled the multitude of unarmed inhabitants from the city, placing them within entrenched lines outside the gates, under the guard or protection of a body of soldiers. The senate, an object of just suspicion, he placed under rigorous confinement.<sup>2</sup> We feel a melancholy pleasure in contemplating the brave philosopher busying himself in the collection of stores, and preparations for defence, and glad to devote himself to any dull and thankless office rather than draw his sword against his countrymen in the field; for of all the professed defenders of Roman liberty, he alone really mourned over the necessity of asserting his principles by arms. From the first outbreak of the civil war he had refused to trim his venerable locks, or shave his grizzled beard; and from the fatal day of Pharsalia he had persisted in sitting at his frugal repasts, and denied himself the indulgence of reclining on a couch.<sup>3</sup> Nevertheless, it was good policy to remove him from the councils of the party, where his unbending principles must have proved seriously detrimental. Cicero might harmlessly whisper into a private ear at a distance his mortification at the deference paid to a barbarian potentate by the representatives of the republic<sup>4</sup>; but when Cato, at the head-quarters of the allied

<sup>1</sup> App. *B. C.* ii. 95.; Auct. *B. Afr.* 24.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 87.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* i. 56.; Lucan. ii. 375.

<sup>4</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* ix. 6. to Varro: "Ad bestiarum auxilium confugere," i. e. the Numidian lions; comp. *ad Att.* xi. 7.

powers, expressed his haughty indignation, he was sowing the seeds of certain rupture. It was related that when Juba, attending a council of officers, presumed to seat himself between Scipio and Cato, the latter rose and walked round to the other side, to preserve the place of honour for the Roman general.<sup>1</sup> But he was more alert in striving to rouse the spirit of his countrymen for the last struggle than any of his colleagues in command. He encouraged Cnæus to make a diversion in the West; for in Spain the provincials were still believed to be at heart Pompeian, and the Cæsarian garrisons were known to be wavering. Cnæus commenced his enterprize with an attack on a stronghold of the king of Mauretania; but suffering a repulse in this desultory and inglorious warfare, he withdrew to the Balearic islands, and there rested for a time on his arms.<sup>2</sup>

The sovereignty of the great tract of country known by the name of Mauretania was divided between two brothers, Bogudes and Bocchus, whose father had deserved well of the unscrupulous republic by betraying Jugurtha into its hands. These chiefs were both disposed to throw themselves into Cæsar's arms, out of jealousy probably of the rival king of Numidia, whose influence with the opposite party they had every reason to fear. Bocchus was prepared to take an active part on the side of his ally, and his military power was the more respectable from his having engaged in his service a Roman adventurer, named P. Silius. This man had found means to maintain himself at the head of a band of

The chiefs  
of Maure-  
tania fa-  
vourably  
disposed  
towards  
Cæsar.

Adventures  
of P. Silius.

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 57.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 23.

CHAP.  
XIX.

outlaws of all nations, whose swords he disposed of to decide the quarrels of the petty chieftains of the country.<sup>1</sup> Silius was a native of Nuceria, in Italy, and had acquired some notoriety at Rome as an extensive money-dealer, in which capacity he had established intimate relations with some foreign potentates, and especially those of Mauretania. It was surmised that losses incurred in his trade, or the prodigality which had more than kept pace with its profits, had tempted him to connect himself with the revolutionary visions of Catilina; but the proof against him had failed, and his connexion with P. Sulla, who was defended against a similar charge by Cicero, obtained him the distinction of a panegyric from the renowned patriot. It seems, however, that he subsequently fell under sentence of banishment on some other account. He collected a band of ruffians about him, and crossing over to the coast of Africa was ambitious of playing a more distinguished part on that theatre of lawless adventure. Bocchus, having secured this man's aid in the diversion he meditated in Cæsar's favour, prepared to make an inroad into Numidia, and draw off the forces of Juba for the defence of their own territories, as soon as he heard of the arrival of the dictator in the Roman province. The representative of Marius, whose name had been so illustrious in Africa, might depend also on the favour of a portion of the Roman colonists; and even among the Gætulians and Numidians there were many whose fathers had won distinctions under

<sup>1</sup> The history of Silius is gathered from *B. Afr.* 25.; *Dion.* xliii. 3.; *Appian. B. C.* iv. 54.; *Cic. pro Sulla*, 20.; *Sallust. B. C.* 21.



the old veteran's standard, and who bequeathed to their descendants a faithful remembrance of his benefactions.<sup>1</sup>

A whole year had now passed in a state of comparative inaction on the part of the republicans, while Cæsar was quelling the resistance of the Egyptians, destroying Pharnaces, and consolidating his power in Rome. He must have left the city before the end of November; for he led his troops through the whole length of Southern Italy, crossed the straits of Messina, and traversed Sicily to Lilybæum at its western extremity, arriving there soon after the middle of December.<sup>2</sup> So rapid indeed had been his march that he had not allowed a single day of rest throughout; and, on reaching his destination, he pitched his tent on the sea-shore, to show his anxiety to sail without a moment's delay. He had appointed Lilybæum as the rendezvous of his legions, and had directed that all the war and transport vessels that could be mustered should there await his coming. The weather continued unfavourable for some days; but fresh battalions reached him in the interval, and a force of six legions and two thousand cavalry was in attendance upon his orders when he gave the signal for embarkation. He sailed himself with the first detachment before the end of December of the Roman year, that is, before the commencement of the winter season. The enemy kept no look out to intercept him. He passed Utica, the usual place of landing from the coast of Europe, and steering

Cæsar  
leaves Italy  
and lands  
in Africa.

Nov. A.U  
707.  
Sept. B.C.  
47.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 32.; Dion. xliii. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 1.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 95.

CHAP.  
XIX.

southward, disembarked his troops, consisting of only three thousand foot and one hundred and fifty horse, in the neighbourhood of Adrumetum, which was occupied by C. Considius with a powerful garrison. Cæsar was not strong enough to make an attack upon this place; he despatched a captive under a flag of truce, to open a negotiation with the commander. But when Considius demanded in whose name the herald appeared, and he answered, "In that of Cæsar the emperor," "There is no emperor in Africa but Scipio," replied the republican officer, and inflicted condign punishment upon him as a deserter.<sup>1</sup> The dictator saw that so vigorous an adversary was not to be cajoled, and broke up from his camp, amidst the desultory attacks of the Numidian skirmishers, whom however he repelled in a brilliant affair of cavalry. He was favourably received by the inhabitants of Leptis, and invited to take shelter within their walls, while he despatched messengers to expedite the conveyance of stores and recruits from Sardinia and the neighbouring provinces, and to direct the course of the second detachment of his legions, which had been scattered by adverse winds.

An engagement ensues in which Cæsar is worsted.

But while these reinforcements came slowly in, Cæsar's little army was exposed to imminent peril. The combined forces of Scipio and Juba moved rapidly upon them; and, in the course of their manœuvres to secure their communications with the sea, they found themselves reduced to the necessity of hazarding a general engagement. Cæsar had with him at this time thirty cohorts and some

<sup>1</sup> Auct. B. Afr. 4

hundred cavalry and archers; the number of the republicans was so enormous that Labienus could boast that even to {destroy them unresisting would weary out the puny band of Cæsarians. Labienus and Petreius were the principal leaders of the attack, which was confided almost entirely to the Roman and Numidian cavalry. The former of these officers made himself particularly conspicuous, fighting in the thickest of the conflict, and railing in bitter language at the Cæsarian legionaries, to whom his person was well known. The Roman veteran was proud of his length of service, the experience, valour, and fidelity, which it betokened. No sarcasm was more biting to him than to be addressed as Tiro, or raw recruit. "Who are you? I never saw you before," was the insulting language which Labienus addressed to his old companions in arms, as he thrust his lance in their faces. "I am no tiro," replied one of them, "but a veteran of the tenth," hurling his ponderous pilum at his old commander. The skilful horseman covered himself by a rapid movement of his steed, which received the blow in its chest and fell under him. But the valour of the tenth was unavailing; the pressure of the enemy's massive squadrons drove the men close together, or, in Roman military phrase, within the rails. Hardly able to use their arms in the throng, they gazed anxiously around in search of their commander, while they moved their bodies and inclined their heads to avoid the shower of missiles. By a great effort Cæsar threw his lines into a wedge, ranging the alternate cohorts back to back and separating the dense array of the enemy in the



CHAP.  
XIX.

centre. The combat was divided into two parts on the right and left; but Cæsar had pierced an opening for retreat to his camp, and was glad to draw off his men, and abandon the field of battle to the republicans.<sup>1</sup>

The provincials regard him with favour. His reinforcements arrive.

Cæsar now fortified his position on the coast, in connexion with the town and harbour of Ruspina, with more than usual care, for he felt the extreme precariousness of his position while awaiting the arrival of the expected supplies. At this period, however, events began to tell in his favour, both in the advance of Silius and the Mauretanians upon the Numidian capital, Cirta, which drew off Juba from Scipio's head-quarters, and also by the growing manifestations of feeling in his favour within the province. Even now, distressed and harassed as he was, many individuals of rank and station began to resort to him; the harshness of the proconsul's administration drove the noble and the wealthy to his camp.<sup>2</sup> Cæsar published their complaints in his appeals to the rulers of the neighbouring provinces for supplies. He had come to Africa, he declared, to save the country from spoliation, and the allies from utter destruction; but for his opportune arrival nothing but the bare soil would soon be left them. Four more legions shortly joined him from beyond the sea, and provisions with all kinds of military stores were collected in abundance, while Scipio, deprived of the aid of his Numidian allies, was seeking to train a squadron of elephants to war, by a series of mimic combats.

Cæsar obtains an

The arrival of so large a number of Cæsar's ve-

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 15—18.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 26.

CHAP.  
XIX.

---

 advantage  
over Scipio.

terans gave a decisive inclination to the scale of fortune. The legionaries of the republican army were personally no match for them, and even its numerical superiority in cavalry was greatly diminished, while the prestige of Cæsar's abilities as a general more than counterbalanced any other advantage it might possess. Scipio felt that he was unfit to contend with such an adversary in the field, and avoided a battle; while at the same time he had conceived no other distinct plan of opposition to him. But even this feeble policy was disconcerted by the rapidity of Cæsar's movements. A month had scarcely elapsed from his first landing when he found himself in a condition to assume offensive operations. He surprised Scipio's position near Uzita, and forced his troops to an engagement from which they did not escape without considerable loss. The discomfited general could only revenge himself by putting to the sword the complements of two of Cæsar's transport vessels, which were cast away at Thapsus, and on the island Ægimurus.<sup>1</sup>

In the meantime, however, the diversion on the side of Cirta had not proved so important as had been anticipated. Juba, after making his observations on the strength of the invaders, contented himself with deputing the defence of his capital to Sabura, while he returned with the larger part of his forces, to share in person the fortunes of his allies. The necessities of the Roman chiefs compelled them to submit to revolting indignities from the pride of their presumptuous colleague. He

 Insolence of  
Juba in the  
senatorial  
camp.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. B. Afr. 46.

CHAP.  
XIX.

took upon himself to forbid Scipio the use of the emperor's purple cloak, which he declared to be an ensign of the kingly office; and restricted him to the white colour of the ordinary toga. When he issued his royal mandates to Roman officers, they were observed to be more punctually obeyed than the orders of the general himself.<sup>1</sup> But every insult was borne to secure the aid of the Numidian cavalry, which Cæsar was obliged to train his soldiers to baffle by a peculiar system of tactics. They were discouraged also by the elephants, which their horses could not endure to encounter. Cæsar fetched some animals of the kind from Italy, on purpose to familiarize both men and horses with the sight of the uncouth creatures; and it was found that, when the first terror of novelty was overcome, the unwieldy monsters did little service in battle.<sup>2</sup>

The hostile  
armies meet  
before  
Thapsus.

Thus prepared for a decisive struggle, Cæsar long tried in vain to draw his adversary into a general engagement. At last, on the fourth of April, he issued from his encampment by night and marched sixteen miles to Thapsus, where Virgilius commanded for Scipio with a considerable force.<sup>3</sup> When his determination to invest this place, important as well from its devotion to the republican cause as from the numbers of the garrison it contained, became known, Scipio felt the necessity of making an effort to preserve it. He summoned resolution to follow in the enemy's track, and pitched his camp over against him, at a dis-

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 57.

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 72.

<sup>3</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 79.; Dion. xliii. 7.



tance of eight miles from the town. Cæsar had profited, in the meanwhile, by the few hours by which he had outstripped his opponents. There was only one route by which they could communicate with the place, which ran along a narrow strip of land, enclosed by the sea on one side, and a salt-water lake on the other. This isthmus Cæsar had secured the day before Scipio's arrival, throwing up fortifications, and posting a strong body of troops behind them. Having made these dispositions, he was applying himself to the investment of the city, when Scipio, unable to force an entrance into it, contented himself with taking up a position on the shore, from whence he might observe and impede the works of the besiegers. While some of his troops were employed in casting up the entrenchments, the main body was drawn up in battle array for their protection. Cæsar saw that the moment was come; he immediately led forth his own troops to the encounter, leaving two legions to cover the works already commenced, and, at the same time, gave orders to a portion of his fleet, which was riding off the shore, to divert the attention of the enemy by threatening to land a detachment in their rear.<sup>1</sup>

If Cæsar felt a momentary distrust of the result of the approaching combat, it was caused by the consciousness that a large portion of his men were fresh recruits, who had never encountered an enemy before. To these he pointed out the sturdy veterans dispersed through their ranks, and bade them emulate the fame they had acquired, and

Battle of  
Thapsus.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 81.

CHAP.  
XIX.

Cæsar  
obtains a  
complete  
victory.

merit similar titles and rewards. Some symptoms of vacillation on the part of their opponents gave new force and spirit to his exhortations. Men and officers crowded round their general, imploring him to give the word for the onset. While he still hesitated, or watched his opportunity, checking with hand and voice the impatient swerving of the lines, suddenly the blast of a single trumpet burst forth on the right wing. The impetuous ferocity of the tenth legion could no longer brook restraint; they had raised the signal unbidden, and now the whole army rushed forward in one unbroken body, overpowering the resistance of their officers. Cæsar, when he beheld rank after rank pouring by him, without the possibility of recal, gave the word "Good luck" to his attendants, and spurred his horse to the head of his battalions. The combat was speedily decided. The elephants, thrown into confusion by the first discharge of stones and arrows, turned upon the ranks they were placed to cover, and broke in pieces their array. The native cavalry were dismayed at losing their accustomed support, and were the first to abandon the field. Scipio's legionary force made little further resistance; their camp was close in the rear, and they were content to seek shelter behind the entrenchments. Deserted by their officers, they looked in vain for a leader to direct the defence of the ramparts. No one had been left in command of the camp. The fugitives, seized with panic terror, threw away their arms and betook themselves to the Numidian encampment near at hand. But, on reaching it, they found it already in the hands of the Cæsarians.

They now withdrew in a body to a neighbouring eminence, and held out their bare arms and empty hands in sign of submission. But the victorious veterans were mad with fury and exultation; they would give no quarter to the unresisting multitude, and even slew some of their own comrades, men of gentle birth and nature, lately enlisted at Rome, and uninitiated in their brutal habits, in resentment at the attempt to curb their ferocity. Cæsar beheld the transaction with horror; but neither entreaties nor commands could prevail on the butchers to desist from their carnage.<sup>1</sup>

This sudden and complete victory cost the conquerors no more than fifty men. Cæsar celebrated it by a grand sacrifice in the presence of the army, after which he addressed his soldiers with encomiums on their valour, and distributed a largess to the whole of his veteran forces, with special rewards to the most deserving. After this, leaving considerable detachments to conduct the siege of Thapsus and Thysdrus, he followed up the first report of his success by appearing before the walls of Utica. The destruction or rout of the republican army in the late battle had been no less complete than at Pharsalia. And, precisely as on that fatal day, the chiefs of the party had sought each his own safety by escaping unattended from the field. As the fugitives from Pharsalia had made no attempt to rally within the walls of Larissa, so for the most part the remnant of the slaughter of Thapsus left Utica in their rear, nor looked behind them till they had gained the sea or the recesses of Numidia.

Dispersion  
of the  
senatorial  
chiefs.

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 85.



CHAP.  
XIX.

---

Death of  
Scipio and  
others.

Scipio, with a few officers of high rank, attempted to make his way into Spain; but their vessels were driven by stress of weather to the harbour of Hippo, where Sitius, who had routed and slain Sabura, had stationed a flotilla of much greater force. The unequal combat ended in the destruction of the flying armament; while Scipio, after exhibiting pride and courage worthy of a Roman emperor, thrust his sword into his side, and leapt overboard.<sup>1</sup> A Damasippus and a Torquatus sank ingloriously to the bottom.

Cato ani-  
mates the  
Romans in  
Utica to  
defence.

It was late in the evening of the eighth of April when Cato received information at Utica of the result of the battle. The next morning he assembled the Roman senators and knights, together with the three hundred<sup>2</sup>, in the temple of Jupiter. By this time the news of the overwhelming disaster had spread among them. It was with surprise and admiration that they beheld the calmness of their general's demeanour. He began by stating that he had summoned them to deliberate upon affairs of grave importance.<sup>3</sup> Though professing himself still full of hope, and urging every one to nerve his courage for a magnanimous defence, he left the determination of their conduct to their own decision. For himself, he would not exercise

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 96.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 100.; Liv. *Epit. civ.*: "P. Scipio in nave circumventus honestæ morti vocem quoque adjecit: quærentibus enim Imperatorem hostibus dixit, Imperator bene se habet."

<sup>2</sup> These "three hundred," according to Plutarch, were Roman citizens engaged in commercial and monetary transactions in Africa, of whom Cato formed a council for the government of the city. Plut. *Cat. Min.* 59.

<sup>3</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 88.

his military authority to prevent them either from seeking safety by flight, or even opening the gates to the enemy; but if they were determined to defend the liberty of Rome to the last, he would place himself at their head, and lead them against the enemy, or prolong the struggle in some other quarter. He read the list of men, arms, and stores which were still at their disposal; and the example of his calm courage was so effectual that they resolved on the spot to prepare for resistance, and began manumitting and arming their slaves. The remnant of the Roman nobility remained firm in their determination; their blood was more thoroughly inflamed against the enemy, and their hopes of pardon seemed more precarious. But the three hundred, for the most part private speculators, men who had no personal quarrel against Cæsar, and had taken no part in the contest until the establishment of the republican head-quarters in the centre of their peaceful town had compelled them to assume the attitude of political partizans, soon relaxed from the high-wrought enthusiasm to which they had for a moment given way. The few days which followed seem to have been past in mutual intrigues between these parties and the natives of Utica, each fearful of being betrayed and sacrificed by the other. Cato felt the impossibility of reducing to harmony such discordant elements. The last duty which remained to the patriot general was to save the persons of all Roman citizens from the treachery of the provincials, as well as from the vengeance of the conqueror. When it was announced that Cæsar was advancing at the head of

His exhortations failing, he recommends them to make their escape.

---

CHAP.  
XIX.

the merciless legions which had given no quarter on the field of Thapsus, Cato closed all the gates except that which led to the sea, and urged the Roman senators to betake themselves to the ships which lay ready to receive them. He entreated all his personal friends to make their escape in the same manner, but about securing his own safety he said nothing, and seemed to take no thought. No one indeed doubted that he had formed his own resolution to die. Finally, he consulted with L. Cæsar on the terms in which he should intercede with his kinsman on behalf of the three hundred, and despatched him to the conqueror's camp. When every one was thus dismissed, excepting Cato's own son, who would not abandon his father, and one or two friends and attendants, with whom he was wont to take his meals and discourse or declaim on subjects of sublime speculation, he passed the evening in animated conversation on his accustomed themes, and harangued with more than usual fervour on the famous paradox of the Stoics, that the good man alone is free, and all the bad are slaves. His companions could not fail to guess the secret purpose over which he was brooding. They betrayed their anxiety only by silent gestures; but Cato, observing the depression of their spirits, strove to reanimate them and divert their thoughts by turning the conversation to topics of present interest.

Cato  
commits  
suicide.

The embarkation was at this moment proceeding, and Cato repeatedly inquired who had already put out to sea, and what were the prospects of their voyage. Retiring to his chamber he took up the



dialogue on the soul, in which Plato recorded his dying master's last aspirations after immortality. The Academy might be justly proud of the homage of so noble a disciple of the Porch. But the stoic could dispense with the consolations of any other school, for he had been taught to believe in a future existence, coeval at least with the frame of a perishable universe.<sup>1</sup> After reading for some time, he looked up and observed that his sword had been removed. In the irritation of the moment he gave way to a burst of violence, such as often characterized the behaviour of the Roman master to his slaves: calling his attendant to his presence he struck him on the mouth, bruising his own hand with the blow. He then sent for his son and friends, and rebuked them sharply for their unworthy precaution; "as if," he said, "I needed a sword to kill myself, and might not, if I chose, put an end to my existence by dashing my head against the wall, or merely holding my breath." They saw that it was vain to avert the blow which he seemed to meditate, and reassured, perhaps, for the moment by the calmness with which he conversed, they restored him his weapon, and at his earnest desire once more left him alone. At midnight, still anxious about those who were departing, he sent once again to inquire if the embarkation was completed. The messenger returned with the assurance that the last vessel was now on the point of

<sup>1</sup> This was the doctrine of Zeno (see Smith's *Biogr. Dictionary*, art. "Zeno"); Cicero's raillery is unmerciful (*Tusc. Disp.* i. 31.): "Stoici vero usuram nobis largiuntur, tanquam cornicibus; diu mansuros aiunt animos; semper, negant."

CHAP.  
XIX.

leaving the quay. Thereupon Cato threw himself on his bed, as if about to take his rest for the night; but when all was quiet, he seized his sword and thrust it into his stomach. The wound was not immediately mortal, and the victim rolled groaning on the floor. The noise at once summoned his anxious attendants. A surgeon was at hand, and the patient was unconscious while the protruding intestines were replaced, and the gash sewn up. But on coming to himself he repulsed his disconsolate friends, and tearing open the fatal wound, expired with the same dogged resolution which had distinguished every act of his life.<sup>1</sup>

Judgment  
of the  
ancients  
upon this  
act.

Such was the proud though melancholy end of the gravest philosopher Rome had yet produced: the first of a long line of heroes of the robe, whose dignified submission to an adverse fate will illustrate the pages of our history throughout the gloom of the imperial tyranny. The ancient heathens but faintly questioned the sufferer's right to escape from calamity by a voluntary death. It was reserved for the Christian moralists, in their vindication of nobler principles, to impugn the act which has rendered Cato's fame immortal.<sup>2</sup> The creed of the Stoic taught indeed that the world is governed by a moral Intelligence, and from such premises the obvious inference is, that it is the part of man to conform to its behests, and fulfil his ap-

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cat. Min.* 58—70.; Dion. xliii. 10, 11.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 98, 99.; Auct. *B. Afr.* 88.

<sup>2</sup> Cato's suicide is applauded by Cicero, *Tusc.* i. 30., *Off.* i. 31., and Seneca, *Ep.* 24. 67. 71. 95. fin., 104. See also *de Prov.* 2. S. Augustine, on the contrary, contrasts it with the genuine heroism of Regulus (*de Civ. Dei*, i. 24.).

pointed lot whether for good or for evil. But the philosophy which exalted man to a certain participation in the nature of the deity<sup>1</sup>, seemed to make him in some sort the arbiter of his own actions, and suicide, in Cato's view, might be no other than the accomplishment of a self-appointed destiny. The wisest of the heathens never understood that the true dignity of human nature consists in its submission to a higher existence; that its only hope for the future is in the consciousness of its imperfection and weakness and responsibility here.

The suicide of Cato was the consistent act of a heathen philosopher, determined at least to maintain the purity of his soul uncontaminated by base compliances. Assuredly the calm dignity of its execution demands our respect and compassion, if not the principle on which it was based. Far different was the manner in which the rude barbarian Juba and the coarse soldier Petreius ran forward to meet their ends. They had escaped together from the field of battle, and the Numidian offered to provide shelter for his companion in one of his own strongholds. The Roman province was so ill-disposed towards the barbarian chief, that he was obliged to hide himself by day in the most secluded villages, and roam the country on his homeward flight during the hours of darkness. In this way he reached Zama, his second capital, where his wives and children, together with his most valuable treasures, were deposited. This place he had taken

Deaths of  
Juba and  
Petreius:

<sup>1</sup> Luc. ix. 564.:

" Ille deo plenus tacita quem mente gerebat."



CHAP.  
XIX.

pains to fortify at the commencement of the war, with works of great extent and magnitude. But on his appearance before the walls, the inhabitants deliberately shut their gates against him, and refused to admit the enemy of the victorious Roman. Before setting out on his last expedition, Juba had constructed an immense pyre in the centre of the city, declaring his intention, if fortune went ill with him, of heaping upon it every thing he held most dear and precious, together with the murdered bodies of the principal citizens, and then taking his own place on the summit, and consuming the whole in one solemn conflagration. But the Numidians had no sympathy with this demonstration of their sovereign's despair, and resolved not to admit him within their walls. Juba having tried in vain every kind of menace and entreaty, to which no reply was vouchsafed, at last retired, but only to experience a similar reception in every other quarter to which he resorted. He at least had little to hope from the clemency which the victor had extended to his conquered countrymen. His companion, hard as his own iron corslet, scorned to accept it. The fugitives supped together, and, flushed with the fumes of the banquet, challenged each other to mutual slaughter. They were but unequally matched: the old veteran was soon despatched by his more active antagonist; but Juba was constant in his resolution, and only demanded the assistance of an attendant to give himself the last fatal stroke.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 91. 94.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 100.; Dion. xliii. 8.; Senec. *de Prov.* 2.; Flor. iv. 2. 69.

Nor was the fate of Considius, of Afranius, and Faustus Sulla less disastrous. The first of these had abandoned the defence of Thysdrus at the approach of the forces which Cæsar despatched against it, and attempted to make his escape with the treasures he had amassed into the territories, until now friendly, of the Numidian chieftains. He was destroyed, for the sake of his hoarded booty, by the Gætulians who accompanied him in his flight. The others had retained the command of a squadron of Scipio's cavalry, and after burning one town which had shut its gates against them, had made a desperate attack on the military post which Cato maintained outside the walls of Utica, to wreak an unworthy vengeance on the Cæsarian partizans there kept in custody. Baffled in this object they had made their way into Utica, while Cato still commanded there, and had added bitterness to his last days by the violence and ferocity of their behaviour. From thence they led their ruffians along the coast in the hope of finding means of transporting them into Spain. But on their way they fell in with Sittius, who was advancing to join Cæsar; their men were routed and themselves taken. The bands of the Roman adventurer carried on war with the same brutality as the barbarians among whom they practised it. The captors quarrelled among themselves; their passions were inflamed, perhaps, in the distribution of the prisoners and the booty; and both Afranius and Faustus were killed in the fray which ensued.<sup>1</sup>

---

Of Considius, Afranius, and Faustus Sulla.

<sup>1</sup> Such is the statement of the author of the book *de Bello Africano*,

CHAP  
XIX.

---

Cæsar  
exacta large  
sums from  
the con-  
quered  
cities.

But the massacre of the son of the dictator Sulla, accidental as it was, or at least unauthorized, could hardly fail of being charged as a deliberate act upon the representative of Marius.

While his foes were thus flying and falling, Cæsar advanced triumphantly from the scene of his last exploit, receiving the submission of the towns on his way, carrying off the stores and treasure collected for his enemies' use, and leaving garrisons to retain them in fidelity. As he drew near to Utica he was met by L. Cæsar, whose petition for mercy seems to have been confined to his own person, and to whom, as well as to a long list of distinguished nobles, the conqueror extended the promise of his protection.<sup>1</sup> He lamented with every appearance of sincerity that Cato had robbed him of the pleasure of pardoning one who, of all his antagonists, had been the most obstinate in his opposition, and the most inveterate in his hatred. The fatal compliance of the Utican senators, who, not content with obeying his enemies' commands, had contributed money to their cause, furnished him with a specious pretence for rifling their coffers of the treasures he now most urgently needed.<sup>2</sup> His requisitions amounted to

and it is supported by Suetonius, *Jul.* 75. Other writers, Dion, Florus, Eutropius, and Orosius, countenance the notion that Cæsar caused them to be put to death.

<sup>1</sup> Dion (xliii. 12.) gives currency to a report that Cæsar caused his kinsmen to be put to death privily some time afterwards. Such a story need only be mentioned to put the reader on his guard against the historian's inaccuracy.

<sup>2</sup> Appian (*B. C.* ii. 100.) asserts that Cæsar caused as many of the three hundred as he captured to be put to death, and Dion speaks of the assassinations he privately commanded. But I see no reason to



two hundred millions of sesterces. At the same time the city of Thapsus was mulcted in two millions, and the company of Roman traders in three. Adrumetum paid down three millions, and its Roman capitalists five. Leptis and Thysdrus also suffered in due proportion. A grand auction was held at Zama for the sale of all the objects of Juba's royal state, and of the goods of the Roman citizens who had borne arms under the tyrant's orders. Upon the people who had so boldly defied their sovereign, and refused him admittance within their walls, honours and largesses were munificently showered, and the taxes heretofore demanded for the royal treasury were partially remitted by the collectors of the republic. But the country of Numidia was deprived of its independence, and definitively reduced to the form of a province, under the proconsulate of Sallustius.<sup>1</sup> The rewarded and the punished acquiesced equally in the conqueror's dispositions; the submission of Africa to his authority was from thenceforth complete. The Uticans were allowed to commemorate with a

give credit to statements at variance with the direct evidence of other writers, and entirely opposed to the general report of his clemency towards his countrymen when they fell into his power; and the less so, as in this case there was not a shadow of political excuse for such a barbarity. Appian allows that Cæsar pardoned Cato's son, and restored the daughter of Pompeius, the wife of F. Sulla, with her two children, to Cnæus; and Dion acknowledges that he burnt Scipio's papers unread, and exhibited other marks of moderation and generosity: *καίτοι καὶ τὸν Κάρωνα ἔσωσεν ἄν* (xliii. 13.).

<sup>1</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 97. Dion. xliii. 9.: *τῷ Σαλυστίῳ, λόγῳ μὲν ἄρχειν, ἔργῳ δὲ ἄγειν τε καὶ φέρειν, ἐπέτρεψε.* The same historian goes on to describe in bitter language the shameless rapacity of the proconsul, and to compare it with the pretensions to purity he makes in his histories.

CHAP  
XIX.

Cæsar sails  
for Sar-  
dinia, and  
thence to  
Italy.

Hostile at-  
titude as-  
sumed by  
Cnæus in  
Spain.

funeral and a statue the humane and noble conduct of their late governor.

Cæsar settled the affairs of Africa with his usual despatch, and sailed from Utica on the thirteenth of June.<sup>1</sup> On his way to Italy, he stopped at Caralis, in Sardinia. The aid which the island had afforded to his adversaries furnished him with a decent pretext for extorting from the inhabitants large sums of money. At the end of the same month he again weighed anchor; but the prevalence of easterly winds drove him repeatedly to shore, and he at last reached Rome on the twenty-eighth day after his departure from the Sardinian capital.<sup>2</sup> The reports he received at this time of the revival of the republican cause in Spain did not give him much uneasiness. Cnæus had been detained by sickness in the Baleares, and the fugitives from the field of Thapsus had been almost all cut off in their attempts to reach the point to which their last hopes were directed. The legionaries who had mutinied against Cassius Longinus were still either unsatisfied with their treatment under the commander who had superseded him, or fearful of their general's vengeance when a fitting opportunity should arrive. It was from Cæsar's own soldiers that the invitation had gone forth to the republican chiefs to renew the struggle on the soil of Spain. The spirit of the old commonwealth

<sup>1</sup> June 13, A. U. 708 = April 14, B. C. 46. Fischer, *Röm. Zeittäfel.*

<sup>2</sup> Auct. *B. Afr.* 98. The period seems extraordinary for so short a distance, and the author's words will perhaps bear the meaning, that it is to be computed from Cæsar's leaving, not Caralis, but Utica. But from certain notes of time which will appear below, I think the statement in the text is correct.

still survived in many of the towns of Bætica; promises of support were freely given; but the remnant of the African armament was contemptible both in numbers and ability. Of all the haughty nobles who had thronged the tent of Pompeius at Luceria or Thessalonica, not one with a name known to history remained in arms, except Labienus alone. He indeed had succeeded in making his escape from Africa, in company with Varus; but the insurgents had already placed themselves under the command of Scapula and Aponius, officers of their own, nor would they suffer themselves to be transferred from them to any other except the son of the great Pompeius. The extent to which the flame of insurrection had spread was probably unknown at this time to Cæsar. He was impatient to reap at last the fruit of so much bloodshed, to assume the post of honour he had won, and to work out the principles and objects of so many years of anticipation. A distant and contemptible outbreak might be subdued without meeting it in person. Accordingly, C. Didius, an officer of no eminent reputation, was sent with a naval and military force to the succour of Trebonius, whom, however, he found already expelled from his government by the growing force of the new movement.<sup>1</sup>

Meanwhile, Rome had sunk, during the conqueror's absence, into a state of torpid tranquillity. The universal conviction that the dictator's power was irresistible, had quelled all further heavings of the spirit of discontent. Dolabella had been gratified with a command in the late campaign; while

Honours  
showered  
upon Cæsar  
by the  
senate and  
people  
during his  
absence.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 29.



CHAP.  
XIX.

---

others, in whose fidelity and military skill he could rely, had been left behind to overawe disaffection. The most illustrious of the nobility having now no occasion to remain at Rome for the sake of paying court to a jealous ruler, had retired generally to their country seats; but Cicero seems to have feared giving occasion for distrust if he withdrew himself from the broad eye of public observation.<sup>1</sup> He occupied himself, however, in his philosophical studies, and could rejoice that he had never, like so many of his contemporaries, when plunging into the excitements of political life, abandoned the literary pursuits common to them in youth. While he still regarded the contest in Africa with the sentiments of a true republican, he confessed with a sigh, that though the one cause was assuredly the more just, yet the victory of either would be equally disastrous. He probably held aloof from the proceedings of the servile senate, which occupied itself during the months of Cæsar's absence in devising new honours for his acceptance. First of all it decreed the religious ceremony of a thanksgiving of forty days, being twice the term to which the compliance of popular gratitude had ever previously extended, and it was by the length of the observance that the honour was estimated.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* ix. 2. (to Varro): "Quæres cur, cum hæc in urbe sint, non absim quemadmodum tu. Nobis stet illud, una vivere in studiis nostris, a quibus antea delectationem modo petebamus, nunc vero etiam salutem." *Ibid.* 6.: "Equidem hos tuos Tusculanenses dies instar esse vitæ puto: quod nos quoque imitatur ut possumus, et in nostris studiis libentissime conquiescimus." *Ibid.* 20.: "Literis me involvo, aut scribo aut lego." See Fischer, *R. Z.* In the autumn of this year (708), i. e. after Cæsar's return to Rome, he wrote the *Laus Catonis*, and the *Brutus, sive de claris Oratoribus*.

Next it appointed that the victor's triumphal car should be drawn by horses of white, the sacred colour<sup>1</sup>, and that the number of his attendant licitors should be doubled. He was to be requested to undertake the office of Censor for three years, under a new title, which should not remind the citizens too closely of the times of republican liberty, that of *Præfectus morum*, or regulator of manners. The changes which the revolutionary storm had effected in the condition of so many of the citizens justified a resort to the old constitutional resource for purging the senate of scandalous or impoverished members, and infusing new blood into its veins. The most substantial, however, of all these tributes to Cæsar's ascendancy was the decree by which he was appointed dictator for a period of ten years; for thus the initiative of legal measures was united in his hands with the command of the legions both at home and abroad. Other specious honours, in the taste of the times, were accumulated upon him. His chair was to be placed between those of the consuls in the assembly of the senate; he was to preside and give the signal in the games of the circus; and his figure in ivory was to be borne in procession among the images of the gods, and laid up in the Capitol, opposite the seat of Jupiter himself.<sup>2</sup> A statue was to be erected

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 14. Camillus triumphs with white horses by a special decree of the senate. But this unwonted and impious flattery conduced to his fall. Plut. *Camil.*; Aur. Vict. c. 23. It seems not to have been repeated till this occasion.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xliii. 14. The *thensa*, Gr. *ἄρμα*, was properly a sort of litter in which the statues of the gods were carried in certain processions.

CHAP.  
XIX.

---

to him in bronze, standing upon a globe, with the inscription, "Cæsar the demi-god."<sup>1</sup> His name was to be engraved on the entablature of the Capitol, in the place of that of Catulus, its true restorer. The historian who recounts these honours, assures us that many others besides these were offered; he has only omitted to specify them because Cæsar did not think fit to accept them. It is difficult to imagine to what lower depth of obsequiousness the senate could have descended, or what higher dignities the conqueror would have rejected.

Celebration  
of Cæsar's  
four tri-  
umphs.

The time had now arrived for the celebration of the Gallic triumph, which had been so long postponed. In the interval, the emperor's victories had been multiplied, and the ranks of his veterans had been recruited by fresh enlistments; so that every soldier who had shared in his later perils and successes, demanded the reward of participating in his honours. Cæsar claimed not one, but four triumphs: the first, for his conquest of the Gauls; the second for his defeat of Ptolemæus; another, for his victory over Pharnaces; and the last, for the overthrow of Juba. But he carefully avoided all reference to what were in reality the most brilliant of his achievements. In Spain and Thessaly he had routed the disciplined legions of his own countrymen; but their defeat brought no accession of honour or territory to the republic. The glory it reflected on the victor was dubious and barren.<sup>2</sup> The four triumphs were celebrated, with intervals of a few days between each, that

<sup>1</sup> Dion. *l. c.*; comp. Servius on Virg. *Ecl.* ix. 47.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Val. Max. ii. 8. 7.



the interests of the public might not pall with satiety. The first procession formed in the Campus Martius, outside the walls of the city. It defiled through the triumphal gate at the foot of the Capitoline hill, and crossed the deep hollow of the Velabrum and Forum Boarium, on its way to the Circus Maximus, which occupied the valley between the Palatine and Aventine. In passing through the Velabrum, the chariot in which the emperor stood, happened to break down; a mischance which so affected him that he never afterwards, it is said, ascended a vehicle without repeating a charm.<sup>1</sup> The long procession wound round the base of the Palatine, skirting the Aventine and Cælian hills, to the point where the arch of Constantine now stands. There it began the ascent of the gentle slope which separates the basin of the Colosseum from that of the Roman forum. It followed the same track which now leads under the arch of Titus, paved at this day with solid masses of hewn stone, which may possibly have re-echoed to the tramp of Cæsar's legions. Inclining a little to the right at the point where it gained the summit of the ridge, and looked down upon the comitium and rostra, in the direction of the Capitol, it passed before the spot where the temple of Julius was afterwards built; thence it skirted the right side of the forum, under the arch of Fabius, till it reached the point just beyond the existing arch of Severus, where the two roads branched off, the one

<sup>1</sup> Plin. *H. N.* xxviii. 2., who adds, "Id quod plerosque nunc facere scimus."

CHAP.  
XIX.

to the Capitoline temple, the other to the Mamertine prison. Here it was that Cæsar took the route of triumph to the left, while Vercingetorix was led away to the right, and strangled in the subterranean dungeon. The Gaulish hero doubtless met with firmness and dignity the fate to which he had so long been doomed, while his conqueror was exhibiting a melancholy spectacle of human infirmity, crawling up the steps of the Capitol on his knees, to avert, by an act of childish humiliation, the wrath of the avenging Nemesis.<sup>1</sup> The next instance of similar degradation recorded is that of the emperor Claudius, who being corpulent and clumsy, performed the ungraceful feat with the support of an arm on either side.<sup>2</sup> The practice was probably of no unusual occurrence, and was deeply rooted, we may believe, in ancient and popular prejudices. A remnant of it still exists, and may be witnessed by the curious, even at the present day, on the steps of the Ara Celi, and at the Santa Scala of the Lateran.

The populace amused with spectacles.

The days of triumph which succeeded passed over with uninterrupted good fortune. The populace were gratified with the sight of the Egyptian princess, Arsinoë, led as a captive at the conqueror's wheels; but she was spared the fate of the Gaulish chieftain out of favour to her sister, or perhaps out of pity to her sex. The son of the king of Numidia who followed the triumphal car

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 21. That there was, however, some better feeling mixed with this display of superstition may be believed from the fact that Cæsar caused the blasphemous inscription on his statue to be erased.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. lx. 23.

was also spared, and lived to receive back his father's crown from Augustus.<sup>1</sup> Though Cæsar abstained from claiming the title of a triumph over his countrymen, he did not scruple to parade their effigies among the shows of the procession. The figures or pictures of the vanquished chiefs were carried on litters, and represented the manner of their deaths. Scipio was seen leaping desperately into the sea; Cato plunging the sword into his own bowels; Juba and Petreius engaged in mortal duel; Lentulus stabbed by the Egyptian assassin; Domitius pierced perhaps in the back, in token of his flight. The figure of Pompeius alone was withheld for fear of the commiseration it might excite among the people whose favourite he had so lately been.<sup>2</sup> Nor, as it was, were the spectators unmoved. Upon the unfeeling display of Roman defeat and disaster they reflected with becoming sensibility. But the pictures of Achilles and Pothinus were received with unmingled acclamations, and loud was the cry of scorn at the exhibition of Pharnaces flying in confusion from the field.<sup>3</sup> After all, the most impressive part of the

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 55. While he remained at Rome he received an education in Greek literature, and became a respectable historian: μακαριωτάτην ἀλὸς ἀλῶσιν, says the man of letters. Comp. Strabo, xvii. 3.

<sup>2</sup> The illustrious citizens thus represented were not only those who by their alliance with the barbarian potentate in Africa might be supposed to have forfeited all claim to the consideration of their countrymen. Duruy, ii. 520. Appian says expressly that Pompeius alone was excepted of all the chiefs of the republican party.

<sup>3</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 101. Compare a similar representation in Scipio's triumph as described by Silius Italicus, xvii. ad fin. :

“Sed non ulla magis mentesque oculosque tenebat  
Quam visa Hannibalis campis fugientis imago.”



CHAP.  
XIX.

ceremony must have been the appearance of the rude veterans whose long files closed the procession. With what ignorant wonder must the children of Gaul and Iberia, of Epirus and Africa, have gazed at the splendour of the city, of which the fame resounded in their native cabins! What contempt must they have felt for the unarmed multitudes grinning around them! How reckless must they have been of the dignity of the consuls and senators, they who claimed the licence of shouting derisive songs in the ears of their own commander! Little did they think that grave historians would sum up their coarse camp jokes in evidence against the fame of their illustrious leader; still less did they dream of the new power which the military class was thenceforth to constitute in the state. Rome in fact was their own; but it was a secret they were not yet to discover.

Largesses  
distributed  
to the  
soldiers and  
people.

The satisfaction of his armed supporters, however, was the first condition on which the supreme power of the dictator must henceforth be maintained in the city. It was a matter, indeed, of hardly less importance to secure the good humour of the urban population. While the soldiers received each a donative of twenty thousand sesterces, the claims of the much larger multitude of the free citizens were not undervalued severally at four hundred; especially as they received the additional gratification of one year's remission of house-rent.<sup>1</sup> It does not appear how this indulgence differed from that for which Cælius and Do-

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 38. The sums mentioned are equivalent to about 200*l.* and 4*l.* respectively

labella had raised their commotions; but the dictator had so strenuously resisted every attempt to set aside the just claims of creditors on all previous occasions, that it can hardly be doubted that in this case he gave the landlords compensation from the public treasury. The mass of the citizens was feasted at a magnificent banquet, at which the Chian and Falernian wines, the choicest produce of Greece and Italy, flowed freely from the hogshead, and towards which six thousand lampreys, the most exquisite delicacy of the Roman epicure, were furnished by a single breeder.<sup>1</sup> The mighty multitude reclined before twenty-two thousand tables; each table having its three couches, and each couch, we may suppose, its three guests; so that the whole number feasted may have amounted to nearly two hundred thousand.<sup>2</sup> When Cæsar undertook the functions of his censorship, the number of recipients of the public distributions of corn was estimated at three hundred and twenty thousand. Upon a scrutiny into their claims as genuine and resident citizens, he was enabled to strike off as many as one hundred and fifty thousand from this list.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Plin. *H. N.* xiv. 17., ix. 81.; Varro, *R. R.* iii. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Plutarch's words (*Cæs.* 55.) are: ἐστίασας ἐν διαμύριοις καὶ δισχιλίοις τρικλίνοις ὁμοῦ σύμπαντας.

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 41.; Dion. xliii. 21. Undoubtedly Suetonius's words will bear no other meaning: "Ex viginti trecentisque millibus accipientium frumentum e publico ad centum quinquaginta retraxit." Livy, however, is supposed to have given a different account (*Epit.* cxv.): "Recensum egit quo censa sunt civium capita centum quinquaginta millia," and he is followed by Drumann and others. So also Plutarch. This is very probably the error of the epitomizer, afterwards repeated by later writers. Dion contents himself with saying that the number was reduced by about one half.

CHAP.  
XIX.

Adding to the remainder the senators and knights, and the few wealthy individuals who might have scorned to partake of a state provision, the sum will correspond pretty accurately with the number of the imperial guests as above computed.

Exhibition  
of gladiato-  
rial shows

The public shows with which these gratifications were accompanied, were carried out on a scale of greater magnificence than even those recently exhibited by Pompeius. There was nothing in which the magistrates of the republic vied more ostentatiously with one another than in the number of wild beasts and gladiators which they brought into the arena. The natural taste of the Italian people for shows and mummary degenerated more and more into an appetite for blood; but in this, as in every other respect, it was Cæsar's ambition to outdo his predecessors, and the extraordinary ferocity and carnage of the exhibitions which he complacently witnessed, excited a shudder even in the brutal multitude.<sup>1</sup> The combatants in the games of the Circus were either professional gladiators, who sold their services for a certain term of years, or captives taken in war, or lastly, public criminals. But Cæsar was, perhaps, the first to encourage private citizens to make an exhibition of their skill and valour in these mortal combats. He allowed several men of equestrian rank, and one the son of a prætor, to demean themselves in the eyes of their countrymen by this exposure to the public gaze. It was only when a senator named Fulvius Setinus asked permission thus to prostitute

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 24.



his dignity, that the dictator was at last roused to restrain the growing degradation.

CHAP.  
XIX.

If the people of Rome were shocked at the bloodshed which they were invited to applaud, it seems that they were offended also at the vast sums which were lavished on these ostentatious spectacles.<sup>1</sup> They would have preferred, perhaps, that the donative to themselves should have been greater, and the soldiers even exhibited symptoms of discontent and mutiny in consequence. No instance of Cæsar's profuse expenditure excited greater admiration than his stretching a silken awning over the heads of the spectators in the Circus. This beautiful material was brought only from the furthest extremity of India, and was extremely rare and precious at Rome at that time. Three centuries later it was still so costly that a Roman emperor forbade his wife the luxury of a dress of the finest silk unmingled with a baser fabric.<sup>2</sup> But a more permanent and worthy object of imperial expenditure was the gorgeous forum of which Cæsar had long since laid the foundation with the spoils of his Gallic wars. Between the old Roman forum and the foot of the Quirinal, he caused a large space to be enclosed with rows of marble corridors, connecting in one suite halls of justice, chambers of commerce, and arcades for public recreation. In the centre was erected a temple to Venus the ancestress, the patroness for whom Cæsar had woven a breastplate of British pearls<sup>3</sup>, and whose name he had used as his watchword on

Dedication  
of the Ju-  
lian forum.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. l. c.

<sup>2</sup> Vopisc. *Aurel.* 45.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. *H. N.* ix. 57.

CHAP.  
XIX.

---

the days of his greatest victories.<sup>1</sup> He now completed the series of his triumphal shows by the dedication of this favourite work.<sup>2</sup> It remained for centuries a conspicuous monument of the fame and magnificence of the first of the Cæsars. His successors were proud to cluster new arches and columns by its side, and bestowed their names upon the edifices they erected in connexion with it. Finally, Trajan cut through the elevated ridge which united the Capitoline with the Quirinal, and impeded the further extension of the Imperial forums. He filled the hollow with a new range of buildings, occupying as much ground as the united works of his predecessors in this quarter. The depth of his excavation is indicated, it is said, by the height of the pillar which bears his name.<sup>3</sup>

The republicans make

Our review of the dictator's proceedings in the

<sup>1</sup> He had vowed this offering to the goddess on the morning of the battle of Pharsalia. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 102.

<sup>2</sup> "Kalend. Pincian. vi. Kal. Octob. Veneri Genetrici in foro Cæsar." Orell. *Inscr.* ii. 399. According to Dion the consecration took place on the day of the last triumph: this then was the 26th of September, A. V. 708. The series of triumphal shows was comprehended in a period of one month. It must have begun therefore about the end of August, and the preparations having, no doubt, been made before, it is not likely that Cæsar delayed the celebration more than a few weeks after his return to Italy. This consideration seems to confirm the account (p. 382.) that he was twenty-eight days in his passage from Caralis to Rome.

<sup>3</sup> The inscription on the base of the column runs: . . . "ad declarandum quantæ altitudinis mons et locus tantis operibus sit egestus." The most reasonable interpretation seems to be that the height of the column indicates the point from which the soil was scarped away on the sides of the Capitoline and Quirinal hills. The ground, no doubt, was lower at the centre of the part excavated. But the height of the column is stated at 130 feet, while the summits of the Capitoline and Quirinal are not more than 137 and 151 feet respectively above the level of the Tiber. Bunsen, *Beschreibung Roms*, i. 31.

CHAP.  
XIX.head in  
Spain under  
Cnæus.

discharge of his civil functions must be postponed but only for a moment, to relate the short episode of his last military exploit. The despatches of his lieutenants in Spain represented that province as rapidly falling into the hands of the republican faction. Varus and Labienus had escaped from Africa, and joined the standard under which Scapula marshalled the disaffected legions in Spain. Cnæus Pompeius had also issued from his retreat in the Balearic Isles, and as soon as he appeared in their camp every chief of the oligarchy waived his own pretensions to the command in deference to the man who represented the fame and fortunes of their late leader. Yet Scapula had the confidence of the soldiers, Labienus was an officer of tried ability and reputation, and Varus had at least held the highest military commands, while Cnæus himself was personally unknown to the legions in Spain, and his only achievement in war had been a dashing naval exploit. So cowed by its repeated reverses was the spirit of the old Roman party, which had revived for a moment in Africa with vain exultation at finding itself relieved from the ascendancy of its own military champion. Cnæus, on his part, seems to have regarded the renewed contest in the light of a private quarrel. His war-cry was not "Rome," "Liberty," or "The Senate," but "Pietas," "Filial duty."<sup>1</sup> The disaffection among Cæsar's soldiers had spread; a large body of them had enrolled themselves under their new leaders; their numbers had been augmented by provincial enlistments; even slaves had been drafted

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 104.



CHAP.  
XIX.

Cæsar's  
final cam-  
paign in  
Spain, de-  
cided by  
the victory  
of Munda.

into the ranks<sup>1</sup>; while the cities and states of the peninsula lent their aid more or less openly to the cause. It was not in the remoter parts of the province, or among the half-subdued native principalities, but in the centre of Roman influence and civilization, in Corduba itself, that the standard of the adventurers was unfurled. Cæsar had completed the ceremonies of his quadruple triumph, and was deeply engaged in the arduous task of legislation for the new system of government which he had undertaken to raise, when he found it necessary to postpone every other occupation to meeting his enemies once more in arms. So uncertain and tedious was the navigation of those days, that he may have chosen the land route across the Alps and Pyrenees, for the sake of reaching his destination with greater speed.<sup>2</sup> The details of the campaign into which he immediately plunged are given, but very obscurely, in the last of the series of contemporary memoirs which have hitherto been our guides throughout the military history of the period. In point of composition it betrays less literary accomplishment than any of its kindred works. The rude soldier who seems to have been its author, had no hesitation in recording

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 103.

<sup>2</sup> Appian (*l. c.*) says that Cæsar arrived in *Spain* from Rome in twenty-seven days, accompanied by a part of his army; Suetonius (*Jul.* 56.) that he reached the *Further Province* in twenty-four. Strabo seems to rely on the same authorities as Appian (iii. 4.). From Rome to Corduba or Obulco, is more than a thousand miles, a distance which it is utterly impossible for an army to accomplish in the longest of these periods. The author of the *Commentary on the Spanish War* is contented with the expression "*celeri festinatione*," and Dion prudently follows him.

in their undisguised enormity the cruelties which disgraced the conduct of both parties. Cæsar's character for humanity suffers more in this than in any other contemporary narrative of his actions. The campaign was, indeed, a series of butcheries on either side, but Cnæus was, perhaps, the most savagely ferocious of all the captains of the civil wars.<sup>1</sup> The scene of the last act of Roman liberty was laid in the valley of the Guadalquivir and the defiles of the Sierra de Tolar. After a variety of desultory movements, of which we obtain from the narrative only an indistinct notion, we find the rival armies at last drawn up in hostile array on the field of Munda.<sup>2</sup> Cæsar was this time superior in numbers, and especially in cavalry<sup>3</sup>; but the enemy was well posted, and fought well: never, it is said, was the great conqueror brought so near to defeat and destruction. He exhibited, as on other critical occasions, all the personal courage of a private soldier, snatching a shield from one of the legionaries, and rushing within ten paces of the enemy's line, where he was exposed to the aim of two hundred piles and javelins. The officers were the first to dash forward to protect him with their bodies; and the soldiers, at the very height of their dismay, were recalled to themselves by this splendid example. When the battle was at last gained, Cæsar is said to have remarked, that he had often fought for victory, but never before for his life.<sup>4</sup>

Thirty thousand men were left on this decisive

Destruction  
of the re-

<sup>1</sup> Comp. a letter of C. Cassius to Cicero (*ad Div.* xv. 19.).

<sup>2</sup> Munda, the modern Monda, between Ronda and Malaga.

<sup>3</sup> Auct. *B. H.* 30.

<sup>4</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 104.

CHAP.  
XIX.

publican  
leaders, and  
death of  
Cnæus.

Sextus  
alone main-  
tains him-  
self in arms.

field, and among them Varus, Labienus, and many others of the remnant of the Roman nobility. Cnæus escaped from the scene of his disaster, and gained the coast with a few adherents. He had taken refuge on board a vessel, and was in the act of putting to sea, when having accidentally entangled his foot in a rope, an over-zealous attendant, in attempting to extricate him, wounded his ankle with the blow of a hatchet. He was now compelled to land again for the sake of obtaining surgical assistance: his retreat was discovered by his pursuers, and he was forced to quit it and betake himself to the forests. Wearied and desperate he threw himself at the foot of a tree, where he was speedily overtaken, and killed after a miserable struggle.<sup>1</sup> His head, with those of his colleagues in arms, was presented to the conqueror; and the complete defeat and ruin of the adventurers was thus publicly notified. Of all the leaders of the senatorial party, Sextus Pompeius was now the only survivor. He had made his escape from the field of Munda, and had sought an asylum in the wildest districts of the Hither Province. He had nothing to hope from the clemency of the conqueror, who had shown unusual bitterness against his family by the confiscation of their patrimonial estates, and was now preparing to celebrate his triumph over them as foreigners and enemies of the state.<sup>2</sup> Thus driven to despair, he infused new spirit into the predatory habits of the tribes among whom he had taken refuge, and continued to defy

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 105.; Dion. xliii. 40.; Auct. *B. Hisp.* 39.

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *l. c.*; Cic. *ad Att.* xii. 37.; Dion. xlv. 10.; Strabo, iii.



the power of the provincial authorities. Cæsar occupied himself for some months in reconstituting the government of Spain, taking precautions for the entire subjugation of the party which had shown such vitality in that quarter. The battle of Munda was fought on the seventeenth of March, but the dictator was not at liberty to return to Italy till September, after an absence of ten months.

The hostile attitude of the last of the Pompeii in Spain was not the only exception to the tranquillity which prevailed generally throughout the empire. In Gaul the Bellovaci had risen in arms; but this movement was expeditiously repressed by Decimus Brutus, the proconsul of the newly conquered province.<sup>1</sup> In the extreme East, however, the republican party still continued to make head, under the leadership of Cæcilius Bassus.<sup>2</sup> Their champion was an obscure knight, and their forces were insignificant, consisting principally of two legions which Bassus had seduced from their allegiance to Sextus Cæsar, the commander to whose care Syria had been entrusted by his kinsman.<sup>3</sup> But the proximity of the Parthians, ever on the watch for an opportunity to wound the sides of their great rivals, rendered any movement in this quarter formidable. Sextus Cæsar was murdered by his soldiers, and Bassus took possession of the city of Apamea, which, with the assistance of the national enemies, he continued to keep against the

Disturb-  
ances in  
Syria.

<sup>1</sup> Liv. *Epit.* civ.

<sup>2</sup> Liv. *l. c.*; Dion. xlvii. 26.; Strabo, xvi. 2.; Auct. *B. Alex.* 78.

<sup>3</sup> Auct. *B. Alex.* 66.

CHAP.  
XIX.

---

petty attempts which were made to dislodge him. The dictator kept his eye upon him, and already meditated his destruction: but for the present he was content to leave his temerity unpunished, while he applied himself to the consolidation of his power by bold and comprehensive legislation at home.

## CHAP. XX.

CÆSAR'S LEGISLATION: HIS SUMPTUARY LAWS: INCREASE OF THE NUMBER OF THE SENATE: LIMITATION OF THE TERM OF PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENTS: EXTENSION OF THE FRANCHISE: DISTRIBUTION OF LANDS TO THE VETERANS: MEASURES FOR MULTIPLYING THE FREE POPULATION OF ITALY: ASSIGNMENT OF THE JUDICIA TO THE SENATORS AND KNIGHTS, TO THE EXCLUSION OF THE ÆRARIAN TRIBUNES: REPRESSION OF CRIMES OF VIOLENCE, AND ABOLITION OF THE CLUBS.—CÆSAR CONTEMPLATES THE ESTABLISHMENT OF AN UNIFORM SYSTEM OF ADMINISTRATION: HE PROPOSES TO COMPILE A CODE OF LAWS, AND TO EXECUTE A COMPLETE MAP OF THE EMPIRE.—CÆSAR'S PATRONAGE OF LITERATURE: HIS REFORM OF THE CALENDAR: HIS REFORMS ARE VIEWED WITH JEALOUSY BY THE NOBLES: HE IS ACCUSED OF PRIDE AND ARROGANCE.—THE DEMEANOUR OF CLEOPATRA TENDS TO MAKE HIM UNPOPULAR; AT THE SAME TIME HE IS FLATTERED AND HIS CLEMENCY EXTOLLED.—HE DISBANDS HIS SOLDIERS, AND RELIES ON THE FAVOUR OF THE CITIZENS.

WE have now followed the career of Julius Cæsar to the point at which his supremacy is finally established, and the proud defiance of a licentious oligarchy has subsided into the murmur of a broken and proscribed faction. We have seen him commence his political existence with the assertion of the popular claims identified with the hero of his own house. He urged them with a fearless vehemence, in which it is impossible to mistake the sincerity of his devotion. The first steps of every popular champion are bold and decided. At the outset he has a distinct object be-

CHAP.  
XX.

---

General  
view of the  
spirit of  
Cæsar's le-  
gislation.



CHAP.  
XX.

---

fore him ; he knows what his grievances are, if not their true remedies. He may delude himself as he proceeds with the fancy that he is reconstructing, but there is no deception about the fact that he is pulling down. His days and years are marked by the successive demolition of real and substantial things, while his new creations are perhaps no more than ideas. Such, however, was not the case with Cæsar. From the time, indeed, of his first entry into public life, his name had been signalized by the overthrow, one by one, of the strongholds of ancient privilege, and in the ardour of the attack, straitened in his means and controlled in his natural impulses, he had little opportunity of applying himself to the task of renovation. Accordingly, when the ruins of the past began to be cleared away, he was astonished to behold how great was the gap he had made. The solemn question now urged itself upon him, how this desolate space was to be again filled up ; and in the boldness and originality of his views, it found an appropriate solution. But the work to be performed was long, and the time granted to him was but short ; we shall see him, however, erect more than one durable edifice of utility and justice, and bear witness to his planning of others on a scale still more magnificent, while many vast conceptions were obviously floating in his mind of which he was not even permitted to shadow forth the outline. His undisputed tenure of power lasted hardly more than one year and a half, including an interval of ten months' absence from the city. It was, therefore, impossible that his ideas, how-

ever long he may have actually brooded over them, could receive their complete and methodical realization. We are the less able to appreciate with accuracy the clearness of Cæsar's views, and the process of their development, from the fact of there existing no record of the order in which his enactments succeeded one another. We know not at what stage his legislation was interrupted by his departure for Spain, nor have we the means of judging whether his reforms gained in boldness or lost in impartial justice, when his power seemed secured by his final victory. It would have been deeply interesting to have remarked how one idea may have germinated in many new directions; how various imperfect measures may have conduced to one harmonious result. But the measures themselves, confused and disjointed as is the form in which they present themselves to us, point decisively to the existence in their author's mind of a comprehensive plan for the entire reconstruction of the national polity. The general principle which pervades them is the elevation of a middle class of citizens, to constitute the ultimate source of all political authority. The ostensible ruler of the state is to be in fact the creation of this body, its favourite, its patron, its legislator, and its captain. To this body he is to owe his political existence.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In Justinian's view, derived by constant tradition from the earliest times of the Imperial monarchy, the people are the fountain of power. He lays it down as the first principle of public law: "Quod principi placuit legis habet vigorem, quum lege regia quæ de ejus imperio lata est, populus ei et in eum omne suum imperium et potestatem concessit." *Inst.* i. ii. 6. Comp. *Gai. Inst.* i. i. 5. The *lex regia* here appealed to was, as we shall see hereafter, a mere fiction of the jurists

CHAP.  
XX.

He is to watch over the maintenance of an equilibrium of popular forces, checking with the same firm hand the discontent of the depressed nobility, and the encroachments of the aspiring rabble. The eternal principles of rule and order he is to assert as sacred and immutable ; but he is to be himself responsible for their application at his own discretion to the varying wants of society. This idea of government was perfectly new to the ancient world. It was the first rude conception of popular monarchy, the phantom of philosophers and jurists, which has been so often shadowed forth in theory, but never permanently realized in practice. The event indeed proved that an attempt to combine the discordant elements of despotism and freedom<sup>1</sup> could avail only as a temporary expedient, under favour of a strong popular reaction from a period of anarchy and suffering. It was repeated, as we shall see, under these conditions, with limited and transient success, by Augustus and Nerva. But its effect was either to exchange the sword of the open foe for the dagger of the assassin, or to crush all independence of thought and speech, and congeal in stagnant inaction the life-blood of the nation. If, however, it contained, in execution, the seeds of premature degeneracy and corruption, the humane experiment at least deserved, and did not fail to obtain, the sympathy of mankind.

Reforms  
demanded

The pomp of four triumphs, the spectacles of the

to account for the existence of the authority which they found established.

<sup>1</sup> Tac. *Agric.* 3. : "Quonquam Nerva Cæsar res olim dissociabiles miscuerit principatum et libertatem."



theatre and the circus, the unwonted splendour of the decorations lavished on the dictator's person were merely frivolous expedients for amusing the people, and enhancing the popularity and dignity of their favourite. To consolidate the power he had acquired on the firm basis of the national affections was a much more arduous undertaking. The demands of the age, as they presented themselves to Cæsar's mind, may be summed up in the language of the discourse attributed, though with little authority, to the historian Sallust, but in which some later rhetorician appears at least to have embodied the sentiments ascribed to antiquity by his own contemporaries.<sup>1</sup> A noble object of ambition, it was said, lay open to the imperator who should aspire to rule over the Roman people. He found them bloated and corrupted by the excess of luxury, overwhelmed with debt and degraded by the vices which debt engenders. The nobles were selfish and cruel, and had sought in a civil war the surest refuge from their creditors, and the only means of retrieving their fortunes. But this faction had now been crushed; let the seeds of such passions be prevented from taking root again. Let luxury be repressed by sumptuary laws: let the numbers of the privileged orders be increased; let the rights of citizenship be extended; let colonies be planted in the provinces; let military service be required

<sup>1</sup> There is no other external evidence for the genuineness of these *Orationes ad C. Cæsarem*, than the titles of the MSS. Their style has little in common with that of the historian; and the freedom with which they speak of Cæsar's ascendancy as a *regnum*, seems to me inconsistent with the language of the times.

CHAP.  
XX.

equally of all, and none be retained under their standards beyond a reasonable period. Let the magistrates and judges be chosen for their virtues and dignity, and not merely for their wealth. It would be vain to entrust the working of such reforms as these to a commonwealth of free and equal citizens; but the impartial eye of a supreme ruler may watch securely over their execution, and neither fear, nor favour, nor private interest interfere to clog their operation.<sup>1</sup>

A single ruler required to effect them.

These counsels represent, no doubt, the views which the Romans themselves entertained regarding the most urgent of their political wants. Couched as they are in feeble generalities, they still seem to point with sufficient distinctness to the kind of reforms which were really most essential. They were seconded assuredly by the cry of the provinces, which felt themselves entitled to make their interests known in return for the support they had given to the conqueror. If the city acknowledged its weakness and exhaustion, and declared its eagerness to receive an invigorating supply of foreign blood, the provincials offered for the honour of incorporation their best and noblest families. If the commonwealth demanded that the privileged order of the senate should be enlarged by the admission of new members, men of capacity and distinction, Gaul, Africa, and Spain presented their sons to the censor, as soldiers who had fought for the new government, or civilians learned in the laws and

<sup>1</sup> These recommendations may be compared with Cicero's suggestions (*pro Marcel.* 8.): "Constituenda judicia, renovanda fides, comprimendæ libidines, propaganda soboles."

skilled in the conduct of public affairs. Rome had groaned under the severity with which the military service had pressed on the diminished ranks of her citizens; they had endured twenty, or thirty, or even forty campaigns, and the state had persisted in declaring that it could not afford to discharge them. But every frontier of the empire was burning to enlist its hardy warriors under the Roman eagle, to supply the places of the Italian husbandmen, and take their turn in the dangers and emoluments of conquest. And if the jealous democracy of the forum could behold without alarm the ascendancy of the man from whom alone it could expect to obtain all these benefits, much less would the subjects of the republic scruple to heap honour and power upon him, and constitute him the uncontrolled arbiter of their destinies. It was from the vigilant superintendence of a single ruler alone that they could hope for the repression of the tyranny of their local governors. The interests of the sovereign dynasty would be naturally opposed to the elevation of rival families on the spoils of the conquered. The provinces might even hope that the ruler of the Roman world would seek to counter-balance the authority of a turbulent and jealous capital, by favouring the competition of her ancient rivals in Greece and Africa. Such perhaps were the vague hopes with which the native populations of the East and West had uniformly ranged themselves on Cæsar's side throughout his campaigns against the oligarchy. They now joined with the great body of the citizens themselves in pressing nearly similar suggestions upon him.



CHAP.  
XX.

---

Cæsar's  
sumptuary  
enactments.

Cæsar was not appalled by the magnitude of the task which was thus thrust upon him. He had great examples before him in the projects of Drusus, and the legislation of his own relative, who had carried the Julian law for the admission of the Italians to the franchise; nor less in the policy of Sertorius, whose wise liberality had renewed the image of Rome herself on the shores of the Spanish peninsula. In some matters of detail he had also the experience of the Pompeian reforms to guide him; these were at least safe and moderate, and might conciliate many by their specious propriety. Among the first of the dictator's enactments was one for restricting the luxury of dress and the table, and some other objects of ostentatious prodigality.<sup>1</sup> The ancient legislators, as is well known, never renounced the futile hope of checking private extravagance by formal decrees; but though experience had uniformly shown the futility of such expedients, it may still be urged in excuse for Cæsar, that his new position as a sovereign ruler placed his legislation in this respect on a different footing from that of the republican arbiters of manners; for he could continue to watch over the execution of his own laws, and not be constrained to abandon them, as soon as made, to the superintendence of indifferent or hostile successors. He was obliged also to consider that the censorship of manners which he virtually discharged was invested in the eyes of the people with the peculiar function of checking the growth of aristocratic luxury, and the democracy demanded, at least in

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 43.; comp. Cic. *ad Div.* vii. 26., ix. 15., *ad Att.* xiii. 7.

this instance, that the traditions of the republic should be respected. It is true that Cæsar's legislation in this direction only added another to the long list of similar failures. Nothing but his own presence in the city, and his personal vigilance, could secure even the pretence of obedience to it. His mortification at this result seems to show that he had reposed more faith in the expedient than we, from his natural sagacity, might have expected. Doubtless the real object he had in view was not to control vicious extravagance, but to break down the pre-eminence of the wealthiest class. Other means offered themselves towards this end, more sure in their operation as well as more equitable in their character. The restriction of the term of provincial governments to one year in the prætorian, and at farthest to two<sup>1</sup> in the consular provinces, opened the door to these lucrative appointments to a larger number of candidates, and in the same proportion reduced their emoluments. Cæsar could combine the satisfaction of the numerous claims which were urged upon him with a further development of his policy. He was glad to degrade the highest offices of the republic by distributing its honours among his partizans in rapid succession. The consuls, at his instigation, were elected for the abridged terms of six, three, or even two months.<sup>2</sup> Yet he did not venture to recommend a foreigner to the suffrages of the people, to which he still pretended to appeal in the

He abridges the consuls' term of office arbitrarily, and increases the number of the senate.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* i. 8. ; Dion. xliii. 25.

<sup>2</sup> Dion (xliii. 46.) says, even for a few days ; comp. Luc. v. 399.

CHAP.  
XX.

appointment to the highest magistracies.<sup>1</sup> The case was different where the appointment lay solely in himself. In revising the list of the senate in his censorial capacity, he raised it to nine hundred in number, which was probably nearly double what it had been in recent times. When we consider how many of that body had fallen in the war, or were still self-banished from the city, besides those whom Cæsar, by the exercise of his special functions, removed from the list for their misconduct or their poverty, we cannot doubt that more than two-thirds of the whole number were new importations. Nor were these elevated for the most part from other classes of Roman citizens. It was Cæsar's policy to place his allies from the provinces on the same benches with the proud descendants of their fathers' conquerors.\* The representative of many an old patrician house, glorying in the images of prætors, consuls, and imperators with which his halls were crowded, fancied that he saw in the new senators whose Roman toga he was constrained to honour, the same uncouth figures which, in Gallic kilt or trouser, had followed the victor's car and graced his triumph.<sup>2</sup>

Communi-  
cation of  
the Roman  
franchise to  
provincials.

The Romans exercised their wit upon these upstart strangers losing themselves amidst the forest of columns which thronged the public places of

<sup>1</sup> Cornelius Balbus, the first foreigner who obtained this honour (Plin. *H. N.* vii. 44.), was not consul till the year 714, after Cæsar's death. Dion. xlviii. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. (*Jul.* 80.) quotes, among other jests of the day, a popular song:

"Gallos Cæsar in triumphum ducit, idem in curiam.  
Galli braccas deposuerunt, latum clavum sumpserunt."



the city, and placards were posted recommending no good citizen to guide them to the senate house.<sup>1</sup> But wander where they would on the banks of the Tiber, the Gaul and Syrian might see their own Rhodanus and Orontes mingling with its turbid waters.<sup>2</sup> The crowds of foreigners whom they met in every street or theatre must have reminded them that Rome was even now, in some sense, invaded by the barbarians. When Cæsar reduced the claimants of the public corn from three hundred and twenty thousand to little more than half that number, we must suppose that a great proportion of those excluded were strangers who had fraudulently represented themselves as genuine children of the republic. But he made amends to these disappointed applicants by a large measure of enfranchisement. The policy was wise and humane by which he declared that all practitioners of medicine, and professors of science and liberal knowledge, should receive the full rights of Roman citizenship.<sup>3</sup> In the provinces, though his steps were slow and uncertain, he marched in the track which had been pointed out by the founders of the Marian party. The freedom of the city was conferred upon various states in Gaul, Spain, and perhaps in other provinces. The whole legion Alauda,

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *l. c.*: "Bonum factum: ne quis senatori novo curiam monstrare velit."

<sup>2</sup> We shall hardly exaggerate in applying here what was said of a later period, Juv. *Sat.* iii. 62.:

"Syrus in Tiberim defluxit Orontes."

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 42. The franchise was also given as a reward for laying out money in improvements such as building. Gai. *Inst.* i. 33.; Thierry, *Gaule*, i. 75.

CHAP.  
XX.

composed of Gaulish mercenaries, was enlisted in the ranks of the commonwealth by communication of the same honourable boon.<sup>1</sup> It seems probable that Cæsar already meditated a much further extension of this salutary principle of incorporation. Sicily was selected to furnish an example of its gradual application, if it be true that a project for conferring upon the inhabitants of that island the inferior or Latin franchise, was found among the dictator's papers at his death.<sup>2</sup> He had no more confidential agent and counsellor than a Spanish provincial, Cornelius Balbus, by whom we may suppose such measures would be suggested or promoted. But the fate of Drusus must have been ever before the eyes of the Roman statesman, who sought to amalgamate the conquering with the conquered races. Cæsar shrank from or postponed the development of his own liberal views, and could only leave behind him some isolated precedents for a generous policy, instead of working out the principle himself.

Assignment  
of land to  
the veterans.

The assignment of lands to the veterans was a measure sanctioned by custom and repeated legal enactments. Cæsar, however, was more magnanimous in regard to this than Sulla. He despised the crafty policy of planting a cluster of military colonies in Italy, so as to form a camp of his own partizans within call of the central government. Some territories indeed, here and there, were assigned to the disbanded legionaries within the Peninsula, but they were neither extensive nor con-

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 24.;

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xiv. 12.

tiguous to one another.<sup>1</sup> There were no tracts of public domain left within the Alps for the state to distribute in public grants; there had been comparatively little confiscation of the enemy's estates; nor does it appear that the government entered into the market to buy lands for the purpose of so distributing them. Undoubtedly several of Pompeius's most obstinate adherents, the malignants of the oligarchic faction, had suffered spoliation on various pretences.<sup>2</sup> There were, we may suppose, many cases of particular hardship, some of gross injustice. But the voice of remonstrance was not unheeded. Cicero could plead for a friend or a client, and the cry he raised was directed rather against accidental oversights than intentional wrongs.<sup>3</sup> Respect was paid to the rights of the owners of lands, even where they lay most convenient for occupation, and the veterans were generally scattered over the face of the country, instead of being collected together, as under Sulla, in compact masses.<sup>4</sup> Not more than six insignificant colonies were settled in Italy, namely, at Bovianum, Veii, Aufidena, Casilinum, Calatia, and La-

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 38.; Dion. xlii. 54.

<sup>2</sup> Varro's villa at Casinum had been confiscated by Antonius (Cic. *Phil.* ii. 40.). Its owner had abused Cæsar's clemency by resorting to the Pompeian camp in Epirus after surrendering himself to the conqueror in Spain. Comp. Cic. *de Div.* i. 32., and Varr. *de R. R.* i. 4. Yet Cæsar extended his pardon to him a second time, and afterwards conferred further favours upon him.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* ix. 17., xiii. 8.

<sup>4</sup> Compare Tacitus's account of the ancient mode of assigning lands (*Ann.* xiv. 27.): "Olim universæ legiones deducebantur cum tribunis et centurionibus et sui cujusque ordinis militibus ut consensu et caritate rempublicam efficerent."



CHAP.  
XX.

nuvium.<sup>1</sup> But as many as eighty thousand Roman citizens were transplanted to found new cities beyond the sea. Carthage and Corinth were bidden to rise once more from their ruins.<sup>2</sup> It was a bold and generous enterprize to restore the two great maritime cities of the Western world, of both of which Rome had long shown herself so ignobly jealous.

Attempts  
to counter-  
act the in-  
crease of  
slave labour  
in Italy.

The settlement of the veterans on the soil of Italy added little directly to the population of the country, and the experience of similar plantations on recent occasions had assuredly proved that no numerous or robust progeny was likely to spring from a stock so worn-out and enervated.<sup>3</sup> But the centre of the empire had been more exhausted by the civil wars than any of the provinces. The rapid disappearance of the free population had been remarked with astonishment and dismay, at least from the time of the Gracchi. If the numbers actually maintained on the soil of the Peninsula had not diminished, it was abundantly certain that the independent native races had given way almost throughout its extent to a constant importation of slaves. The remedies to which Cæsar resorted would appear as frivolous as they were arbitrary,

<sup>1</sup> Panvin. *de Imp. Rom.* c. xi.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 42.; Plut. *Cæs.* 57.; Dion. xlii. 50.; Strabo, xvii. 3. 15.; Pausan. ii. 1, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Tac. *l. c.*: "Veterani . . . adscripti, non tamen infrequentiae locorum subvenere . . . Neque conjugii suscipiendis neque alendis liberis sueti orbas sine posteris domos relinquebant." This of course was not without exceptions. Horace speaks of "Pueri magnis e centurionibus orti" (*Sat.* i. vi. 74.), the rustic descendants of these veteran colonists, and Tacitus gives a hint of the same kind (*Ann.* iii. 75.): "Ateius . . . avo centurione Sullano."

were we not allowed to surmise that they were no more than the first imperfect outlines of a more comprehensive scheme. He prohibited all citizens between the age of twenty and forty from remaining abroad more than three years together, while, as a matter of state policy, he placed more special restrictions upon the movements of the youths of senatorial families. He required also that the owners of herds and flocks, to the maintenance of which large tracts of Italy were exclusively devoted, should employ free labour to the extent of at least one-third of the whole.<sup>1</sup> Such laws could only be executed constantly under the vigilant superintendence of a sovereign ruler. They fell in fact into immediate disuse, or rather were never acted upon at all. They served no other purpose at the time but to evince Cæsar's perception of one of the fatal tendencies of the age, to which the eyes of most statesmen of the day were already open. In one particular he counteracted a certain amount of good which his rival had unconsciously promoted. Pompeius had distributed corn without making strict inquiry into the claims of the recipients to citizenship. This was found indirectly to encourage the manumission of slaves, who, receiving thereupon a share of the public largess, became less onerous to their masters as free labourers than they had been in their former capacity.<sup>2</sup> This effect, as far as it went, was doubtless checked by Cæsar's fiscal severity. But in

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 42. This law was merely the revival of an ancient enactment with the same view. Appian. *B. C.* i. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xxxix. 24.

CHAP.  
XX.

fact the great cause which operated to stimulate the increase of slave-labour was the burden of the military conscription, which fell upon the free classes alone. This was perceived by Cæsar's successors in the supreme power, but was overlooked apparently by himself.

The jus  
trium li-  
berorum.

Another series of enactments, however, with a similar view, had a very different fortune. The privileges which the dictator assigned to paternity became the basis of much subsequent legislation, and established certain principles in Roman jurisprudence from which it never afterwards departed. The relative importance which was attached to the population of different portions of the empire was shown by a graduated scale. The father of a family of three legitimate children born at Rome, of four in Italy, or of five in the provinces, enjoyed exemption from certain personal charges.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar knew, it seems, the weakness of either sex. If he encouraged the paternal instincts by the boon of immunity from taxation, he flattered those of the other parent by an appeal to female vanity. The proudest of the ancient matrons had boasted that her children were her only jewels; but the mothers of the modern Gracchi might glory in the special privilege of riding in litters, dressing in purple, and wearing collars of pearls.<sup>2</sup>

The judi-  
cia confined  
to the se-

In providing for the due execution of justice and the security of the commonwealth, Cæsar was

<sup>1</sup> Aulus Gellius (ii. 15.) mentions cases in which paternity and the number of children gave precedence.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 43.; Euseb. *Chron.* a. 1972, referred to by Dureau de la Malle, ii. 240.



compelled, as dictator, to reverse in some instances the policy which his party had maintained. He restricted the orders of citizens, from which the judges were to be chosen, to the senators and knights; thus excluding the most popular of the classes to which that privilege had been previously extended, that of the ærarian tribunes.<sup>1</sup> Whatever were the precise alterations which he effected in the law of treason, they seem, at least, to have lain in the direction of greater strictness and severity. The same was undoubtedly the case in his enactments against other crimes of violence, to which the law had hitherto shown the most vicious leniency. Even when blood was shed, as in a party scuffle by Milo, the Roman citizen claimed the privilege of withdrawing into banishment before trial. The lawless excesses into which faction was so constantly rushing, made this privilege a very popular one. But Cæsar, though he did not venture entirely to abrogate it, went so far as to mulct the culprit of half his property, and, in the most heinous cases, to confiscate the whole.

The settlement of the veterans on the land averted that which is the great difficulty governments generally have to contend against on the restoration of peace after a long war. There were no disbanded soldiers left to roam about the country, unaccustomed to labour, and corrupted in morals. The lawlessness of the times was, at least, not aggravated by this fertile element of mischief. Nevertheless, the effect of the licence of civil wars must have been to increase frightfully the insecurity of

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 41, 42.

CHAP.  
XX.

person and property. The institution of slavery was a temptation to at least one odious crime, of which modern times have little experience, that of kidnapping. The factories and secluded estates of the great proprietors were so many prisons where freemen might be detained in galling servitude without the possibility of making their injuries known. Of the prevalence and publicity of assassination some idea may be formed from a single allusion in the literature of the time. Didactic writers, it must be observed, were accustomed to throw their disquisitions into the form of dialogues; and it was generally contrived that, in each division of the work, a conversation of this kind should be brought to a conclusion. It was some exercise of ingenuity to devise easy and natural means of breaking up these supposed meetings of friends for philosophical discussion. In the first book of Varro's treatise on Husbandry, the interlocutors of the dialogue meet in the Temple of Tellus. When they have said as much as the author thinks fit, he finds no more opportune means of dissolving the party, than the sudden announcement of the priest's attendant, that his master has just been killed by an assassin in a public place. He comes to invite them to assist at the obsequies on the morrow. They express themselves pleased with his courteous attention, content themselves with wafting a sigh to the uncertainty of human life in the centre of Roman civilization, and so retire to their homes.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Varro, *R. R.* i. 69. : "Cum hæc diceret Stolo, venit libertus Ædi-

Another salutary though unpopular reform was the dissolution of the *collegia* or combinations, which held so much sway in the capital, over-awing the independence of the judges, and trampling upon the execution of the laws. Cæsar herein did tardy justice to the principles of the party which he had spent his life in combating, and overthrew the corner-stone of the licentious legislation of Clodius. In abolishing these political clubs, however, he spared the original trade-guilds, upon the model of which they had been formed. An exception was also made in favour of the Jewish residents in the city, who were permitted to form an organization among themselves for social and religious purposes.<sup>1</sup> The feelings of that people had been peculiarly outraged by the profanation Pompeius had inflicted upon their temple. Cæsar, on the contrary, they were disposed to regard as their avenger, and, during his campaign in Egypt, they had shown themselves remarkably zealous in his service. In return he accorded to them various

tumi ad nos flens, et rogat ut ignoscamus quod simus retenti, et ut ei in funus postridie prodeamus. Omnes consurgimus ac simul exclamamus, Quid? in funus? quod funus? quid est factum? Ille flens narrat ab nescio quo percussus cultello concidisse, quem qui esset, animadvertere in turba non potuisse; sed tantummodo exaudisse vocem, perperam fecisse. Ipse cum patronum domum sustulisset, et pueros dimisisset ut medicum requirerent ac mature adducerent, quod potius illud administrasset quam ad nos venisset æquum sibi esse ignosci. Nec si eum servare non potuisset quin non multo post animam efflaret, tamen putare se recte fecisse. Non moleste ferentes descendimus de æde, et de casu humano magis querentes quam admirantes id Romæ factum, discedimus omnes." This work is assigned by Schneider (*Comment. de Vit. M. Ter. Varronis in Script. R. R. i. 225.*) to the year A.U. 717, only eight or nine years after Cæsar's legislation.

<sup>1</sup> Joseph. *Antiq.* xiv. 10. 8.



CHAP.  
XX.

privileges, remitting, among other things, the tribute of the seventh or Sabbatical year, in which they made it a point of conscience neither to sow nor to reap.<sup>1</sup>

Project of a  
complete  
code of laws.

The measures of reform which have been thus far enumerated, refer, for the most part, to the solution of immediate practical difficulties. In the removal of actual and pressing evils, Cæsar's movements were rapid and decisive, though his enactments were little more than the repetition of older experiments. On the other hand, when he had leisure to look further into the future, and to meditate schemes for the development of a new system of administration, his views, as far as we are enabled to trace them, were more liberal and original; but the execution of them was unfortunately postponed to pressing necessities. To contemplate the empire as one complete whole, to sweep away anomalous usages and traditions, and organize it under a single uniform system of administration, was a conception worthy of the greatest and most powerful of Roman statesmen. But to make any real progress in so vast a scheme would have required at least the greater part of one life; one or two vague indications of its conception, hastily struck out in the course of a few months of feverish excitement, are hardly enough perhaps to justify us in attributing to their author any fixed purpose in this respect, or maturity of view. Cæsar only lived long enough to intimate his noble design of reducing to one harmonious code of laws the inconsistent decisions of preceding centu-

<sup>1</sup> Joseph. *Antiq.* xiv. 10. 6.

ries.<sup>1</sup> The science of the law was a mystery which the nobles had retained in their own power. They had claimed to be its sole authorized expositors until its technicalities were divulged by a treacherous partizan. During the last century, however, though the veil had been in a great measure withdrawn, the whole system had been so entangled by conflicting precedents and the independent edicts set forth by the prætors, as to present a labyrinth of vexatious confusion. Cicero, whose natural good sense appears in nothing more clearly than in his contempt for the pedantry of the jurisconsults of his day, had conceived the idea of reducing to form and principle the most anomalous of the sciences. A treatise on this subject, even by such a master, might easily be forgotten after the reform it advocated had been actually effected; but the work in which Cicero first paved the way for this beneficent undertaking seems to have survived, though known perhaps only to the learned, for some centuries after the first remodelling of the Roman law.<sup>2</sup> The glory of effecting this reform was not reserved for Cæsar; he could only point out to the succeeding generation the importance of the undertaking, as a bold step in the direction of administrative uniformity.

Precisely the same may be said of another project which the Roman people owed to this great creative genius. Cæsar proposed to execute a

Of a complete map of the empire.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 44.: "Destinabat . . . jus civile ad certum modum redigere, atque ex immensa diffusaque legum copia optima quæque et necessaria in paucissimos conferre libros."

<sup>2</sup> This work of Cicero is referred to by Aulus Gellius, i. 22.

CHAP.  
XX.

complete map of the empire from actual survey.<sup>1</sup> He divided the whole extent of the Roman world into four portions, and appointed men of approved science as commissioners to examine them personally throughout. The work was to be executed in the most minute manner. The Roman land-surveyors had long been familiar with the technical processes by which the inequalities of natural limits are duly measured and registered. Throughout Italy and in many of the provinces every estate was elaborately marked out on the surface of the soil, and its extent and configuration inscribed on tablets of brass and preserved with scrupulous care.<sup>2</sup> The sages of Greece had begun also to apply the knowledge of astronomy to the measurement of the globe. The age was ripe for a great achievement in the science of geography, and the systematic way in which it was carried out, together with the long period of thirty-two years which was devoted to it, is a guarantee for the substantial results of this magnificent undertaking.<sup>3</sup>

Establishment of the first public library.

One of the brightest features in the dictator's character was his genuine and unaffected love of literature. He was not only distinguished himself as an orator, a grammarian, an historian, and even an astronomer; he was also attached to literary

<sup>1</sup> We obtain our knowledge of this fact from the preface to the *Cosmographia* of Æthicus, a writer of the fourth century. The measurement was begun B. C. 44.

<sup>2</sup> Consult on this subject Dureau de la Malle, *Econ. Pol. des Romains*, i. 166—207.

<sup>3</sup> It may be conjectured that the chart of the world which M. Agrippa published, and which is referred to under his name by Pliny (*H. N.* lii. 3.), was in fact the completed undertaking of Cæsar's commissioners.



men and enjoyed their society. The institution of a library, given freely to the public, was a novelty in the history of the world<sup>1</sup>; and though the books were collected by Asinius Pollio, and plundered probably from the provinces, yet it is to Cæsar that their liberal destination is attributed. He paid a graceful compliment to literature, which should be of no political party, by assigning to the veteran antiquarian Varro, the most learned of the Romans, the care of this noble institution.

The reform of the calendar was a vigorous and well-timed effort for the removal of a great practical abuse.<sup>2</sup> The Roman year, even before the time of Cæsar, ought to have equalled, on the average, three hundred and sixty-five days and six hours; so near had the astronomers even of the period assigned to the reign of Numa already arrived to the real length of the earth's revolution round the sun. This year had been calculated on a basis of three hundred and fifty-four days, with the intercalation of a month of twenty-two and twenty-three days alternately every second year; but another day had been added to the three hundred and fifty-four to make an odd or fortunate number, and, to compensate for this superfluous day, the number of intercalations was proportionally dimi-

Confusion  
of the Ro-  
man ca-  
lendar.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 44.; Plin. *H. N.* vii. 31.: "In bibliotheca quæ prima in orbe ab Asinio Pollione ex manubiis publicata Romæ est." The first Alexandrian library, though open to the public, was the private property of the king. So was Lucullus's a private collection. Plut. *Lucull.* 42.

<sup>2</sup> Ideler, *Handb. der Mathem. und Techn. Chronologie*, ii. 117. There is some discrepancy in the most modern observations of the precise length of the solar year.

CHAP.  
XX.

nished by a very intricate process.<sup>1</sup> The simplicity of the original arrangement being thus violated, great carelessness had soon prevailed in making the requisite corrections. In course of time the pontiffs, to whose superior knowledge the guardianship of the national calendar had been entrusted, had shrouded their science in a veil of religious mystery, and began to turn it to political or private purposes. They commanded the intercalation of a month arbitrarily<sup>2</sup>, when it suited them to favour some partizan who desired the extension of his year of office, or the postponement of the day on which his debts should become due.<sup>3</sup> They abstained from the requisite insertion, at the instance of some provincial governor who was anxious to hasten his return to the enjoyments of the capital.<sup>4</sup> This control over the length of the civil year, as well as the power of proclaiming the days on which business might or might not be transacted, had become an engine of state in the hands of the oligarchical government with which the sacerdotal functionaries were for the most part politically connected. Cæsar indeed had broken down in his own person the barrier which had been systematically raised against the intrusion of the opposite party into this body. The supreme pontificate which he enjoyed, gave him the legitimate means

<sup>1</sup> Macrob. *Sat.* i. 13.; Censorin. *de Die Natal.* 20.

<sup>2</sup> Censorin. *l. c.*; Plut. *Cæs.* 59.

<sup>3</sup> Censor. *l. c.*; Macrob. *Sat.* i. 14.; Ammian. xxvi. 1.; Solin. 1.

<sup>4</sup> As Cicero, for instance, in his government of Cilicia. He writes to his friends at Rome to entreat them to hinder the pontiffs from intercalating in that year, and so protracting his term of absence (*Ad Att.* v. 9., *ad Div.* vii 2, viii. 6.).

of working this instrument for his own advantage. But he felt the extreme inconvenience which had latterly resulted from its abuse. The grievance had indeed become intolerable. In the distracted state of public affairs, and amidst conflicting personal interests, the pontiffs had abstained from making any intercalation since the year of the city 702, and had even then left the civil calendar some weeks in advance of the real time. From that time each year had reckoned only three hundred and fifty-five days, and the civil equinox had got eighty days in advance of the astronomical. The consuls, accordingly, who entered on their office on the 1st of January of the year 708 of the city, really commenced their functions on the 13th October, B. C. 47, that is, eighteen days after the astronomical equinox. The confusion which resulted from such a state of things may be easily imagined. The Roman seasons were marked by appropriate festivals assigned to certain fixed days, and associated with the religious worship of the people. At the period of harvest and vintage, for instance, certain offerings were to be made and certain divinities thereby propitiated.<sup>1</sup> The husbandman was obliged to reject the use of the calendar altogether, and to depend upon his own rude observations of the rising and setting of the constellations.

Cæsar had acquired a competent knowledge of the science of astronomy, in which the duties of his office as supreme pontiff gave him a particular in-

Amount of  
error in the  
compu-  
tation of  
time.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 40.: "Ut neque messium feriæ æstati neque vindemiarum autumnò competerent."



CHAP.  
XX.

terest. He composed himself a treatise upon the subject, which long retained its value as a technical exposition.<sup>1</sup> The astronomers of Alexandria were considered the most expert of their time, and with them he had made acquaintance during his brief and busy sojourn in the palace of the Ptolemies. But if the Alexandrians made their year to consist of three hundred and sixty-five days, without any intercalation<sup>2</sup>, their error was out of all proportion greater than that of the original calendar of Numa. It is more probable that Cæsar took this latter as the basis of his own calculations. He was not unaware that the period of three hundred and sixty-five days and six hours exceeds, in a slight degree, the length of the solar year. The astronomer Hipparchus<sup>3</sup> had calculated this excess as constant at four minutes and forty-eight seconds, and Cæsar, or his adviser Sosigenes, was no doubt acquainted with this result. But if the excess were really constant and not greater than this, it would make the difference of only one day in three hundred years, and this amount of error he may have been contented to neglect. In fact, however, the more accurate observations of the moderns have ascertained that the excess of the Julian year over the solar, is a progressively diminishing one; that, at the present time, it amounts to almost

<sup>1</sup> Macrob. *Saturn.* i. 16., where the writer asserts also that Cæsar derived his knowledge from the Egyptians.

<sup>2</sup> Censor. 18.: "Nam eorum annus civilis solos habet dies cccclxv sine ullo intercalari." Ideler shows that the Egyptians knew of the increment of six hours, but did not introduce it into their civil year till B. C. 30. Ideler, ii. 118.

<sup>3</sup> B. C. 160, or thereabouts. See Ideler, *l. c.*

11<sup>m</sup> 12<sup>s</sup>, while at the commencement of the Julian era it was as much as 11<sup>m</sup> 22<sup>s</sup>. It appears, then, on taking the average excess between that era and the present time, that the error would really amount to as much as one day in each hundred and thirty years. Cæsar, however, was satisfied with assigning to each year the average of three hundred and sixty-five days and a quarter, by the regular intercalation of one day in every fourth year. The consequence was that the sum of the trifling increments of each successive revolution of this period had occasioned a loss of nearly three days at the date of the council of Nice, A. D. 325. Accordingly, in that year the solar equinox was found to fall not on the 23rd of March, as in 45 B. C., but on the 20th. When the Romish calendar was corrected by Pope Gregory XIII. in A. D. 1582, it had got forward as much as thirteen days. He proceeded to cut off ten of these superfluous days, and so restored the calendar to its position at the date of the council of Nice. This alteration has since been adopted throughout the Protestant states of Europe, with an adequate provision against the future accumulation of error; but there still remains a difference of about three days between the civil and the astronomical equinox.

The basis of Cæsar's reform was that the commencement of the new era should coincide with the first new moon after the shortest day. In order to make the year of the city 709 thus begin, ninety days required to be added to the current year. In the first place an intercalary month of twenty-three days was inserted in its proper place between the

Cæsar's  
reform of  
the ca-  
lendar.

CHAP.  
XX.

The Julian  
era, Jan. 1.  
A. U. 709.  
B. C. 45.

23rd and 24th of February<sup>1</sup>, and at the end of November two new months were added, comprehending sixty-seven days, or rather, as we may conjecture, the months comprised twenty-nine and thirty one days respectively, and the seven supplemental days were counted separately. The shortest day of the year 46 B. C. was the 24th of December, and the first new moon fell on the eighth day succeeding, from which accordingly the new era received its date.<sup>2</sup> The period which was marked by this series of alterations received vulgarly the appellation of "the year of confusion;" "the last year of confusion" was the term which a writer of a late date more significantly applied to it.<sup>3</sup> In a political as well as a social point of view it must have been hailed by the mass of the people as the commencement of a new era of steady and reasonable government. Even the discontented could not raise the cry so popular in England on the occasion of the reformation of our own calendar in the last century, "Give us back our eleven days." Cæsar, on the contrary, had given them ninety. The jests which they did level at this wholesome enactment were miserably pointless. When some one observed to Cicero, "To-morrow Lyra rises," "Yes," he replied, "by command."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In our ecclesiastical calendar the intercalary day of leap-year is still inserted at this place.

<sup>2</sup> Ideler, ii. 122.; Servius on *Æn.* vii 720.: "Proprie sol novus est octavo Calend. Januariæ."

<sup>3</sup> Macrob. *Sat.* i. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 59.: *ναὶ ἐκ διατάγματος*. The edict, in fact, reconstituted the civil limits of the seasons according to certain phenomena of the heavens. Thus an ancient calendar remarks on Aug. 11.: "Fi-



After all, the most salutary of the dictator's reforms were embittered to the minds of the noblest of the Romans by the compulsion with which they were attended. Both Cæsar and his familiar friends had been accustomed to express openly their contempt for the republic as a name only, and not a reality, a title without form or substance.<sup>1</sup> The name of King was alone wanting to complete the actual tyranny which they saw gradually closing around them. The despot made little show of veiling the arbitrary nature of his proceedings. He caused, indeed, the decrees he issued from the solitude of his own chamber to be subscribed with the names of the senators who were supposed to have assisted in his councils<sup>2</sup>; but so flagrant an imposition only added insult to the injury. Nothing struck the Romans more forcibly with its assumption of regal state than the difficulty of access to the great man. Accustomed as the nobles were to the most perfect external equality, and the easiest intercourse among each other, their indignation rose high when they found their approach to the dictator barred by a crowd of attendants, or impeded by ceremonious formalities.<sup>3</sup> In this, how-

CHAP.  
XX.

The dictator begins to assume regal state.

*dicula occasu suo autumnum inchoat Cæsari.*" We can detect from this the way in which Cicero's jest may possibly have been spoiled by the mistake of the reporter.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 77.; comp. Cic. *ad Att.* x. 4., *ad Div.* ix. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* ix. 15. He alludes, perhaps, to a single instance of the kind. Dion attests that Cæsar generally required the sanction of a council selected from the senate, or of the whole body to his decrees (xliii. 27.).

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* vi. 13.: "*Magnis occupationibus ejus, a quo omnia petuntur, aditus ad eum difficiliore fuerunt*" (comp. vi. 14., iv. 57.). Cæsar had expressed his sense of the unpopularity he incurred from

CHAP.  
XX.Cleopatra  
visits Rome.

ever, there may have been no affectation on his part; he felt the unpopularity of such a position, and lamented the soreness which it engendered towards him. But the enormous pressure of business, however rapid was his despatch of it, and in this respect he had an extraordinary facility, made it necessary to restrict the times and means of claiming his attention. Thus it was that the first rudiments of an Oriental court began to rise in the centre of the Western republics. The colours of this imitation of a hateful original were heightened by the demeanour of Cleopatra, who followed her lover to Rome at his invitation.<sup>1</sup> She came with the younger Ptolemæus, who now shared her throne, and her ostensible object was to negotiate a treaty between her kingdom and the commonwealth. While the Egyptian nation was formally admitted to the friendship and alliance of Rome, its sovereign was lodged in Cæsar's villa on the other side of the Tiber, and the statue of the most fascinating of women was erected in the temple of the Goddess of Love and Beauty.<sup>2</sup> The connexion which subsisted between her and the dictator was unblushingly avowed. Public opinion demanded no concessions to its delicacy; the feelings of the injured Calpurnia had been blunted by repeated outrage, and Cleopatra was encouraged to proclaim openly that her child Cæsarion was the son of her Roman

the necessary inconvenience he caused his friends: "Ego dubitem quin summo in odio sim quum M. Cicero sedeat, nec suo commodo me convenire possit?" Comp. *ad Att.* xiv. 1, 2.; Drumann, iii. 626.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 27.; Suet. *Jul.* 52.

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 102.

admirer. A tribune, named Helvius Cinna, ventured, it is said, to assert among his friends that he was prepared to propose a law, with the dictator's sanction, to enable him to marry more wives than one, for the sake of progeny, and to disregard in his choice the legitimate qualification of Roman descent.<sup>1</sup> The Romans, however, were spared this last insult to their prejudices. The Queen of Egypt felt bitterly the scorn with which she was popularly regarded as the representative of an effeminate and licentious people.<sup>2</sup> It is not improbable that she employed her fatal influence to withdraw her lover from the Roman capital, and urged him to schemes of Oriental conquest to bring him more completely within her toils. In the meanwhile the haughtiness of her demeanour corresponded with the splendid anticipations in which she indulged.<sup>3</sup> She held a court in the suburbs of the city, at which the adherents of the dictator's policy were not the only attendants. Even his opponents and concealed enemies were glad to bask in the sunshine of her

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *l. c.*; comp. Dion. xlv. 7. But the story is a confused one. The words of Suetonius ("Cinna . . . confessus est, habuisse se legem," &c.) imply that the statement was made after Cæsar's death, as was the case with regard to many other schemes ascribed to him: but the same writer also tells us (c. 85.) that Helvius Cinna was murdered in the fury of the mob immediately after the funeral.

<sup>2</sup> The sensuality of Canopus was proverbial. Comp. Propert. iii. 11. 39.:

"Incesti meretrix regina Canopi."

Juvenal. vi. 84.:

"Prodigia et mores Urbis damnante Canopo."

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xv. 15.: "Superbiam ipsius Reginæ, quum esset trans Tiberim in hortis, commemorare sine maximo dolore non possum."



CHAP.  
XX.

smiles. Cicero himself, the moralist and the patriot, was not the last to submit to the blandishments of the sorceress. He was still unable to shake off his apprehensions of an impending proscription, and with all his professions of personal purity he was not scrupulous as to the character of those whose favour or assistance he required. He had availed himself of the infidelity of a Fulvia; he now flattered the vanity of a Cleopatra. The desire to obtain some precious manuscripts and works of art from Alexandria was the excuse he made for presenting himself in her hall of reception.<sup>1</sup> The queen's behaviour to him was exceedingly gracious; she promised every thing he desired, and charged the grammarian Ammonius, who followed in her suite, to remind her of the engagement. But Cicero did not scruple at the same time to express himself with great bitterness against her, in his private correspondence, and seems anxious to assure Atticus that her agent Sara was only admitted once into his house. It is probable that Cleopatra arrived at Rome before Cæsar's expedition into Spain<sup>2</sup>, which interrupted and perhaps frustrated her intrigues. But she continued to reside there till after his death, as will appear in the sequel.

Adulation  
of the  
nobles.

The flattery of the nobles was, after all, pronounced in a louder strain than their discontent. Cæsar heard himself addressed daily in the senate with language of fulsome adulation. A crowd of parasites of the highest education and the most polished manners imparted grace to homage, and

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *l. c.*: "Quæ omnia erant φιλόλογα et dignitatis meæ."

<sup>2</sup> According to the order of events as related by Dion, see xliii. 27.

threw a charm over the most abject obsequiousness. Of all the attributes of greatness which were lavishly ascribed to the dictator, there was none more celebrated by his courtiers than his clemency. M. Marcellus had retired from the field of Pharsalia to Mytilene, and dared not even solicit the favour of the conqueror, whom his fatal insolence to the Transpadanes had offended beyond the hope of pardon. But his friends had learned not to despair. They plied Cæsar with piteous appeals to his generosity. C. Marcellus, the cousin of the exile, prostrated himself at his feet, and a crowd of the noblest of the Romans followed his example. The question of his recall was abandoned to the decision of the senate itself. The oration which Cicero delivered was a laboured panegyric upon Cæsar; the anticipated pardon of Marcellus was exalted above the greatest of his actions; and the dictator was bid to rest secure in the gratitude of the nobles, and in the firm conviction of the nation that his life was indispensable for the maintenance of order.<sup>1</sup> Marcellus was accordingly invited to return to his country; but on his way he fell under the dagger of an assassin at Athens. The deed was undoubtedly the effect of some private enmity, but it did not fail to be for some time currently ascribed to the instigation of the man who had forgiven him.

<sup>1</sup> The genuineness of the *Oratio pro Marcello* has been abandoned without due consideration, in my judgment, by many modern critics. The arguments against it seem to me at least inconclusive, and I should expect the work of a rhetorician composed after the event which confuted so many of its prognostications, to betray some consciousness of the impending catastrophe.

CHAP.  
XX.

Cicero made a speech some months afterwards in favour of Ligarius, against whom, on account of the pertinacity of his opposition, the dictator was said to be peculiarly exasperated. In this address, the orator adopted undoubtedly a bolder tone than appears in the oration for Marcellus. But, as Cæsar's character became better known, the most timid summoned courage to affect freedom of speech in his presence. The fear of proscription had vanished, and with it much of the breathless subservience of the proud Roman nobility.

The general feeling of the nation favourable to Cæsar's power.

Cæsar indeed felt the ground firm beneath his feet. He was conscious that the real strength of the nation was with him. The nobles might intrigue against him, and the mob of the city might be ready to sell itself to any restless adventurer; but the good sense of the middle class of Rome, backed by the general sympathy of the Italians and the enthusiastic veneration of the provinces, concurred to secure the foundations of his power. It was to these classes only that he felt himself responsible for the exercise of his delegated authority. Accordingly, he disbanded his veterans, or dispatched the legions to distant quarters. He even dismissed a band of Spanish auxiliaries whom he had retained about him for a time as a chosen body-guard.<sup>1</sup> When his personal friends among the senators and knights offered to arm a select corps of their own number, to watch over the safety of his person, he waived the honour of their services, in the confident assurance that the state had more need of him than he of the state.<sup>2</sup> And

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 86.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 109.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 57.



such was the impression of its general beneficence which his administration had created in almost every quarter, that he might fully depend upon it to protect him at least from any public enemy. No precaution he well knew could guarantee his life from the insidious attack of the private assassin: but he declared that it was at any time better to die than to live always in apprehension of dying.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *l. c.* ; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 108. : ἀμφὶ δὲ αὐτῷ στρατιωτικὸν οὐκ ἦν, οὐ γὰρ δορυφόροις ἠρέσκετο, τῇ δὲ τῆς ἡγεμονίας ὑπερησία μόνῃ.

## CHAP. XXI.

TRANQUILLITY OF ROME DURING CÆSAR'S ABSENCE IN SPAIN.

—CHARACTER OF HIS PRINCIPAL FRIENDS: BALBUS, OPIIUS, MATIUS, HIRTIUS.—THEIR EPICUREAN PRINCIPLES.—CÆSAR HIMSELF A FREE THINKER, BUT ADDICTED TO SUPERSTITION.—HIS RETURN TO ROME, AND LAST TRIUMPH.—HARSH TREATMENT OF LABERIUS.—HONOURS AND DIGNITIES SHOWERED UPON CÆSAR.—HE RECEIVES THE APPELLATION OF PATER PATRIÆ, AND THE PRÆNOMEN IMPERATORIS: IS ELECTED CONSUL FOR TEN YEARS, AND CREATED DICTATOR FOR LIFE, ETC.—HIS MAGNIFICENT SCHEMES FOR WORKS OF PUBLIC UTILITY.—HE MANIFESTS SYMPTOMS OF INTOLERABLE PRIDE.—CÆSAR'S URBANITY OF CHARACTER.—HE VISITS CICERO AT HIS VILLA.—CICERO EXHORTS HIM TO MAKE WAR ON THE PARTHIANS.—HE PREPARES TO SET OUT ON AN EXPEDITION OF FOREIGN CONQUEST, AND APPOINTS MAGISTRATES FOR THE INTERVAL OF HIS INTENDED ABSENCE.—CÆSAR APPEARS TO COVET THE TITLE OF KING.—THE PEOPLE EXPRESS THEIR DISAPPROBATION.—HE REFUSES THE DIadem.—A CONSPIRACY IS FORMED AGAINST HIS LIFE BY MEN OF BOTH PARTIES IN THE STATE.—THEY PLACE BRUTUS AT THEIR HEAD.—ASSASSINATION OF CÆSAR ON THE IDES OF MARCH, BENEATH THE STATUE OF POMPEIUS (A.U. 709—MARCH 710. B.C. 45, 44.).

CHAP.  
XXI.

---

State of  
Rome  
during  
Cæsar's ab-  
sence in  
Spain.

THE prudent mildness with which the government was administered during Cæsar's absence in Spain had maintained perfect tranquillity in Rome during a period of unusual anxiety. At the beginning of the year Cæsar had been elected consul for the fourth time, and without a colleague. The old republican office of prætor had been also dis-

pensed with. Lepidus, as master of the horse to the dictator, convened the senate, and presided, with the assistance of six or eight prefects, over the administration of affairs in the city: the higher magistracies were all in abeyance, excepting those of the tribunes of the people and the ædiles. Cæsar had prudently taken with him Dolabella, and had invited Antonius also to accompany him. But the latter smarted under the blow his arrogance and cupidity had recently received from the dictator, and refused to leave Italy in his train.<sup>1</sup> It does not appear whether he was entrusted with a share in the government, but his mere presence in Rome was enough to keep alive the apprehensions of the most timid of the malcontents, who still foreboded that Cæsar's final triumph in Spain would be the signal for dropping the mask of clemency, and plunging into a career of confiscation and blood.

Resentment  
of Antonius  
against him.

On mature reflection, however, Antonius seems to have felt that it would be imprudent to indulge in animosity towards his patron, from whose generosity he was anxious to obtain the honour of the consulship.<sup>2</sup> He left Rome with the intention of overtaking him. Taking the route of Gaul, he did not proceed further than Narbo, from whence, pleading the insecurity of the roads, he suddenly returned.<sup>3</sup> It was now confidently surmised by Cicero that he came with authority to execute the

<sup>1</sup> Antonius abstained from taking part in Cæsar's campaigns either in Africa or Spain. Plut. *Anton.* 10.; Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 29.: "Tam bonus gladiator rudem tam cito accepisti?"

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 30.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *l. c.*



CHAP.  
XXI.

long delayed vengeance of the conqueror.<sup>1</sup> The fact seems to have been simply that having lately taken to wife the notorious Fulvia, who had been left a widow successively by Clodius and Curio, he thus abridged his absence out of passion or jealousy.<sup>2</sup> It is possible that he may have had some apprehensions lest the government should take advantage of his absence to restore to their owners, or sell for the benefit of the state, the estates of the unfortunate Pompeians, which he had contrived to grasp.<sup>3</sup> Another rumour arose that he had heard in Gaul of Cæsar's defeat and death, and of the impending restoration of the republican party.

The dictator's  
personal  
friends :  
Lepidus.

Though Lepidus was nominally at the head of the administration of affairs, it would seem that his influence was less regarded than those of others among his colleagues. The wealth and dignity of his family, his descent from the chief who had been the first to attempt the overthrow of the Sullan ascendancy, the favour which his brother, Æmilius Paullus, had acquired with Cæsar by his well-timed defection from the ranks of the Pompeians, had all contributed to raise him nominally to the first place among the dictator's adherents, and elevated him eventually to a position of still greater eminence. But it was through the channel of private friendship that the goodwill of the sovereign of the Roman world was to be conciliated, and it was those who enjoyed his personal intimacy and confidence who were felt to be most influential in the distri-

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 31., *ad Att.* xii. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xii. 18.

bution of honours and favours. It may serve to illustrate the character of the central figure itself if we pass rapidly in review the personages who were grouped most closely around him.

Of these the most conspicuous in the history of the times was C. Asinius Pollio, who had first brought himself into notice by assailing the tribune C. Cato for his violent proceedings in favour of the senate. He assumed this attitude perhaps in the first instance for the sake of notoriety only; but from that moment he attached himself more and more closely to Cæsar. He attended the proconsul in some of his campaigns in Gaul, and formed one of the scanty band of devoted followers with which he crossed the Rubicon. When Cæsar had so rapidly traversed and conquered Italy, he sent Pollio into Sicily and Africa as lieutenant to Curio. It was under his command that the remnant of that unfortunate expedition had been conveyed home. Throughout the campaigns of Epirus and Thessaly he served by the side of his patron, and was present at the battle of Pharsalia. His fidelity and talents were next charged with the administration of Cæsar's government in Rome, in which he had the merit of opposing Dolabella's seditious movement.<sup>1</sup> He served again in a military capacity both in Africa and Spain. Pollio was one of the most finished specimens of the man of business and literature combined. His great work on the history of his own times was the result of the leisure of his latter years. He strode with a bold and firm step over the volcanic ashes of the civil

C. Asinius  
Pollio.

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Anton.* 9.

CHAP.  
XXI.

wars.<sup>1</sup> Critical in his judgment and impartial in his sentiments, he reflected no less severely on the misrepresentations of Cæsar's personal narrative, than on the exaggerations of Cicero's invectives. But in the most active period of his political and military career he distinguished himself as an accomplished orator, and put forward no mean pretensions to poetical celebrity. The encomiums of Catullus and his youthful admirer Horace represent his character to us in an amiable light: but it was the amiableness of a practical eclectic, of one whose good-humoured selfishness found no difficulty in accommodating itself to the tempers and habits of men of very different principles.<sup>2</sup> His taste was refined and fastidious: the style even of Cicero and Livy did not escape his animadversions.<sup>3</sup> Subsequent critics represented his own as rough and jejune, formed, as it were, rather in the school of the Appii and Menenii than of his more polished Augustan contemporaries.<sup>4</sup>

C. Oppius.

If Pollio was a familiar associate of Cæsar, Oppius seems to have been one of the most confidential of

<sup>1</sup> Hor. *Od.* ii. 1. 3.:

“Incedis per ignes  
Suppositos cineri doloso.”

This work, which was in fact a history of the Civil Wars, commenced with the consulship of Afranius and Metellus, A. U. 694, that is, with the formation of the triumvirate:

“Motum ex Metello consule civicum.”

<sup>2</sup> His popularity in society may be estimated from the fact recorded of him that he was the first to introduce the practice of an author's reciting his own works to an audience of private acquaintance. Senec. *Controv.* iv. pref.

<sup>3</sup> Senec. *Suasor.* vi. vii.; Quintil. i. 5. 56., viii. 1. 3. He discovered *Patavinity*, or the provincialisms of Patavium, in the language of the great historian, who was born there.

<sup>4</sup> Tac. *Dial. de Orat.* 21.



his friends. It was to him, together with Balbus, that the dictator entrusted the management of his private affairs, and at a later period a volume of letters was preserved, in which he had corresponded with them in cypher, probably on matters of the most domestic and personal interest.<sup>1</sup> The high favour in which they stood with their patron induced Cicero to consult them, throughout the painful struggle he made to secure the conqueror's protection without attaching himself to his party. When the topics of his adulatory addresses were in their judgment ill-chosen, he consented to withdraw or remodel them accordingly. The character of Oppius seems to have been warm and affectionate. He wrote the lives of many distinguished Romans, and among them of some of his contemporaries, and even of Pompeius himself; but in these his partiality for Cæsar rendered him unworthy of confidence.<sup>2</sup> A pleasing anecdote is related of Cæsar surrendering to him, when he had fallen sick on a journey, the only room in the hut at which they were to rest for the night, while he took up his own lodging in the porch outside.<sup>3</sup> Such is the influence which a gentle and feminine nature often exerts over a sterner character. It seems probable that the counsels of Oppius confirmed Cæsar's natural inclination to make the mildest use of his power, and certainly he became the channel through whom assurances of pardon and favour were most generally conveyed.

L. Cornelius Balbus was a no less intimate associate of his great patron, but the genuineness of

L. Cornelius  
Balbus.

<sup>1</sup> Gell. xvii. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Pomp.* 10.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 17.; Suet. *Jul.* 72.

CHAP.  
XXI.

---

his attachment is not equally indisputable. His talents and industry were devoted through life to securing his own advancement and maintaining his personal safety, and his career proved a remarkable instance of worldly success. Balbus was by birth a provincial, of the town of Gades, in Spain. His fellow-citizens took the part of the republic against Sertorius, and it was thus that he found means of recommending himself to Pompeius. From the champion of the oligarchy he received the Roman franchise, and upon this foundation he built his fortunes. The prospects of advancement which it seemed to open induced him to remove to Rome, where he cultivated the favour of his first patron; but another star was rising in the firmament, and he did not neglect at the same time to attach himself to Cæsar. While the outward show of alliance between the rival leaders still subsisted, his new civic rights, invidiously impugned, gained the advocacy of Pompeius, Crassus, and Cicero. Cæsar, however, secured at last his entire devotion by confiding to him, in conjunction with Oppius, the management of his private concerns. The spoils of the Gallic war were thus dispensed through his hands, and he did not fail to profit by the opportunity to amass riches. At the same time the trust which he exercised at Rome enabled him to avoid siding with either party in the field, and he came to the councils of the conqueror with a judgment and temper undisturbed by the passions of the civil wars. His position in the court of the dictator now became highly influential, and the anxious

nobles vied with one another in soliciting his mediation.

CHAP.  
XXI.

But the most disinterested perhaps of all Cæsar's associates was C. Matius Calvena; for he alone abstained from taking part in public affairs, and derived neither wealth nor station from his friend's success. His natural predilections were probably on the side of the senate, but the ties of personal attachment were stronger with him than any political preference. He asserted the justice of Cæsar's claims in the most perilous crisis of his life, and persevered after his death in defending his memory against every detractor. Nor did he fail to use all his influence, which was justly considerable, in saving the conquered. The line of conduct pursued by one so honest and magnanimous is a strong proof that the most humane and reasonable men of the day, though they might scruple to put their own hands to the work of destruction, were satisfied that the safety of the commonwealth demanded the overthrow of aristocratic ascendancy.

C. Matius  
Calvena.

A. Hirtius held commands under Cæsar in the Gaulish campaigns, but it was apparently rather as a negotiator, or in a civil capacity, that he approved himself to his leader as a zealous and able partizan. His literary accomplishments, which doubtless contributed to raise him in his patron's estimation, are known to us by the last book of the Commentaries on the Gallic war, in which he appears as a cold but correct imitator of Cæsar's style. But it was to Hirtius also that Cæsar confided the task of replying to a work which Cicero published at this time in praise of Cato; and all the

A. Hirtius.



CHAP.  
XXI.

Epicurean  
tenets of  
Cæsar's  
friends: Vi-  
bius Pansa,  
C. Cassius.

traits we discover of his private character, his moderation, want of ambition, and habits of kindly intercourse with his political adversaries, seem to point him out as an opponent of the philosophical no less than the political sentiments of the renowned Stoic. Among the principal adherents of the usurper the tenets of Epicurus seem universally to have prevailed. Vibius Pansa, another of Cæsar's friends and admirers, was noted alike for his amiable temper and the fashionable indifference of his speculative creed; for at this time every man of education in Rome professed a creed, and felt himself obliged by the rules of good society to exhibit some consistency between it and his practice. Similar sentiments were maintained by C. Cassius, and no doubt it was the great principle of Epicureanism, its apathy on political subjects, which reconciled him so easily to the change of government. The rigid virtues of the Stoics had found little favour with a generation to which corruption and tergiversation had become so notoriously familiar. The sceptical schools of the Academy were too restless and argumentative for men to whom acquiescence in the irresistible march of events had assumed the form of a policy. But the dogmas of Epicurus, while they indulged political indifference and made time-serving respectable, were also easily distorted to cloak vice and voluptuousness: to disclaim the inference which so many of their professors drew from them in favour of licentiousness both of action and principle was the faint and hypocritical endeavour of a few sanctimonious pretenders. The spread of

such opinions was favoured by the social corruption of the times, and by the exigencies of the public crisis. The miseries of civil dissension had at last raised a general cry for peace at any price. Rome could bear the long exhaustion of her foreign wars without a murmur; for they brought her glory and lucre, and opened boundless prospects to her avarice or ambition. But the civil wars were destitute of every charm. The principles of the fashionable philosophy coincided with the longings of the multitude. It was to the men who could recommend these principles by the brilliancy of their personal accomplishments and amiableness of their tempers that the favour of Cæsar most naturally inclined. He loved the sleek in person and easy in disposition; the lean and eager-minded were those he instinctively feared.<sup>1</sup> The philosophy of the Garden had recently been raised in popularity and fashion by the most elaborate work that had ever yet issued from the study of a Roman sage. The great poem of Lucretius on the Nature of Things formed an era both in the literature and the social state of Rome. It was a noble work, with all its defects of feeling and argument, and its aim was noble without alloy. It opened a long career to the peaceful triumphs of thought, and every interest it excited was so much detracted from the domain of evil and sanguinary passions. The sublimest of the Roman poets sighs for rest from war as heartily as from the terrors of super-

<sup>1</sup> The well-known passage in Shakspeare's *Julius Cæsar* is adapted from Plutarch, *Anton.* 11.: μὴ δεδιέναι τοὺς παχεῖς τούτους καὶ κομήτας, ἀλλὰ τοὺς ὠχροὺς καὶ λεπτοὺς ἐκείνους.

CHAP.  
XXI

Caesar him-  
self a  
professed  
unbeliever.

stition. If he once only relaxes from his hapless abnegation of a superintending Providence, it is in his pathetic address to the goddess, power or principle, which associates all things in their appointed harmonies, and can alone effect the restoration of placid peace to his countrymen.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar himself professed without reserve the principles of the unbelievers. The supreme pontiff of the commonwealth, the head of the college whence issued the decrees which declared the will of the gods, as inferred from the signs of the heavens, the flight of birds and the entrails of victims, he made no scruple of asserting in the assembled senate that the immortality of the soul, the recognized foundation of all religion, was a vain chimera.<sup>2</sup> Nor did he hesitate to defy the omens which the priests were especially appointed to observe.<sup>3</sup> He decided to give battle at Munda in despite of the most adverse auspices, when the sacrificers assured him that no heart was found in the victim.<sup>4</sup> "I will have better omens when I choose," was the scornful saying with which he reassured his veterans on another similar occasion.<sup>5</sup> He was not deterred from engaging in his African campaign either by the fortunate name of his op-

<sup>1</sup> Lucret. i. 1—41.:

"Alma Venus . . .

. . . petens placidam Romanis, incluta, pacem."

<sup>2</sup> Sallust. *B. C.* 50.

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 59.: "Nec religione quidem ulla a quoquam incepto absterritus unquam vel retardatus est."

<sup>4</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 77.; comp. Polyæn. *Strateg.* viii. 23. 32. The same prodigy occurred a second time, and was equally disregarded. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 152.; Plin. *H. N.* xi. 71.

<sup>5</sup> Polyæn. *l. c.*



His addic-  
tion to su-  
perstition.

ponent Scipio, or by the unfavourable auspices which were studiously reported to him.<sup>1</sup> Yet Cæsar, free-thinker as he was, could not escape from the universal thralldom of superstition in which his contemporaries were held. We have seen him crawling on his knees up the steps of the Capitoline temple to appease the Nemesis which frowns upon human prosperity. When he stumbled at landing on the coast of Africa, he averted the evil omen with happy presence of mind, looking at the handful of soil he had grasped in his fall, and exclaiming, "Africa, thou art mine!"<sup>2</sup> In a man who was consistent in his incredulity this might be deemed a trick to impose on the soldiers' imagination; but it assumes another meaning in the mouth of one who never mounted a carriage without muttering a private charm. Before the battle of Pharsalia Cæsar had addressed a prayer to the gods whom he denied in the senate, and derided in the company of his literary friends. He appealed to the divine omens when he was about to pass the Rubicon.<sup>3</sup> He carried about with him in Africa a certain Cornelius Salutio, a man of no personal distinction, to neutralize, as he hoped, the good fortune of the Corneliæ in the opposite ranks.<sup>4</sup>

Cæsar's character is strongly contrasted with those of some later and spurious imitators by the gallant confidence with which he left his actions to be their own heralds, never deigning to anticipate by a single day the effect they were calculated

Rumours  
and antici-  
pations at  
Rome dur-  
ing Cæsar's  
absence in  
Spain.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 59.; Cic. *de Div.* ii. 24.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 32.

<sup>4</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 59.; Plut. *Cæs.* 52.; Dion. xlii. 57.

CHAP.  
XXI.

to produce upon his friends or enemies. In modern times it will hardly be credited that he allowed the capital to remain for months in ignorance of his proceedings in the Spanish campaign. Confident of ultimate success, he was not unwilling that some mystery should hang about the means and movements which conduced to it.<sup>1</sup> If he had any affectation about him, it was the noble one of concealing the details of his operations, and bursting suddenly upon the world with a victory when it was least expected. But he could depend upon the awe which his mere absence inspired. The rumour of a great disaster having overtaken him found only a few fond listeners; the great mass of the citizens remained spell-bound in their conviction of his good-fortune; and when the despatch at last arrived which announced the crowning victory of Munda, it was as if the sun had shone forth from an eclipse, and relieved them from anxiety without exciting their surprize.

Tidings of  
the victory  
of Munda  
arrive at  
Rome.

It was the eve of the Parilia, the anniversary of the foundation of the city.<sup>2</sup> A rude shepherds' festival, at which the ordinary precautions for the health of their sheep received a religious sanction, had gradually gathered round it the most solemn traditions of the Roman people. The walls of Rome had been cemented with blood. The stain of fratricide could never be entirely wiped away, and the conscience of the city was for ever haunted by

<sup>1</sup> Compare Lucan's illustration of his character (v. 670.):

“ Desint mihi busta, rogusque,  
Dum metuar semper, terraque expecter ab omni.”

<sup>2</sup> The Parilia, or Palilia, were celebrated on the 21st of April.

the recollection of its original guilt. The senate received the announcement of Cæsar's victory just in time to decree that the festival of the morrow should be celebrated with more than usual solemnity. The conqueror of his fellow-citizens, it declared, deserved the honours of another Romulus. Thus the second foundation of the city was laid, like the first, in brothers' blood.<sup>1</sup> A decree immediately followed to appoint a thanksgiving for fifty days. The year before Cæsar had been pronounced a demigod; now a statue was erected to him inscribed, "To the Invincible Deity," and placed in front of the temple of Quirinus, the venerable founder of the Roman nation. Cæsar had extended the limits of the empire both in Gaul and Africa, and to this, the highest of all public services, a special honour was assigned, though it had been rarely conceded even to the greatest conquerors. Sulla was the last Roman emperor who had been permitted to advance the pomerium, or extend the bounds of the city. This peculiar distinction was now accorded to Cæsar.<sup>2</sup> The bold design attributed to him of turning the Tiber to the west from the Mulvian bridge, and enlarging the area of the Campus Martius, seems a mere wild rumour of the day.<sup>3</sup> It does not appear whether he really made

<sup>1</sup> Lucan. i. 95.:

"Fraterno primi maduerunt sanguine muri."

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xliii. 50.; Gell. xiii. 14.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xiii. 33.: "Sed casu sermo a Capitone de urbe augenda. A ponte Mulvio Tiberim duci secundum montes Vaticanos: campum Martium coedificari: illum autem Campum Vaticanum fieri quasi Martium campum." The project, if such it may be called, seems to have been to lead the Tiber with a bold sweep to the foot of



CHAP.  
XXI.

Cæsar returns to Rome, and celebrates his last triumph.

use of the honourable privilege accorded to him. We know for certain that he did not extend the walls themselves, but it is possible that he may have advanced the sacred limits outside them, within which the auspices might be taken, so as to include some portion of the Campus Martius.

In due time the conqueror himself returned to Italy. Faithful to the prescriptions of the republic at the moment that he was trampling it under foot, he abstained from entering the city before the day of the triumph which had been again decreed him. This last victory over Roman citizens was cloaked under the specious title of a conquest of Spain<sup>1</sup>, and a similar designation was given to the triumphs subsequently granted to his lieutenants Fabius and Pedius. On this occasion Cæsar gratified the populace with a show and a festival not less magnificent than in the year preceding: the most remarkable incident in the ceremony was the rehearsal of scenic entertainments in a variety of languages<sup>2</sup>, for the amusement, not of the Romans alone, but of the multitude of foreigners from all parts of the world who had followed in the wake of the conqueror's victories. To the eye of the far-sighted statesman this might justly appear the greatest step that had ever yet been taken towards

the Vatican hill, and so back to its old channel near the Pons Triumphalis. The space thus added to the Campus Martius would have remained an open area for public exercises, while the actual Campus would have been covered with buildings, perhaps inclosed in the walls.

<sup>1</sup> Liv. *Epit.* cxvi.; Vell. ii. 56.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 39.: "Ludos . . . per omnium linguarum histriones." The significance of this as well as many others of Cæsar's measures is proved by their imitation by Augustus. See Suet. *Oct.* 43.

the fusion of mankind into one nation. But the Romans in general gave little heed to this and similar prognostics of social revolution; they were much more interested in the singular phenomenon of a knight named Laberius appearing on the stage and reciting a dramatic composition of his own. The profession of the actor was one from which the Roman's pride revolted; he considered it a mark of degrading frivolity in the Athenian so to cultivate art at the expense of dignity.<sup>1</sup> But certainly in the succeeding generation we find that knights, and even senators, came frequently on the stage of their own accord, till it became necessary to make decrees to interdict the practice. Laberius, it is said, was a rude asserter of republican sentiments, and Cæsar resolved to break his spirit by harshness. He requested him to make this public appearance, and, with a refinement of cruelty, offered him apparently a large sum of money, that he might seem to have been bribed thus to degrade himself. The request of the master of the Roman people was already felt to be a command. Laberius went through his task, but avenged himself by introducing into it some pathetic lines, in which he threw on his instigator all the infamy of the act.<sup>2</sup>

More honours continued still to be heaped upon the favourite of fortune. A decree was passed that Cæsar should receive the designation of father of

Cæsar receives the appellation of father of his country, with other honours.

<sup>1</sup> There was no such feeling in the early ages of the republic, as is elaborately shown by Macrobius, *Saturn.* ii. 10. It is probable that the Romans first conceived their dislike of the actor's profession from the contempt they were led to entertain for Greek fashions.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 39. The lines are preserved by Macrobius, *Sat.* ii. 7.

CHAP.  
XXI.

his country, the highest compliment a really free state could ever bestow upon a citizen.<sup>1</sup> A second conferred upon him the style of imperator, not in the usual way as an appendage to his other names and titles, implying authority over the soldiers, but as a constant prefix to denote a permanent and more general application.<sup>2</sup> His person was invested with legal sanctity, like that of the tribunes of the people, the consulship was assigned to him for ten successive years, and, to crown all, the office of dictator was confirmed to him for life.<sup>3</sup> Other distinctions, which in modern times would be supposed to gratify none but the most paltry vanity, received importance from the place they held in the estimation of the people. Such were the triumphal robes which Cæsar was solemnly authorized to wear on all occasions in public, and the crown of laurel, which it was said was peculiarly acceptable to him to conceal the premature loss of his hair.<sup>4</sup> The right of coining money was assigned to certain of the higher magistrates of the republic, and the noblest names of the nation of kings have thus been stamped upon the most durable of historic monuments. But Cæsar's was the first human face which the Romans allowed to be impressed upon their coinage.<sup>5</sup> This privilege,

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 76.; comp. Appian. *B. C.* ii. 106.; Dion. xliv. 4.; Florus, iv. 2. 91.; Liv. *Epit.* cxvi.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *l. c.*; Dion. xliii. 44.

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *l. c.*; Plut. *Cæs.* 57.; Dion. xliii. 45.; Appian. *l. c.*

<sup>4</sup> Dion. xliii. 43.; Suet. *Jul.* 45. Baldness was opprobrious among the Romans, inasmuch as it was supposed to be the result of excess. Comp. Plin. *H. N.* xi. 47.

<sup>5</sup> Eckhel, *Doctr. Numm.* vi. 7. No undoubted coin of Cæsar bears his head before the year u.c. 710.



which has since become one of the most distinctive marks of regal power, was followed by another of similar significance. Cæsar had declined the offer of his friends to form a body-guard for his personal protection; but the senate adopted the sacred formula of swearing by his name, and bound itself by a solemn oath to watch over his safety.<sup>1</sup> Like most men who have risen by their own acts to a great and unexpected elevation, Cæsar believed in destiny. But he threw himself upon it with a resolution and unreserve which no other perhaps has equalled. At every step of his ascent to power he was ready to stake his life upon his success, to become the Cæsar of his imagination or to perish; and when he had attained the object of his aspirations he was no less prepared to sacrifice existence to the full enjoyment of all its charms. Perhaps it was this consciousness that he must soon perish, and that his work must perish with him, that unnerved his arm for the execution of the Herculean task of reconstructing the commonwealth. When his contemporaries observed the contemptuous indifference with which, living in the midst of perils, he renounced all armed protection, nor took even the ordinary precautions for the care of his health, they surmised that life had lost its interest for him, and had already lasted as long as he felt it could conduce to his pleasure or glory.<sup>2</sup> The extravagant visions in which he indulged of isolated works of public utility seem to betray the restless and feverish excitement which gradually crept over him.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 84. 86.<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 86.

He planned, it is said, the emptying of the lake Fucinus, the draining of the Pomptine marshes, the construction of a canal from Rome to Tarracina<sup>1</sup>, of a new road across the Apennines, and of a magnificent harbour at Ostia, the erection of a superb temple to Mars, the cutting of the isthmus of Corinth<sup>2</sup>; while at the same time his mind was wandering to the scenes of warfare with which it had been so long familiar, and new visions of conquest were opening before him in grand but misty proportions.<sup>3</sup> Meanwhile, the recklessness of his humour betrayed itself in a demeanour more and more haughty and contemptuous. Sulla, he bluntly said, was a fool for resigning the dictatorship.<sup>4</sup> But nothing offended the senators more bitterly than his not rising from his seat to receive them, when they came to communicate to him the honours they had lavished upon him in his absence. It was to the upstart foreigner Balbus that they were willing to attribute this wanton insult; the Spaniard, it was said, had plucked Cæsar by the sleeve when he was about to rise to his visitors,

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Long, in his *Notes on Plutarch*, points out some engineering difficulties which would oppose such a project. Indeed, the fall of the Tiber from Rome to the sea is said to be now only fifteen feet, and it is difficult to suppose that the bed of the river in its course through the city is not higher at the present day than it was eighteen hundred years ago. The fall from Rome to Tarracina would be only a few inches to the mile, and a slight rise of the sea level with a south-westerly gale would overflow the Pomptine marshes. The Romans were not sufficiently skilful to overcome such obstacles.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 44.; Plut. *Cæs.* 58.; Dion. xlv. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Suet. *Jul.* l. c.

<sup>4</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 77.: "Sullam nescisse literas qui dictaturam deposuerit." The play on words cannot be preserved effectively in English.

and bade him remember that he was their master.<sup>1</sup> The Romans, in the progress of refinement among them, were very strict observers of social etiquette. Courteousness in its members one among another is the very essence of an aristocracy. Cæsar had exacted due homage to himself with scrupulous precision. When his chariot passed in the triumphal procession by the bench occupied by the tribunes, one of them, by name Pontius Aquila, had rudely kept his seat to mark his independence. The dictator remarked bitterly on the affront, and when any one came to him to solicit a favour, was wont to say ironically, "I confer it, as far as the tribune Pontius will suffer me."<sup>2</sup>

Yet this pride and haughtiness, the fretful indications of a mind ill at ease within itself, were still tempered by gleams of the polished urbanity which had distinguished the accomplished statesman of earlier times. The true Roman gentleman was eminently a man of easy and conciliatory manners, of unaffected good humour and literary taste. His conversation sparkled with the most refined wit, or if at times his raillery would appear rude to modern ideas, it served at least to exercise and enliven the general equanimity of his temper. The practice of rhetorical discussion was a discipline of forbearance, and taught men more genuine respect for each other's characters, as it gave them a deeper insight into them, than the vapid generalities of our polite conversation. Such a gentleman was Cæsar, such was Cicero. One of the orator's letters preserves

Cæsar's  
urbanity:  
he visits  
Cicero in  
his villa at  
Puteoli.

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 78.; Plut. *Cæs.* 60.; comp. Dion. xliv. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *l. c.*



CHAP.  
XXI.

a curious record of the visit which the dictator paid him at the end of December in this year. Cicero had recently published a work in praise of Cato.<sup>1</sup> We may conjecture that it was not written in such a tone as would really offend Cæsar, for no man, as has been shrewdly observed, was more easily flattered by the pretence of refusing to flatter him.<sup>2</sup> But Cicero had felt, or at least affected to feel, some apprehension of how it might be received. He had consulted Balbus and Oppius as to the effect it would produce upon the great man. He might smile when he was told that Hirtius was commissioned to reply to it: but he was probably both flattered and reassured when he found that Cæsar himself had found leisure in Spain to write a laboured invective against the subject of his encomiums.<sup>3</sup> The conqueror's sword he could neither resist nor parry, but he might trust to his address to appease or cajole him in a literary controversy. Cicero was residing at this time at his marine villa near Puteoli. Amidst the ruin of the commonwealth, and the overthrow of public interests, he had recently catered for his own domestic comforts by espousing in second nuptials a maiden, young, wealthy, and high born. He had reasoned himself, with the assistance of his friends<sup>4</sup>, into resignation under the loss of his darling child Tullia, the wife,

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xii. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Shakspeare, *Julius Cæsar*, act ii. sc. 1.

<sup>3</sup> It was composed in two books or orations, which obtained the name of Anti-Catonæ. Cicero says with reference to it: "Collegit vitia Catonis sed cum maximis laudibus meis" (*ad Att.* xii. 40.).

<sup>4</sup> See the elegant letter of Sulpicius, in the correspondence. Cic. *ad Div.* iv. 12.

though latterly divorced, of P. Dolabella. He had withdrawn himself almost entirely from public affairs, and was devoting himself to his favourite studies, when Cæsar, who had been visiting at the house of his kinsman Philippus in the immediate neighbourhood, invited himself to dine with him.<sup>1</sup> The dictator, on this occasion, was attended by a guard of two thousand soldiers, besides many friends and followers of various ranks. Cicero was much perplexed how to accommodate such a guest. The soldiers were encamped on the estate, but tables were spread in several rooms for the more distinguished members of the retinue. Cæsar continued transacting business with Balbus till one o'clock; he then walked on the sea-shore, arrived at his host's villa at two, and took a bath. While he was thus refreshing himself, Cicero seems to have taken the opportunity of reciting to him a scurrilous epigram against him by Catullus.<sup>2</sup> In Roman society such verses and the imputations they conveyed for the most part excited a smile only. Satire had overreached itself. It was not worth while to punish ribaldry which no one heeded. Cæsar listened without changing countenance. He then anointed and dressed, and took his place at the table; and, having made due preparation beforehand for the full and secure indulgence of his appetite, eat and drank heartily and cheerfully.<sup>3</sup> Nor was the dinner a bad one, adds

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xiii. 52.

<sup>2</sup> On Cæsar and Mamurra, *carm.* xxix. or lvii. The author of the disgusting lampoon apologized afterwards and was pardoned. Suet. *Jul.* 73.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *l. c.* : "ἐμερικὴν agebat, itaque edit et bibit ἀδελῶς et jucunde."

CHAP.  
XXI.

the narrator, with complacency; and, what is more, it was seasoned with much good and pleasant conversation, to his own share in which he evidently looks back with considerable satisfaction. Politics were shunned: the subjects discussed were wholly literary. The great man was well pleased, and showed himself to be so.

Cicero  
writes a  
letter  
urging  
Cæsar to  
invade  
Parthia, but  
withdraws  
it.

There is one circumstance, however, in Cicero's relations with Cæsar, which may give rise to some grave speculations. It appears that the former, in his anxiety to pay court to the conqueror on his return from Spain, addressed to him an elaborate letter of praise and congratulation. The scruples which he expressed to his friend Atticus, and the excuses he made to himself for his apparent subservience, need not detain us. The circumstance on which the historian fixes his regard is, that in this epistle the writer urged Cæsar to avenge the commonwealth by conducting an expedition against the Parthians. After some consultation with Balbus and Oppius, Cicero abstained from sending what he had written; his advisers had recommended him to expunge the suggestion relative to Parthia, and he became dissatisfied with the letter altogether.<sup>1</sup> The indignity under which the commonwealth still laboured while the ghost of Crassus roamed unavenged, might point many idle appeals to public sensibility. Cicero might amuse himself with painting it in his most glowing colours, and believe that he was leading the popular sentiment,

See the notes of Manutius and Schutz in explanation of this custom. Comp. Cic. *pro Deiot.* 7.; Senec. *Consol. ad Helv.* 9.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xiii. 27. 30.



while in fact he was only obeying the suggestion of more crafty intriguers than himself. For to arm against Parthia would be to suspend the progress of administrative reform, it would be to remove Cæsar from Rome, the citadel of his strength, and entangle him in an enterprize of no ordinary peril. All this his friends immediately perceived, and they detected perhaps in their correspondent's harangue a deep plot for their patron's overthrow. They may have acquitted Cicero himself of any evil design.<sup>1</sup> They were content to parry the fatal counsel, and doubtless they would continue to employ all their influence in diverting Cæsar from any such undertaking. The same idea, however, was now continually presented to him from various quarters. The Roman people, it was affirmed, were deeply interested in seeing it realized. There can be little doubt that Cleopatra, disconcerted by the haughtiness of her admirer's subjects, would lend all her fascinations to a scheme for withdrawing him into the East. The project was flattering moreover to Cæsar's personal ambition, and to the passion for war which exercised undiminished sway over him. The difficulties of the task of civil reform were becoming more and more arduous: he would have rejoiced perhaps in

<sup>1</sup> Cicero acknowledges to his correspondent that his counsel to Cæsar was a mere compliment: "Quid enim aliud argumentum epistolæ nostræ nisi *κολακία* fuit?" The letter was not sent; but Balbus and Oppius probably communicated Cicero's views to their patron, and he replied that he would not leave Rome till he had settled the government. On this Cicero remarks, "Idem ego suadebam in illa epistola;" but from a hint which follows, it would appear that he had so managed as to suggest a different course.

CHAP.  
XXI.

any excuse for tearing himself away from a scene where his views were thwarted at every step; his increasing contempt for the people who obstructed while they flattered him, must have sometimes tempted him to abandon his schemes for their welfare, and plunge blindly into an unknown future.

Schemes of  
conquest  
attributed  
to Cæsar.

The plan which Cæsar was now meditating had assumed, perhaps, no definite shape in his own mind. According to one version which has been given of it, he proposed to direct his arms in the first instance against the Dacians, to protect Thrace, and even Asia Minor, which were exposed to their predatory incursions, and proceed from thence into the East.<sup>1</sup> Another and bolder conception was also ascribed to him, that of first overwhelming the Parthians, and then returning along the coasts of the Euxine, in the track of Pompeius, subduing all the nations between the Caucasus and the Carpathian mountains, and assailing the German barbarians in the rear.<sup>2</sup> Both one and the other of these supposed schemes is coloured apparently by the ideas of a later generation. But that Cæsar had resolved upon some extensive project of conquest in the East admits of no doubt. So long accustomed to the absolute authority of the proconsular camp, and the immediate accomplishment of every political and military conception, the delays and embarrassments which impeded the path even of a dictator in the city became irksome and intolerable to him. Early in the year 710 he had given orders to his legions to cross the Adriatic and assemble in Illyricum, there to await

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 44.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 58.

his arrival. He contemplated an absence from Italy of considerable duration. He provided already for the succession of consuls and prætors for the two following years.<sup>1</sup> On the first of January he had entered upon his fifth consulship, in which he was associated with M. Antonius: at the same time he obtained the designation of Hirtius and Pansa for the year 711, and that of Decimus Brutus and Munatius Plancus for 712. Though the people had waived the right of suffrage in his favour for a period of ten years, he considered himself precluded from wielding the consular fasces while absent from the spot where the auspices were to be taken, and other local functions to be exercised. The prætors appointed for the year 710 were sixteen in number, and among them were M. Brutus and C. Cassius. Lepidus, who had accepted the government of the Hither Spain and Gallia Narbonensis, was replaced in the mastership of the horse by Domitius Calvinus. In the assignment of the provinces, which was no longer made by lot, but depended upon the dictator's sole appointment, conspicuous men of either party were favoured almost indiscriminately. Asinius Pollio received the charge of the Further Spain, together with the task of confronting the hostile attempts of Sextus Pompeius. Among the

<sup>1</sup> Drumann (iii. 681.) collects the authorities principally from scattered intimations in Cicero's letters. Suetonius (*Jul.* 41.) says that the dictator shared the right of appointing the higher magistrates, except the consuls, with the people. These latter he selected without any foreign intervention. But Dion remarks that in point of fact, all the superior offices were filled at his recommendation, though the ordinary forms of popular election were maintained. Dion. xliii. 47. 51.



---

CHAP.  
XXI.

other proconsuls and proprætors of the same or the following year were D. Brutus, Trebonius, and C. Cassius, whose names it is important to remark on this occasion, on account of the faithless return they were soon to make for the confidence now reposed in them.

Cæsar  
adopts C.  
Octavius as  
his heir.

There was no difficulty, it would seem, in effacing the memory of Pompeius from the minds of his late adherents, and the constitutional reforms which Cæsar carried into effect were so moderate and reasonable as to give little cause of serious anger to the party he had beaten in the field. It may be presumed, however, that the nobles were more sensibly offended by the elevation of new men into their own class. It is true that many of them might have cause to resent the establishment of a new régime, under which there was no room for them to enjoy the preferments they had been wont to monopolize. But some at least of the dictator's most bitter enemies had not even these personal grounds for hostility against him. The real motive of their hatred, in almost every case, was no other than wounded vanity; accustomed to regard all of their own class as their equals, and the most conspicuous of every other as their inferiors, the nobles were indignant at seeing one man rise to a permanent pre-eminence among them, while they sank themselves undistinguished into the common mass of the citizens. The forms of the constitution, strained as they had been to recognize the establishment of the dictatorship for life, had thrown all real power into the only hands which at the time were competent to wield it.

Yet Cæsar himself was not perhaps satisfied with this splendid tribute to his acknowledged superiority. If, however, he really longed for the glittering title of king, which some at least of his adherents were willing to have conferred upon him, it must not be supposed that he was seeking to gratify his vanity by the assumption of an empty name. The most natural of human feelings is that which prompts a man to seek the perpetuation of his own privileges and honours after death in the person of his heirs. Cæsar, indeed, had no legitimate or acknowledged children. The person nearest to him in blood was the son of his sister's daughter. Satisfied with the talents and temper the young man exhibited, it was to him that he looked for a successor to his name and station. The object of this dangerous favour was C. Octavius. His father had been the head of the distinguished house whose name he bore: he had married Atia, a daughter of Julia<sup>1</sup>, but had died when his only son had scarcely attained the age of four years. The child had been carefully brought up under the care of the mother and grandmother; his step-father, L. Marcius Philippus, had watched over him with paternal interest, and from an early period Julius Cæsar himself had taken a share in his education. The object of all these regards had been born in the year 691, memorable for the conspiracy of Catilina,

<sup>1</sup> Julia, the younger of the dictator's two sisters, was married to M. Atius Balbus, by whom she had a daughter Atia, wife of C. Octavius, and mother of the future Augustus. She died A.U. 702 or 703, and her son pronounced her funeral panegyric, being then in his twelfth year.

CHAP.  
XXI.

---

and the consulship of Cicero. Accordingly, he was now in his nineteenth year, at which age the noble youth of Rome had generally entered already upon their military career. But the extreme delicacy of his health had frequently prevented him from taking part in his great-uncle's exploits. From this cause he had been compelled to abstain from following him into Spain in his campaign against Afranius, and on his recent expedition in that quarter had been an eyewitness of only a few of his operations. Elated by the distinction with which he was treated by the foremost man of the state, the young Octavius had presumed to solicit the appointment to the mastership of the horse as early as the year 709. But the dictator considered him too young to be thrust all at once into so conspicuous a position, and refused his request. Among Cæsar's reforms he had made no attempt to fuse the two ancient orders of the people together. On the contrary, he studiously kept the patrician and plebeian houses distinct, and confirmed the monopoly of certain offices which the former possessed. He reserved the patrician rank as a sort of order of nobility, for the reward of personages whom he wished to honour.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, it was a conspicuous mark of favour when he caused the senate to raise the Octavian house to the superior rank. Cæsar now directed the young aspirant to resume his literary studies at Apollonia in Illyricum under accomplished teachers, and familiarize himself at the same time with the exercises and habits of the camp which was there established. Conspicuous

<sup>1</sup> The same policy was maintained by his successors in the supreme power. Drumann, iv. 254.



for the graceful beauty of his mouth and chin, the expression of which was of almost feminine delicacy, and not less for the breadth of his commanding brow and the expressive lustre of his eyes, the person of the young Octavius was well calculated to engage the favour of the legions, and to become the darling of the most devoted Cæsarians. The dictator himself might rejoice in the good fortune which had given him such an heir, to whom to bequeath, if fate might so far favour him, the prize for which he had done and suffered so much ; in the fond hope, that what he already felt, perhaps, to be a disappointment to himself might become a source of more genuine enjoyment to his successor.

But Cæsar might have had another motive for wishing to consolidate the power he had obtained by acquiring a title which he might transmit to his posterity. He had done no more than lay the first foundations of the great edifice which he contemplated in his own imagination ; and he might be anxious to bequeath its completion to one whom he had himself bred to inherit his views together with his station. The title of dictator had never descended from one generation to another : there were no associations connected with it as an hereditary office, no prestige of traditional veneration to blind men's eyes to the naked usurpation of supreme power. But the appellation of King seemed in itself to legitimize its possessor's claim to rule. It was the recognized symbol of hereditary sovereignty. It dazzled men by its brilliancy, and prevented them from looking too cu-

The royal title a symbol of hereditary power.

CHAP.  
XXI

---

riously into the fact which it really represented. Cæsar might conceive that it was only under the shelter of this illusion that the successor to his principles of administration could maintain the position in which he could carry them into effect. But even if he was conscious of cherishing any wish for the title of King, he concealed it with studious care. It was in the counsels of his friends, at least, that the idea of obtaining it appeared to originate<sup>1</sup>; and it was perhaps first suggested to them by the craft of his enemies, who sought these means to exasperate the nation against him. While there were, as Cæsar well knew, a hundred poniards ready to bury themselves in his bosom, he was aware that they were restrained by the consideration that, popular as he still was with the army, the provinces, and the mass of the citizens, his assassination might only be the signal for a general massacre of all his real and supposed enemies. It required a series of dark and artful intrigues to warp the affections of these classes from the person of the dictator, and there was no readier method for overthrowing a victorious adversary than to fasten upon him the charge of affecting the kingly title.

Cæsar is  
saluted by  
the title of  
King.

However this may be, it happened that one morning a laurel garland, with a diadem attached, was found affixed to Cæsar's statue before the rostra. The tribunes, Marullus and Cæsetius, indignantly tore it down, and punished the convicted perpe-

<sup>1</sup> Dion (xliv. 9.) says of Cæsar's friends : βασιλεία αὐτὸν προσηγόρευον καὶ πολὺ τοῦτο τοῦνομα καὶ κατὰ σφᾶς διεθρύλλουν. Comp. Plut. Brut. 9. : αἵτιοι δὲ τούτων οἱ Καίσαρος κόλακες. κ. τ. λ.

trator of the scandal, pretending that they were acting in the spirit of the dictator's own sentiments. The populace, it was observed, expressed great satisfaction at their conduct, and saluted them with the title of the new Brutuses.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar only lamented in public, as on the deaths of Pompeius and Cato, that they had deprived him by their activity of the opportunity of proving his loyalty to the republic. A short time afterwards, on the 26th of January, the dictator had assisted at the great Latin festival on the Alban mount, preliminary to his expedition against the foreign enemies of the republic. On the same occasion he had enjoyed the honours of an ovation decreed to him by the senate: a gratuitous indulgence to his passion for personal display, for he had gained no new victory to justify it. The most sanguine of his adherents determined to take this opportunity of trying the temper of the people a second time, when their enthusiasm might be supposed to be excited by beholding their champion in his highest glory. It might be remembered that the popular chief Saturninus, on the last occasion on which the fatal title had been bruited in the ears of the Romans, had been urged by his own adherents to assume it.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, officious voices were hired to salute him, as he passed, by the title of King. But as they dropped one by one into silence no others were heard to take up the cry: on the

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliv. 9.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 108.; comp. Suet. *Jul.* 79.; and Plut. *Cæs.* 61., *Anton.* 12., whose narratives apply in part to a different occasion.

<sup>2</sup> Florus, iii. 16.



CHAP.  
XXI.

contrary, a low and stifled murmur sufficiently indicated the disapprobation of the people. "I am no king, but Cæsar," exclaimed the dictator hastily.<sup>1</sup> The tribunes seized some persons who had joined in this salutation, and threw them into prison. The dictator, however, thought fit to rebuke them for their superfluous or invidious zeal, in which he detected a scheme for bringing him under unjust suspicions: he played upon the word Brutus, which signifies a fool, and declared that they well deserved the name they were so proud of, if they supposed he was unaware of the intrigue to which they had lent themselves. Nor did his anger confine itself to these sharp words. Helvius Cinna, indeed, one of their colleagues, went as far as to propose that they should be punished with death; but Cæsar allowed himself to be appeased by their deposition from their offices.

Antoni-  
us offers  
him a  
royal dia-  
dem, which  
he rejects.

Cæsar's friends, however, were not yet satisfied that the coveted distinction was beyond his reach. They sought to familiarize the people gradually with the idea of royalty by suggesting it repeatedly to their imaginations. Perchance the sight of the white linen band, the simple badge of Oriental royalty, might disabuse them of their horror at an empty name. On the fifteenth of February, the day of the Lupercalia, Cæsar was seated in his golden chair before the rostra, to preside over the solemn ceremonies of that popular festival.<sup>2</sup> The Julian flamens were elevated to the same rank as those of the god Lupercus, or Pan.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliv. 10.; Suetonius and Plutarch, *ll. cc.*

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 109., and the authorities above cited.

Antonius the consul was at their head, and next to the dictator occupied the most conspicuous place in the eyes of the multitude. Possibly the novelty of the sight of the one consul stripped to his skin, with only a narrow girdle round his loins, waving in his hand the thong of goat's-hide, and striking with it, as he ran rapidly through the principal streets, the women who presented themselves to the blow, which was supposed to avert sterility, was still more attractive than that of the other in the laurel crown and triumphal robes, which use rendered familiar.<sup>1</sup> When Antonius had run his course, he broke through the admiring multitude, and approached the seat of the dictator. He drew from beneath his girdle a diadem, and made as if he would offer it to him, exclaiming that it was the gift of the Roman people. The action was hailed by some clapping of hands; but it was faint and brief, and easily betrayed that it was preconcerted. But when Cæsar put away from him the proffered gift, a much louder burst of genuine applause succeeded. Antonius offered it a second time, again there was a slight sound of applause, and again on Cæsar's rejection of it a vehement expression of satisfaction. The pulse of the city had once more been felt, and once more the symptoms had proved unfavourable. "I am not a king," repeated Cæsar, "the only king of the Romans is Jupiter." He ordered the diadem to be carried to the Capitol and suspended in the temple of the god as a trophy, commemorative of the gracious offer of the people and his own modest

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Anton.* 12.; Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 34. 42.

CHAP.  
XXI.

refusal. He even caused it to be inserted in the *fasti*, that on the fifteenth day of February the Romans presented a diadem to Cæsar, and Cæsar declined it.<sup>1</sup>

The Sibylline oracles declare that Parthia can only be conquered by a king.

Among other intrigues to keep the idea of the royal title constantly before the people, a report was studiously spread that the Sibylline books declared that Parthia could be conquered only under the auspices of a king.<sup>2</sup> Whatever had been the origin of the genuine Sibylline verses, on which so much of the Roman state religion was grounded, those compositions, it was acknowledged, had perished in the Sullan conflagration of the Capitol. The oracles, which at this period went under that name, were supposed to be fragments collected by subsequent research, or restored from memory, to replace the primitive vaticinations. Whatever confidence had been placed by the people in the original documents, neither the circumstances of the case nor the temper of the times, it might be imagined, would allow of faith being reposed in their modern substitutes. When the government ventured, with the sanction of the priests, to whom they were entrusted, to produce from them any alleged predictions with reference to the policy of the day, the manœuvre might have been presumed transparent to the meanest apprehension. Yet we have seen the nobles once before shrink from offending the popular belief even in these doubly spurious oracles; and now the most disastrous

<sup>1</sup> Compare, besides the authorities above, Liv. *Epit.* cxvi.; Vell. ii. 56.; Zonar. x. 11.; Flor. iv. 2. 91.

<sup>2</sup> Dion. xliv. 15.; Suet. *Jul.* 79.; Cic. *de Divin.* ii. 54.



consequences were anticipated by Cæsar's enemies from the bare rumour of such a prophecy existing. The Quindecimviri, or college of fifteen priests, to whose care the sacred deposit was committed<sup>1</sup>, deliberately examined their records, and affirmed that the fact was so. Upon this Cæsar's friends proposed to obtain a decree of the senate to confer upon the dictator the title and authority of King over the foreign subjects of the commonwealth<sup>2</sup>: it could be easily foreseen that such a step would carry him more than half way to the final consummation of his supposed ambition, in becoming king of the citizens also. And if the question were once brought formally under the notice of the senate, it would be impossible for the malcontents to avoid giving expression to their opinions. They must array themselves decisively in opposition to their master's interests, or allow their silence to be interpreted into consent. The apprehension of being reduced to this dilemma served perhaps to hasten the catastrophe which had been long in contemplation among them.<sup>3</sup>

The discontent which had spread through the ranks of the Roman nobility was founded, as we have seen, rather on personal envy of the dictator's pre-eminence, than on political hostility to his measures. His unexampled clemency had been of little avail to disarm such a feeling as this. Even if he had resorted to the bloody policy of his predecessors, and cut off by proscription every leader

A conspiracy is formed against Cæsar's life.

<sup>1</sup> Drumann. ii. 493. not. 72., iii. 692. not. 41.

<sup>2</sup> Appian. *B. C.* 110., who adds that Cæsar repressed their zeal.

<sup>3</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 113.

CHAP.  
XXI.

of the party opposed to him, he would have been not the more safe from the machinations of his own principal adherents.<sup>1</sup> Both Antonius and Dolabella had already been subjected to the imputation of plotting against their patron's life.<sup>2</sup> But a much more extensive conspiracy had now been formed against him; not less than sixty persons are said to have connected themselves with it, and some of the most conspicuous of these were the very men who had appeared most to merit Cæsar's confidence by a long course of faithful services. Every party leader must make enemies, when he comes to power, of many of his ancient adherents by the unavoidable mortification of their self-love. Among the conspirators against Cæsar's life were some, perhaps, who thought themselves inadequately repaid for their early devotion to his interests. But such could not have been the case with Decimus Brutus, who had recently received the government of the Transalpine Gaul, who had been latterly appointed to the Cisalpine, and who was already designated for the consul of a future year. Such could not have been the case with Trebonius, who had only just descended from the ivory chair, and was about to assume the administration of a province. Another of Cæsar's favourite officers, who now became a

<sup>1</sup> Vell. ii. 56.: "Adjectis etiam consiliariis cædis, familiarissimis omnium, et fortuna partium ejus in summum evectis fastigium." Comp. Suet. *Jul.* 83.

<sup>2</sup> Cicero (*Philipp.* ii. 14.) asserts it as notorious that Antonius had consulted with Trebonius about taking Cæsar's life. Such a charge, however, from such a quarter, does not deserve much attention. The charge against Dolabella is still less substantial. Plut. *Anton.* 11. It was part of the policy of Cæsar's enemies to raise suspicions in his mind against his adherents.

traitor to him, was Minucius Basilus ; this man had been prætor in the last year, but Cæsar not having the power of assigning to him a province, had hoped to compensate for the disappointment by a grant of money. Basilus, it is said, had resolved in his mortification to starve himself to death.<sup>1</sup> C. Cassius found him in this desponding mood, and when he opened to him the plot against the dictator's life, easily persuaded him to live for vengeance. Publius Casca had been recommended by the dictator to a seat on the tribunitian bench ; he, it is said, was disappointed at not rising at once to a still higher office. L. Tillius Cimber had also been recently preferred to the government of Bithynia. This man indeed might entertain a private grudge against the dispenser of these honours, on account of his brother, who having been banished from the city, could not obtain Cæsar's intervention for the reversal of his sentence.<sup>2</sup> But of all Cæsar's adherents who now turned against him, Sulpicius Galba, to whom he had been forced to refuse the consulship, was the only one, perhaps, who had failed to reap riches or advancement from the establishment of his power.<sup>3</sup>

Even the chiefs of the senatorial party who had arrayed themselves against Cæsar in the field, had betrayed no reluctance to accept office under his sway. It was not the destitute or the disappointed among them, but those whom he had gratuitously honoured and promoted, who at last raised their

Character  
of Cassius,  
the author  
of the  
conspiracy.

<sup>1</sup> Dion. xliii. 47. ; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 113.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 17., *Cæs.* 66. ; Appian. *l. c.*

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* xiii. 16. ; Suet. *Galb.* 3



CHAP.  
XXI.

hands for his destruction. The most active of the conspirators, and perhaps the original author of the design, was C. Cassius, who had recently been appointed prætor. In this dignified magistracy there were now sixteen associates; but the first place in rank and importance, the wardenship of the city, with its six attendant lictors, had been contested between Cassius and Brutus, and it was in favour of the latter that Cæsar had decided.<sup>1</sup> The rich province of Syria, however, which was promised to the disappointed suitor, might have sufficed to obliterate any feelings of pique at this repulse. The cry of liberty and the republic, which was in the mouths of all the conspirators, could have little real influence on the sentiments of Cassius, whose avowed Epicurean principles, no less than his late political conduct, vouched for his indifference to party. He had been known to express the greatest horror at the prospect of a new Pompeian ascendancy under the championship of Cnæus, whom he branded, at least in his correspondence with Cicero, as a monster of cruelty.<sup>2</sup> But he was by nature vain and vindictive; his temper fluctuated between mean subservience and rude independence; the ascendancy which Cæsar's unruffled equanimity exerted over him embittered his selfish spirit, and, in his passionate resolve to overthrow, at all hazards, the supremacy which galled him, he seems to have looked no

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 7., *Cæs.* 62.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Div.* xv. 19. He wrote to Cicero, A. U. 709: "Malo verterem et clementem dominum (Cæsarem) habere quam novum et crudelem (Cn. Pomp.)."

further, to have taken no precautions, but thrown the die without calculating the chances.

CHAP.  
XXI.

If the conspirators and their principal instigator evinced any forethought, it was in seeking for their projected tyrannicide the sanction of the name of Brutus. Atticus, who, amidst the public commotions, amused himself with genealogical studies, had flattered M. Junius Brutus by tracing his descent from a supposed third son of the founder of the republic, whose elder brothers perished, as was well known, childless by the axe of the lictor.<sup>1</sup> Servilia, the mother of Brutus, derived her lineage from the renowned Ahala, whose dagger had cut short the ambitious projects of Spurius Mælius. But so far from inheriting the zeal of his imputed progenitor, the Brutus of the expiring republic had acquiesced in Cæsar's usurpation with less apparent reluctance than perhaps any other member of the Pompeian party. Despondent in her hour of distress, he had been the last to join, the earliest to desert, the unfurled banner of the republic. After Pharsalia he was the first to seek refuge in the camp of the victor; in the city he was the foremost to court the friendship and claim the confidence of the dictator; he was zealous in serving his interests by the discharge of important offices; nor did he blush to govern Cisalpine Gaul for Cæsar while his uncle still held Utica against him.<sup>2</sup> A feeble panegyric of the sturdy sage

Weakness  
and incon-  
sistency of  
Brutus.

<sup>1</sup> Comp. Corn. Nepos, *Att.* 18.; Plut. *Brut.* 1. Cicero maintains this popular derivation of his hero (*Tusc. Qu.* iv. 1., *Phil.* i. 1.). But Plutarch allows that its accuracy was disputed.

<sup>2</sup> Plutarch assures us that his government of this province was a

CHAP.  
XXI.

whom he had abandoned while he affected to adopt his principles and emulate his practice, seemed to Brutus a sufficient tribute to his virtues. He disparaged the merits of Cicero, and exalted the services of Cato in the suppression of Catilina; but both his depreciation and his praise were blown to the winds by the caustic irony of Cæsar's reply.<sup>1</sup> His consort Claudia he had divorced to espouse the philosopher's daughter Porcia, a woman of more masculine spirit than his own. But thus doubly connected with strength and virtue, Brutus failed nevertheless to acquire the firmness which nature had denied him. Although in his habits a professed student, he could not resolve to withdraw to the shades of philosophy from the fiery glare of a season of revolution. The thirst of lucre still beset him; the victor caressed and the

great blessing to it: εὐτυχία τινι τῆς ἐπαρχίας . . . καὶ τῶν πρόσθεν ἀτυχημάτων πᾶντα καὶ παραμυθία Βροῦτος ἦν. Cæsar was exceedingly gratified at witnessing the beneficial results of his administration. Comp. Cic. *Orat.* 10. 34.

<sup>1</sup> Cicero's letter to Atticus, in which this subject is mentioned (*ad Att.* xii. 21.), is curious: "Catonem primum sententiam putat (Brutus) de animadversione dixisse; quam omnes ante dixerant, præter Cæsarem: et quum ipsius Cæsaris tam severa fuerit, qui tum prætorio loco dixerit, consularium putat leniores fuisse, Catuli, Servilii, Lucullorum, Curionis, Torquati, Lepidi, Gellii, Volcatii, Figuli, Cottæ, L. Cæsaris, C. Pisonis, etiam M. Glabronis, Silani, Murenæ designatorum consulum." Brutus, it seems, sought to enhance Cato's merit by a deliberate falsification of history. Cicero goes on to explain why the capital sentence was ascribed to Cato's advice, namely, because, though the whole party spoke and voted for it, his arguments were considered the most forcible and effective. Middleton (*Life of Cicero*) supposes that it was from Brutus's account, rather than Cicero's, that Sallust drew up his own narrative. He was a contemporary and probably a witness of the scene, and required no written record to remind him of that awful debate.



vanquished courted him ; he was a greater man to-day than yesterday, and the path of official distinction seemed safe and flowery. With Brutus, by circumstances a revolutionary partizan, by temper a sophist, the conspiracy would never have originated ; the admission of his inherent weakness is the fairest extenuation of his crime. But the deaths of all their more distinguished leaders had elevated him to undue importance among the remnant of his party. His uncle's renown seemed to shed its light upon him, and he was supposed to inherit the political spirit of the hero whose disciple he had avowed himself in the tranquil walks of science. The name of Brutus forced its possessor into prominence as soon as royalty began to be discussed. The Roman people were neither moralists nor genealogists, but they had imbibed from the traditions of four hundred and fifty years an unreflecting horror of the mere title of King, and admiration not less blind for the name of the first of the Consuls.

The weakness of Brutus's character may be estimated by the means which were employed to work upon him. A bit of paper affixed to the statue of the ancient hero with the words, " Would thou wert alive," billets thrust into his hand inscribed, " Brutus, thou sleepest," " Thou art no Brutus," shook the soul of the philosopher to its centre.<sup>1</sup> His vanity had already been excited by a compliment attributed to Cæsar, which was no doubt reported to him, " Brutus only waits for this dry

He is ca-  
joled by the  
conspira-  
tors,

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 9., *Cæs.* 62.; Dion. xliv. 12.

CHAP.  
XXI.

---

and induced to  
assume the  
lead among  
them.

skin ;”<sup>1</sup> implying that he of all the Romans was the most capable of succeeding to pre-eminence. Cassius, who was brother-in-law to Brutus, and admitted to his familiar intimacy, watched narrowly the effect of these incentives to his ambition, and led him gradually to the point at which he could venture to disclose the deed which was in contemplation. Brutus, adroitly plied, embraced the schemes of the conspirators, and assumed the place of chief adviser, which was, at least in appearance, tendered to him. The renowned name became at once a charm of magic potency. It raised the sick Ligarius from his bed.<sup>2</sup> A pardoned partizan of Pompeius, the clemency of Cæsar rankled in his bosom. “How sad for Ligarius,” said Brutus to him, “to be disabled at such a moment.” The sick man raised himself on his elbow and replied, “If thou hast any project worthy of Brutus, behold, I am well again.” Ligarius was admitted to the secret, and took an active part in the deed which followed. We learn with pleasure that the conspirators did not venture even to sound Cicero.<sup>3</sup> Favonius withheld his countenance from them, and declared that it was better to acknowledge a master than to plunge again into the miseries of civil war.<sup>4</sup> The fatal intrigue was now ripening to its execution. As long as Cæsar remained at Rome his fearless demeanour exposed him almost un-

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 8., *Cæs.* l. c.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 11.

<sup>3</sup> Plut. *Cic.* 17.: ἀλλ’ εἶδισαν οἱ ἄνδρες αὐτοῦ τὴν φύσιν, ὥς ἐνδεῶς τόλμης. Antonius, indeed, tried to fasten the charge upon him. Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 11, 12., *ad Div.* xii. 3.

<sup>4</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 12.

defended to the daggers of assassins, for he had dismissed the guard which had at first surrounded him, and he appeared daily in the forum and the curia, with no other attendance than that of friends and casual suitors. If the statement is correct that he had assembled as many as sixteen legions in Illyricum, it is evident that he sent every disposable soldier out of Italy.<sup>1</sup> But from the moment he should leave the city and assume the command of his armies, his security would be guaranteed by the fidelity of the troops; an attack upon the cherished life of the emperor would be difficult of execution, and sure of prompt punishment. Once intoxicated with the splendour of royalty in the provinces, he would never consent to return a citizen to Rome. He had promised, it was said, to restore the ancient towers of Ilium, the cradle of the people of Æneas and Romulus; possibly he might transfer thither the throne which the proud nobility forbade him to establish in the Capitol.<sup>2</sup> Or, if the charms of Cleopatra should still retain their power, he might take up his abode in Alexandria, and transfer the seat of empire to the shrine of the Macedonian conqueror.

<sup>1</sup> Appian. *B. C.* ii. 110.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 79.: "Valida fama percrebruit, migraturum Alexandriam vel Ilium, translatis simul opibus imperii." Lucan. ix. 998.:

"Restituam populos, grata vice mœnia reddent  
Ausonidæ Phrygibus, Romanaque Pergama surgent."

The Ode of Horace (*Od.* iii. 3.), in which he deprecates a transfer of the seat of empire, shows how deep an impression this rumour had made, though I cannot imagine that Augustus could have seriously contemplated it, or that Horace would have so earnestly denounced it, if he had. See the commentators on Horace, *l. c.*



CHAP.  
XXI.

---

The conspirators prepare to execute their design.

Cæsar's preparations for his departure were almost complete. The senate was convened for the Ides of March, the fifteenth day of the month, and at that meeting, it was confidently expected, the odious proposition would be openly made for conferring the royal name and power on the dictator in the provinces. The conspirators determined to make their attack upon him as soon as he should enter the assembly. Among the floating stories of the day was a prediction that the Ides of March should be fatal to Cæsar. It appears that he had received intimations from more than one quarter of the danger which threatened him; but he resolutely rejected all advice to guard himself against it<sup>1</sup>, relying, as he declared, implicitly on the good sense or gratitude of the citizens. It had long been the fixed principle of his philosophy that the only way to enjoy life was to banish the fear of death.<sup>2</sup> On the eve of the fatal day he was entertained by Lepidus, and when, in the course of conversation, some one started the question, "What kind of death is the best," it was remarked that he cut short the discussion abruptly with the reply, "That which is least expected." The constant tradition of antiquity declared that, among many prognostics of an impending catastrophe, his wife had revealed to him in the morning an ominous dream, and when she prevailed upon him to consult the sacrificers, the signs of the victims were fearfully inauspicious.<sup>3</sup> Whether his own superstitious feelings

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 86.<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 58.; Vell. ii. 57.<sup>3</sup> Suetonius (*Jul.* 81.) relates the occurrence of various prodigies. Comp. Plutarch, *Cæs.* 63.; Dion. xliv. 17.

gained the ascendancy, or whether he was overcome by the entreaties of Calpurnia, he consented at last to send Antonius to dismiss the senate, or to excuse his absence. At this moment Decimus Brutus came to attend him on his way to the place of meeting. When he heard the dictator's half-blushing acknowledgment of his scruples, he was struck with consternation at the prospect of the destined victim's escape; for in the meanwhile the conspirators were in momentary apprehension of discovery. Brutus himself, tormented by fear or conscience, had been unable to conceal his agitation since he had embarked in the enterprize, and his nervous excitement was shamed by the firmness of his wife, who pierced her own thigh, and long concealed the wound, to extract from him the secret of his heart by this proof of her power of self-control.<sup>1</sup> With Porcia indeed the secret of the tyrannicides was secure; but not so with many of the wild unprincipled men to whom it had been confided, and every moment of delay made the danger of its divulgement more imminent. Under the pretence of escorting the son of Cassius, who had just assumed the gown of manhood, the conspirators assembled early, and proceeded in a body to the portico before the theatre of Pompeius, the place assigned for the meeting of the senate being a hall immediately adjacent.<sup>2</sup> It had never been the ordinary custom of the Romans to wear arms in the city, and when the commotions of Milo and

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 13.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 80.: "Senatus idibus Martiis in Pompeii curiam edictus est." Plut. *Brut.* 14.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 115.

CHAP.  
XXI.

Clodius were put down, a special enactment had been introduced to check such a practice, which seemed to be creeping in through the licence and perilousness of the times. But the Roman senator carried his iron stylus in a little case, and in the place of the implement of writing the conspirators had furnished themselves each with a dagger. While awaiting the arrival of the dictator, Brutus and Cassius occupied themselves as prætors with listening to casual applications, and the freedom with which the former expressed himself, rebuking those who boasted that Cæsar would reverse his decisions, was especially remarked. But as the morning wore on the conspirators were exposed to redoubled risks. A senator, addressing Casca with a significant smile, said, "You have concealed your secret from me, but Brutus has revealed it." In another moment Casca would have pressed his hand and communicated the dark design, but the other went on to allude to his meditated competition for the ædileship, and the conspirator saw that he was undiscovered. Popilius Lænas whispered to Brutus, "What you have in hand despatch quickly," and was immediately lost in the crowd. It was never known what he referred to, but the conscious assassins were disconcerted and alarmed.<sup>1</sup>

Cæsar enters the senate house.

Meanwhile, Decimus Brutus had recovered his presence of mind. He saw that all was lost unless Cæsar could be brought to the spot where the ambush awaited him. He rallied him on the weakness of Calpurnia, hinted some friendly disparagement of the hero's own resolution, and assured him that

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 14—16.



so favourable a moment might not again arrive for the sanction of his views and wishes by the decree of the subservient senators. Cæsar yielded, and quitted his house. Hardly had he turned his back upon it, when a slave besought an audience of Calpurnia, declared to her that there was some design in agitation against her husband's life, and desired to be kept in confinement till the event should prove his assertion.<sup>1</sup> As Cæsar proceeded along the Forum and Velabrum from the mansion of the chief pontiff to the theatre of Pompeius, more than one person, it seems, pressed towards him to warn him of his doom. But the conspirators to whom that part of the business was assigned crowded closely about him, and the press of his attendants was almost too great to allow of a mere stranger's approach. One man, indeed, succeeded in thrusting a paper into his hand, and earnestly exhorted him to read it instantly. It was supposed to have contained a distinct announcement of the impending danger, but Cæsar was accustomed to receive petitions in this way, and paid no immediate attention to it, though he had it still rolled up in his hand when he entered the senate-house. As he was borne along in his litter (for he affected sickness to countenance the excuse which Calpurnia had persuaded him to send to the senate) he observed complacently to the augur Spurinna, who had foreboded evil on that fatal day, "The Ides of March are come;" "Yes," muttered the sage, "but not yet passed."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 64.<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 81.; Dion. xliv. 18.; Val. Max. viii. 11. 2.

CHAP.  
XXI.

---

Cæsar as-  
sassinated.

At the moment when Cæsar descended from his litter at the door of the hall, Popilius Lænas, the same who had just before spoken so mysteriously to Brutus, approached him, and was observed to enter into earnest conversation with him. The conspirators regarded one another, and mutually revealed their despair with a glance. Cassius and others were grasping their daggers beneath their robes; their last resource was to despatch themselves. But Brutus, observing that the manner of Popilius was that of one supplicating rather than warning, restored his companions' confidence with a smile.<sup>1</sup> Cæsar entered: his enemies closed in a dense mass around him, and while they led him to his chair kept off all intruders. Trebonius was specially charged to detain Antonius in conversation at the door. Scarcely was the victim seated when Tillius Cimber approached with a petition for his brother's pardon. The others, as was concerted, joined in the supplication, grasping his hands and embracing his neck. Cæsar at first put them gently aside, but, as they became more importunate, repelled them with main force. Tillius seized his toga with both hands, and pulled it violently over his arms. Then P. Casca, who was behind, drew his weapon and grazed his shoulder with an ill-directed stroke. Cæsar disengaged one hand and snatched at the hilt, shouting, "Cursed Casca, what means this?" "Help," cried Casca to his brother Lucius, and at the same moment the others aimed each his dagger at the devoted object. Cæsar for an instant defended himself, and even wounded

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Brut.* 16.

one of the assailants with his stylus; but when he distinguished Brutus in the press, and saw the steel flashing in his hand also, "What! thou too, Brutus!" he exclaimed<sup>1</sup>, let go his hold of Casca, and drawing his robe over his face made no further resistance. The assassins stabbed him through and through, for they had pledged themselves, one and all, to bathe their daggers in his blood. Brutus himself received a wound in their eagerness and trepidation. The victim reeled a few paces, propped by the blows he received on every side, till he fell dead at the foot of Pompeius' statue.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Καὶ σὺ τέκνον, is the expression given by Plutarch and Suetonius. Of course no reliance can be placed on such minute details. The whole statement of the effect of the sight of Brutus upon Cæsar may be a fiction suggested by the vulgar story of the relation between them. See Vol. I. p. 378.; Drumann, iii. 730.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 66., *Brut.* 17.; Suet. *Jul.* 82.; Val. Max. iv. 5. 2.; Dion. xliv. 16.



## CHAP. XXII.

REFLECTIONS UPON CÆSAR'S ASSASSINATION.—HIS PERSON, CHARACTER, AND ABILITIES.—CÆSAR REPRESENTS THE VIRTUES AND DEFECTS OF HIS AGE.—INFLUENCE OF THE OLD ETRUSCAN DISCIPLINE UPON THE ROMANS: IT IS GRADUALLY SUPPLANTED BY THE CIVILIZATION OF THE GREEKS.—CHARACTER OF GREEK CIVILIZATION IN ITS DECAY.—PHILOSOPHY AND FREE-THINKING INTRODUCED INTO ROME.—DECAY OF THE OLD ITALIAN FAITH, AND RISE OF ORIENTAL SUPERSTITIONS.—INFLUENCE OF GREEK IDEAS UPON THE PRINCIPLES OF ROMAN LAW.—LIBERAL TENDENCIES OF CICERO AND THE CONTEMPORARY JURISCONSULTS.—INFLUENCE OF GREEK LITERATURE UPON THE ROMANS.—CONFLICT BETWEEN THE GREEK AND ITALIAN SPIRIT: ENNIUS, NÆVIUS, LUCILIUS.—SPIRIT OF IMITATION DIFFUSED OVER ROMAN LITERATURE.—STUDY OF THE GREEK RHETORICIANS: ITS EFFECT UPON ROMAN ELOQUENCE.—DECAY OF MILITARY DISCIPLINE.—FAMILIARITY WITH THE COURTS AND STANDING ARMIES OF THE EAST DEMORALIZES THE PROCONSULS AND THE LEGIONS.—FATAL EFFECTS OF THE OBSERVATION OF ROYALTY ABROAD.—CONCLUDING REMARKS.

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

Cæsar's  
premature  
death.

CÆSAR was assassinated in his fifty-sixth year. He fell pierced with twenty-three wounds, only one of which, as the physician who examined his body affirmed, was in itself mortal.<sup>1</sup> In early life his health had been delicate, and at a later period he was subject to fits of epilepsy, which attacked him in the campaign of Africa, and again before the battle of Munda.<sup>2</sup> Yet the energy and habitual

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 86.

<sup>2</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 45.; Plut. *Cæs.* 17.; Dion. xliii. 32.; Appian. *B. C.* ii. 101. Comp. Sir Henry Hallford's *Essays*, p. 61.: "Many attacks of epilepsy are symptomatic only of some irritation in the alimentary

rapidity of all his movements seem to prove the robustness of his constitution, at least in middle life. It may be presumed that if he had escaped the dagger of the assassin, he might, in the course of nature, have attained old age; and against any open attack his position was impregnable. He might have lived to carry out himself the liberal schemes which he was enabled only to project. But it was ordained, for inscrutable reasons, that their first originator should perish, and leave them to be eventually effected by a successor, within a quarter of a century.

The judgment of the ancients upon this famous deed varied according to their interests and predilections. If, indeed, the republic had been permanently re-established, its saviour would have been hailed, perhaps, with unmingled applause, and commanded the favour of the Romans to a late posterity. Cicero, though he might have shrunk from participating in the deed, deemed it expedient to justify it, and saluted its authors in exulting accents, as tyrannicides and deliverers.<sup>1</sup> But the

Judgment  
of the  
ancients on  
his assass-  
ination.

canal, or of some eruptive disease about to declare itself, or of other occasional passing ills. So far Julius Cæsar was epileptic . . . . But these attacks were of no consequence in deteriorating his masculine mind." Napoleon, as is well known, had more than one attack of the same kind. Michelet's description is picturesque (*Hist. de France*, i. 50.): "J'aurais voulu voir cette blanche et pâle figure, fanée avant l'âge par les débauches de Rome, cet homme délicat épileptique, marchant sous les pluies de la Gaule, à la tête des légions, traversant nos fleuves à la nage, ou bien à cheval, entre les litières où ses secrétaires étoient portés." Suetonius adds that Cæsar was disturbed in his latter years by nocturnal terrors.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* xiv. 4. 6. 14., *Philipp.* i. 14., *de Off.* i. 31., ii. 7., iii. 4.: "Num se astrinxit scelere si qui tyrannum occidit quamvis familiarem? Populo quidem Romano non videtur, qui ex omnibus præclaris factis illud pulcherrimum existimat."

CHAP.  
XXII.

courtiers of the later Cæsars branded it as a murder, or passed it over in significant silence. Virgil, who ventures to pay a noble compliment to Cato, and glories in the eternal punishment of Catilina, bestows not a word on the exploit of Brutus.<sup>1</sup> Even Lucan, who beholds in it a stately sacrifice to the gods, admits the detestation with which it was generally regarded.<sup>2</sup> Augustus, indeed, wisely tolerant, allowed Messala to speak in praise of Cassius; but Tiberius would not suffer Cremutius to call him with impunity the last of the Romans.<sup>3</sup> Velleius, Seneca, and, above all, Valerius Maximus, express their abhorrence of the murder in energetic and manly tones. It was the mortification, they said, of the conspirators at their victim's superiority, their disappointment at the slowness with which the stream of honours flowed to them, their envy, their vanity, anything rather than their patriotism, that impelled them to it.<sup>4</sup> The Greek writers, who had less of prejudice to urge them to extenuate the deed, speak of it without reserve as a monstrous and abominable crime.<sup>5</sup> Again, while Tacitus casts a philosophic glance on the opinions of others, and abstains from passing any judgment

<sup>1</sup> Virg. *Æn.* viii. 668.:

“ Et te, Catilina, minaci  
Pendentem scopulo Furiarumque ora trementem;  
Secretosque pios; his dantem jura Catonem.”

<sup>2</sup> Lucan. vii. 596.:

“ Vivat, et ut Bruti procumbat victima, regnet.”

Comp. vi. 791., and viii. 609.

<sup>3</sup> Tac. *Ann.* iv. 34.

<sup>4</sup> Vell. ii. 56.; Senec. *de Ira*, iii. 30.; Val. Max. i. 7. 2., iii. 1. 3., &c.

<sup>5</sup> Dion. xlv. 1. 20, 21., &c.; Appian. *B. C.* iv.



of his own, Suetonius allows that Cæsar was, indeed, justly slain, but makes no attempt to absolve his assassins. From Livy and Florus, and the epitomizer of Trogus, we may infer that the sentiments expressed by Plutarch were the same which the most reasonable of the Romans generally adopted; he declared that the disorders of the body politic required the establishment of monarchy, and that Cæsar was sent by Providence, as the mildest physician, for its conservation.<sup>1</sup> On the whole, when we consider the vices of the times and the general laxity of principle justly ascribed to the later ages of Greek and Roman heathenism, it is interesting to observe how little sympathy was extended by antiquity to an exploit which appealed so boldly to it.

The accounts we have received of Cæsar's person describe him as pale in complexion, of a tall and spare figure, with dark piercing eyes and an aquiline nose, with scanty hair, and without a beard. His appearance, at least in youth, was remarkably handsome, and of a delicate and almost feminine character. He continued, even in later years, to be vain of his person, and was wont to hint that he inherited his beauty from his divine ancestress. His baldness, which he strove to conceal by combing his locks over the crown of his head, was regarded by the ancients as a deformity, and a slight puffing of the under lip, which may be traced in some of his best busts, must undoubtedly have detracted

Cæsar's  
person.

<sup>1</sup> Senec. *Qu. Nat.* v. 18.: "A Tito Livio positum in incerto esse utrum eum magis nasci reipublicæ profuerit an non nasci." Flor. iv. 2. 92.; Eutrop. vi. fin.; Plut. *Cæs.* 69.

CHAP.  
XXII.

from the admirable contour of his countenance. We can only infer indistinctly his appearance in early life from the busts and medals which remain of him; for all of these belong to the period of his greatness and more advanced age. In the traits which these monuments have preserved to us, there is also great diversity. Indeed, it may be said that there is a marked discrepancy between the expression of the busts and that of the medals. The former, which are assuredly the most life-like of the two, represent a long thin face, with a forehead rather high than capacious, furrowed with strong lines, giving to it an expression of patient endurance and even suffering, such as might be expected from frequent illness, and from a life of toil not unmingled with dissipation. It is from the more dubious evidence of the latter that we derive our common notions of the vivid animation and heroic majesty of Cæsar's lineaments.

His loose  
morality.

The temptations to which the spirited young noble was exposed from the graces of his person, were not combated by any strictness of moral principle, perhaps not even by a sense of personal dignity. In periods of great social depravity, such as especially degraded the class to which Cæsar belonged, it is by the women even more than by the men that profligacy is provoked and encouraged. The early age at which he became notorious as the gallant of the matron Servilia, may show that he imbibed the rudiments of vice in the school of a proficient in intrigue. From that time he persisted without shame or scruple in the pursuit of pleasure in whatever shape it seemed to court him.

His amours were celebrated in verse and prose, in the epigrams of Catullus and the satires of Cæcina and Pitholaus. He intrigued with Postumia, the wife of Sulpicius, and Gabinius, Crassus, and Pompeius respectively resented or disregarded the frailty of Lollia, Tertulla, and Mucia. Eunoe, the queen of the Mauritanian Bogudes, was the object of a passing desire; but Cleopatra, as we have seen, established more permanent sway over the husband, as he was called, of every man's wife.<sup>1</sup> He had bitter occasion to repent these indulgences in the handle they gave to more infamous charges, the only attacks which seem to have seriously annoyed him<sup>2</sup>, but which, as utterly unproved, and common to Cæsar with every other man of dissipated habits in his time, we may be satisfied with consigning to obscurity.

The coarse habits of the age were peculiarly exemplified in the debauchery of the table. Excess in eating as well as in drinking was common, and passed almost unproved. Custom had sanctioned the abuse, and the union of sage philosophical discussion with indulgence of the vilest gluttony must provoke a smile at the "follies of the wise." Cæsar took the manners of the day as he found them; but he was not addicted to licentious excess in these respects, and among the class of riotous young men who made themselves conspicuous in undermining the institutions of the country, he alone, in the words of Cato, came sober to the task of de-

His temperance and generosity,

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 52., who quotes the double-edged saying of the elder Curio, "Omnium mulierum virum et omnium virorum mulierum."

<sup>2</sup> Dion xliii. 20.



CHAP.  
XXII.

struction.<sup>1</sup> Nor was there any petty cupidity in the eagerness with which he grasped the spoils of the conquered provinces. The pearls of Britain, the statues and gems of Asia, the hoarded gold of Gades and Antioch, the slaves of exquisite figure and curious accomplishments, which became the ransom of his victories, were, in his hands, the instruments of a lofty ambition, not objects of sordid avarice. He was more liberal in giving than rapacious in seizing. Mamurra, Balbus, and many others, could attest his readiness to enrich his favourite servants, and in instituting Octavius his principal heir, he reduced the inheritance by a legacy of 300 sesterces to every Roman citizen.<sup>2</sup>

His clemency.

The gentleness of Cæsar's manners in his intercourse with his associates presents an amiable feature in the character of a man so much their superior. Few public men ever made or retained so many personal friends, and in this respect he is favourably contrasted with the most eminent of his rivals, Crassus and Pompeius. The clemency which he exhibited towards his adversaries cannot,

<sup>1</sup> Suet. *Jul.* 53.: "Verbum M. Catonis est, unum ex omnibus Cæsarem ad evertendam rempublicam sobrium accessisse." He goes on to tell a pleasing story in illustration of his moderation. Comp. Vell. ii. 41.: "Magno illi Alexandro sed sobrio neque iracundo similimus."

<sup>2</sup> 300 sesterces=3*l.* The number of the urban citizens we have seen on a recent occasion amounted to 170,000, and was probably considerably larger at Cæsar's death. He also bequeathed to the people his gardens on the other side of the Tiber, in which Cleopatra had been lodged. Suet. *Jul.* 83.; Plutarch, *Brut.* 20.; Appian. ii. 143.; Dion. xlv. 35. According to the latter, however, Octavius, who certainly ought to have known best, affirmed that the legacy to the citizens was much smaller; viz. 30 drachmas to each, instead of 75.

in fairness, be ascribed merely to policy. The Romans themselves never so disparaged it, and when they remembered how effectively his successor wielded the sword of proscription for the maintenance of his power, they might reasonably regret and applaud the mildness of their elder master. We may venture, indeed, to surmise that if Cæsar had attained his dangerous eminence in early youth, he would have been less scrupulous as to the means of protecting himself; but there seems reason for believing that, by the time he had climbed the summit of his ambition, the veteran of pleasure and adventure had begun to feel the hollowness of gratification, and to shrink from doing violence to his better nature. Cæsar, indeed, had too many objects of interest around him to become absorbed in any one. The sphere even of his literary engagements embraced almost every known subject of intellectual occupation. His historical labours are sufficiently attested by the works which have descended to us under his name; and it must be remembered that, at a time when mere dexterity in composition was a rare and difficult accomplishment, the publication of only a few books in terse and vigorous language implied of necessity an extended acquaintance with the masters of literature. Cæsar's historical style claims to be favourably contrasted with the roughness of Cato and Varro, and even the artificial rhetoric of Cicero and Sallust, if it may not be compared with the chastened elegance of Livy, or the sententious gravity of Tacitus. But in its freedom, ease, and openness it presents an unbroken reflection of the mind from

His excellence in literature.

CHAP.  
XXII.

which it emanated, confident in its simplicity and superior to artifice. In the wordy contests of the bar and the forum, it was declared by his countrymen that Cæsar might have rivalled the great orator himself, if he had not preferred to throw himself into action. He composed, moreover, a treatise on grammar, and also the celebrated satire on Cato, an essay which seems to have made a great impression on the judgment of his contemporaries. Though destitute, perhaps, himself of the lively humour which charms society<sup>1</sup>, he was a shrewd observer and a profound thinker, and he made a collection of wise and witty sayings, storing up, like Lord Bacon, for the basis of a new structure of philosophy the condensed experience of past ages. In early youth he had written tragedies after the Greek model: during his rapid march from Italy into Spain before his last campaign, he amused himself with composing a poem, perhaps in a lighter and more original vein, under the title of his "Journey." As chief pontiff he compiled an official work on the subject of augury; and that he was not a mere bystander while the reformation of the calendar was carried out by his agents, may be surmised from his having devoted a special work to the science of astronomy.

Universality  
of his  
genius.

But while other illustrious men have been reputed great for their excellence in some one department of human genius, it was declared by the con-

<sup>1</sup> In this sense the observation attributed to Niebuhr (*Lectures on Roman History*, ii. 45.) that not one witty saying of Cæsar is recorded, is quite true. But his serious retorts were often smart as well as severe.



current voice of antiquity that Cæsar was excellent in all. He had genius, understanding, memory, taste, reflection, industry and exactness.<sup>1</sup> "He was great," repeats a modern writer, "in every thing he undertook; as a captain, a statesman, a lawgiver, a jurist, an orator, a poet, an historian, a grammarian, a mathematician, and an architect."<sup>2</sup> The secret of this manifold excellence was discovered by Pliny in the unparalleled energy of his intellectual powers, which could devote themselves without distraction to several subjects at once, or rush at any moment from one occupation to another with the abruptness and rapidity of lightning.<sup>3</sup> Cæsar could be writing and reading, dictating and listening all at the same time; he was wont to occupy four amanuenses at once, and had been known on occasions to employ as many as seven together.<sup>4</sup> And as if to complete the picture of the most perfect specimen of human ability, we are assured that in all the exercises of the camp his vigour and skill were not less conspicuous. He fought at the most perilous moments in the ranks of the soldiers; he could manage his charger without the use of reins<sup>5</sup>, and he saved his life at Alexandria by his address in the art of swimming.<sup>6</sup>

But the province of the historian must be kept distinct from that of the biographer. For the former the survey of Cæsar's character derives

Cæsar re-  
presents his  
age in his  
qualities  
and defects.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* ii. 44.

<sup>2</sup> Drumann, iii. 746.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. Cicero's remarkable expression (*ad Att.* viii. 9. 4.): "Sed hoc τρέας horribili vigilantia, celeritate, diligentia est."

<sup>4</sup> Plin. *H. N.* vii. 25.

<sup>5</sup> Plut. *Cæs.* 17.; Suet. *Jul.* 57.

<sup>6</sup> Suet. *l. c.*: "Si flumina morarentur nando trajiciens, vel innixus inflatis utribus."

CHAP.  
XXII.

its chief interest from the manner in which it illustrates the times wherein he occupied so prominent a place. The disposition and conduct of the great man we have been contemplating correspond faithfully with the intellectual and moral development of the age of which he was the most perfect representative. He combined literature with action, humanity with sternness, free-thinking with superstition, energy with voluptuousness, a noble and liberal ambition with a fearful want of moral principle. In these striking inconsistencies, which none but himself could blend in one harmonious temperament, he represented the manifold conflicting tendencies which appeared in various proportions in the character of the Roman nobility, at a period when they had thrown off the formal restraints of their Etruscan discipline, and the specious indulgence of Hellenic cultivation lured them into vice, selfishness, and impiety.

The ruling  
idea of the  
Etruscan  
institutions.

The ruling idea of the Etruscan institutions was their immediate derivation from a divine authority. The Lucumo or military chieftain was at the same time the priest and augur of the national religion. Under the marvellous fiction of the apparition of the dwarf Tages, who was declared to have sprung from the soil to teach the worship claimed by the gods, he represented the archives of his creed as inspired and infallible. All the political and social institutions of his country he invested with the same divine sanction; places, not of worship only, but of ordinary abode, the walls of cities no less than the precincts of temples, domestic customs and public ceremonies, family relations and official

personages, births, marriages and funerals, games, spectacles and sacrifices, all were inaugurated and sanctified by holy and mysterious formulas. The minute details into which a ceremonial law so comprehensive necessarily ran demanded for their requirement the devotion of a particular profession, and even of an hereditary caste. The Etruscans divided mankind into two classes, the teachers and the believers; and the former of these was easily led to pretend to a peculiar sanctity, and perhaps to believe in it. The claims, however, which they advanced upon the submission of the human intellect required the production of some apparent proofs. The Etruscan augurs asserted that they possessed the art of foretelling events by divination. According to them the secrets of the gods were not imparted directly by means of inspired oracles, but were to be learnt by man through a holy discipline of observation and experience. They inquired, under the direction of technical rules, into the hidden properties of nature, particularly those of the electric phenomena<sup>1</sup>, and whatever progress they made in real knowledge they had the art of turning their discoveries to the credit of their institutions.

It was from these teachers that the ancient Romans derived the ritual part of their religion.

The Romans adopt the Etrus-

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *de Divin.* i. 41, 42.; Diodor. Sic. v. 40.; Senec. *Nat. Qu.* ii. 32.: "Hoc autem inter nos et Tuscos, quibus summa persequendorum fulminum est scientia, interest. Nos putamus, quod nubes collisæ sunt, ideo fulmina emitti; ipsi existimant, nubes collidi, ut fulmina emittantur." He proceeds to expound and controvert the teaching of the Etruscans on this subject. Compare Micali, *L'Italie*, &c. trad. de Raoul-Rochette, ii. 246. foll.



CHAP.  
XXII.

can discipline under certain limitations.

But, though they embraced with superstitious awe the manifold ceremonies of the Etruscan cult, they never allowed themselves to be so completely enchained by their dogmatic formalisms as the people from whom they derived them. Their race from the first was too mixed in its character to be exclusively enthralled by the ideas of any one of its component elements. The Roman priests and diviners never succeeded in separating themselves as a distinct caste from the rest of the people. Though in the primitive ages the Roman patrician claimed the exclusive possession of all his religious secrets, the progress of political enfranchisement introduced the plebeians to a share in this as in all other privileges. Though the science of augury continued for centuries to be assiduously cultivated, and its infallibility strenuously maintained, bold spirits were never wanting to defy its conclusions whenever they were strongly opposed to any obvious expediency. Still the Roman people continued to boast, on the whole with justice, of the soundness and devotedness of their faith. To this they rejoiced to attribute the success of their arms and policy. The unbelieving Greeks admired it with a sigh.<sup>1</sup> The superior civilization of the Etruscans exercised a dominant influence over Rome, not in religious matters only, but in manners, arts, and literature. It was from Etruria that she imported her music, and her stage-players, who were properly singers.<sup>2</sup> The genius of the Etruscans, though

<sup>1</sup> Polyb. vi. 56.; Dionys. *Ant. Rom.* ii. 18, 19.

<sup>2</sup> See Niebuhr, *H. R.* i. 133. E. T.

it appears never to have turned towards poetry<sup>1</sup>, excelled in works of scientific information, as well as in the cultivation of the arts. So late as the fifth century it was still the fashion for the youth of Rome to be regularly trained in the literature of Etruria, as at a later period in that of Greece.<sup>2</sup>

The effect of the theocratic discipline to which the Romans so far subjected their imaginations, impressed a marked colour upon their national character for several centuries. The history of no nation presents such a picture of blind devotion to the public interest; such entire submission of the citizen to the claims of the community, such heroic abnegation of all selfish views. Brutus and Manlius offered up their sons on the altar of the commonwealth. Curtius and Decius made the more generous sacrifice of their own lives. Regulus kept his word with Carthage, to maintain the honour of his country, rather than his own. Fabricius rejected the bribes of Pyrrhus. Cincinnatus relinquished, at the call of patriotism, the simple leisure earned by a life of public service. These stories, whatever be their actual truth, serve at least to paint the heroic ideal of the nation. The legend of the contest with Brennus, and the final triumph of patient resolve in the extremity of disaster, was enacted in real life throughout the mortal agony of the second Punic war. The manners of the old

Influence  
of the  
Etruscan  
discipline  
upon the  
Roman  
character.

<sup>1</sup> Niebuhr refers to Varro, *L. L.* iv, 9.: "Volusius qui tragœdîas Tuscas scripsit:" these were probably translations or adaptations from the Greek drama for performance in the Greek theatres at Fesulæ and elsewhere, in the latest period of Etruscan cultivation.

<sup>2</sup> Liv. ix. 36.: "Habeo auctores vulgo tam Romanos pueros sicut nunc Græcis, ita Etruscis literis erudiri solitos."

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

Roman heroes corresponded to their military virtues. Simple, frugal, and honest in their private conduct, they were just and generous, according to their own principles, in their dealings with enemies. Such at least was the boast of their own countrymen, and such qualities could not have been wholly alien to the practice of a people who paid so much homage to them in theory. But against this high tone of moral feeling there were grave counterbalancing faults to be set. The passion of the Romans for conquest hardened their hearts against the natural sentiment of compassion. The cruelty they learnt in conflict with the enemy in the field, they exercised with no less harshness at home on their slaves, their children, their wives, and their parents. The ordinary punishments of the law were sanguinary and relentless. The patrician creditor confined and tortured his plebeian debtor.<sup>1</sup> The superstitious terrors of the people required to be allayed by human sacrifices. The principles of the religion learned from Etruria fostered intolerant claims to the exclusive favour of the deities. To reject and persecute foreign forms of worship was long held by them as a religious principle, and the gradual relaxation of their bigotry only marked a decline in the vital influence of their creed. It was on this principle that their pride of nationality was founded, and in

<sup>1</sup> The fragment of the XII. Tables on this subject, "*Secanto; si plusve minusve secuerant se fraude esto*," may be interpreted of a division of the debtor's estate rather than of his body: but the severities which the creditor was allowed to inflict on the person of his debtor are sufficiently notorious without pressing the literal sense of these words.



this it found its strongest support. The Romans regarded all foreigners as barbarians, long before they had any pretensions, like the Greeks, to superior refinement of their own. In their early language, as in their original sentiments, the name of stranger and enemy were synonymous. The effect of their religious training, had it continued to exercise its primitive sway over them, would have been to isolate their ideas and narrow the sphere of their sympathies, till they sank into exhaustion, evacuated of all life and energy. Austerity in its decay becomes debasing hypocrisy. The Romans would have been the victims, like the Egyptians and the Mexicans, of a formal civilization, and a rigid ritual. The progress of their social development would have been mere corruption. No expansion of the heart or the intellect could have sprung up among them, without the infusion of more genial principles of national life.

The domination of a priestly caste may maintain the outward forms of a ritual and a dogmatic creed long after the vitality of belief has become extinct. If the Etruscans gave no direct indication of having secretly fallen away from the faith of their ancestors, yet as it was impossible for the class to which the interpretation of the Divine will was assigned, to continue long deceived as to the impostures they practised, so we can hardly doubt that the Etruscan discipline had gradually relaxed its hold of the popular mind at the period of the Roman conquest. Still less had the external respect which the Etruscans maintained for their form of worship prevented the seeds of corruption of manners

Internal  
corruption  
of the  
Etruscans.

CHAP.  
XXII.

from germinating in an atmosphere of wealth, luxury, and security. There is reason to believe that they only fell before the Romans because they had already succumbed to the blandishments of licentious voluptuousness. The state of the arts in the later period of their glory testifies to great sensual refinement<sup>1</sup>, such as is rarely found in conjunction with the masculine virtues required to withstand the assault of so vigorous an enemy as their youthful neighbours then were. The stories of their depravity which the Greeks adopted and circulated, may be gross exaggerations<sup>2</sup>: nevertheless, it is hardly reasonable to doubt their reflecting an image of the truth; for the Greeks had no particular temptation like the Romans, either themselves to defame them, or to take a pleasure in hearing them defamed. Undoubtedly the Romans in their turn would have trodden the same downward path of unbelief and corruption as their predecessors, even if they had been able to preserve themselves untainted by the Hellenic ideas, which gave in fact the most vehement impulse to their moral decline. The loosening of moral and religious ties, the spread of luxury, the growth of impure and extravagant tastes, were all subjects of complaint to the sages of the republic, before the conquest of Sicily and Magna Græcia, and still more of Greece beyond the sea, opened the flood-gates of freethinking and evil-living by which Rome was so rapidly inundated.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Micali, iv. 276.

<sup>2</sup> Theopompus and Timæus in Athenæus, xii. 14., referred to by Niebuhr, *H. R.* i. 139., who discredits them on the ground that no licentious representations are to be found on any Etruscan works of art.

<sup>3</sup> Sallust, *Fragm. Hist. ap. Augustin. Civ. D.* ii. 18.: "Ex quo

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

 Degraded  
state of  
Greek in-  
tellect and  
morals in  
the sixth  
century of  
the city.

What had the descendants of the great masters of art, literature, and philosophy, to offer to the young aspirants for the honours of civilization? The old age of nations, it has been observed, is rarely venerable.<sup>1</sup> In the man advancing years, while they subdue the mind and bow the bodily frame, often elevate the character by chastening the passions. But in nations the active spirit of intellectual progress is generally succeeded by fretful restlessness in the pursuit of sensual gratification. The masculine appetites of instinct are replaced by conscious pruriency of imagination. Selfishness succeeds to self-devotion, pleasure is idolized instead of virtue, the subtle refinements of wit supplant the discipline of the understanding. In the sixth century of the city, the literature of Greece was still brilliant, but it had renounced every noble tendency. The taste for the æsthetic arts had given way to a demand for merely sensual enjoyments. Painting, sculpture, and music, had become lifeless refinements upon the spontaneous creations of the past age of invention. Poetry had dwindled from the sublime proportions of the Epic and the Drama to the compact neatness of the Epigram, and it had lost even more in spirit than in form. Greek literature, as it recommended itself to the admiration of the Roman conquerors, was the sickly product of an Oriental court, rather than the vigorous offspring of Athenian freemen. Volup-

tempore majorum mores non paulatim ut antea, sed torrentis modo præcipitati." Comp. Liv. xxxix. 6.; Plin. *H. N.* xxxiv. 7.; Vell. ii. 1.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Duruy, *Hist. des Romains*, ii. 4., from whom this image has been borrowed.



CHAP.  
XXII.

tuous luxury reigned supreme in all the arrangements of private life; it was as cooks, parasites, buffoons, and panders, that the Greeks ministered to all the tastes which their rude masters had yet developed; they appealed to a frivolous philosophy to dignify pleasure with the name of virtue, and declared to an admiring auditory that the gratifications of the table are worthy of the wise man's most serious attention.

Decay and  
fall of the  
religion of  
the Greeks.

While this feeble corruption pervaded the arts and literature, the manners, and morals of the Greeks, their religion, the most important element in all civilization, suffered more than all the rest in the general decay. The Greeks, notwithstanding the brilliancy of their mythology, and the inexhaustible fertility of their invention in discovering objects for every human character and disposition to worship, had never been a believing people. Even in the simple age of the Homeric poems, their heroes are represented as defying the authority of omens and appealing against them to the tribunal of conscience and reason.<sup>1</sup> It was in vain that the characters assigned to the rulers of the world were brought more into harmony with the demands of the understanding; that the deification of War, Lust, and Deceit, gave way to the more decorous worship of Compassion and Vigilance, Chastity and Renown, Persuasion and Concord.<sup>2</sup> The early appeal to Reason was never suffered to succumb

<sup>1</sup> As in the famous line (*Il. μ. 243.*):

*εἰς οἶκόνδ' ἄριστος ἀμύνεσθαι περὶ πάτρης.*

<sup>2</sup> Constant, *Polytheisme Romaine*, i. 18., from Pausanias.

before the pretensions of Tradition. Shadowy as were the foundations of the religious usages of the Greeks, which in their case it would be preposterous to dignify with the name of beliefs, they could make no show of resistance to the assaults of the intellect, and the bold speculations of trained dialecticians. Reason had settled into atheism at a time when science was content to believe that the sun was about the size of the Peloponnesus. The sceptics of the age of Pericles were hardly prompted to deny a first cause by any experimental amplification of the domain of secondary ones. If these heartless speculations provoked a transient reaction on the side of belief, the faint reclamations of the followers of Socrates in favour of Providence and God were soon swept away in the torrent of vulgar admiration which hailed the exaltation of Pleasure in the philosophy of the Garden. The general estimation which this system acquired, could not fail to prove fatal to all the higher virtues which depend on the principle of faith. Patriotism, honour, even common probity, had no longer any solid ground to stand upon; the affections which obey human instinct alone retained their influence, and even these were degraded and sensualized. The Epicureans built up the edifice of materialism of which Aristotle had laid the foundations. Infidelity was now fortified by empirical researches into the causes of things, and even the founders of the system of the Stoics could hardly sustain themselves above the universal denial of a state of future retribution. According to them the soul of the perfect sage passed, indeed, after death into the sun and stars,

Fatal influence of philosophy upon the principles of faith and morals.

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

or the luminous regions between our atmosphere and the heavens, there to enjoy divine intuitions till the day of the general conflagration; but on the prospects of the common herd their silence was gloomy and ominous. Their barren ideal of virtue had no attraction for the multitude. It remained among the Greeks the curious speculation of a few subtle visionaries; nor did it make way even in the more congenial soil of the Roman mind till it descended from the height of its extravagant conceptions to a more just and practical view of human nature.

Ennius introduces into Rome the poetry of Greece.

It was in the middle of the sixth century of the city, that Ennius began to familiarize the Romans with the models of Grecian literature. Himself a native of Magna Græcia, he had imbibed on subjects of popular belief the lax notions prevalent among the learned wherever the Greek language was spoken. His imitations were not confined to the old masters of epic and tragic song. While he felt the poetic beauty of the ancient mythology which he set himself to reproduce in Roman verse, he was so little imbued with any reverential feeling towards it, that he translated at the same time the Sacred History of Euhemerus<sup>1</sup>, an author who had been stigmatized in his own age and country for impiety, in degrading the popular conceptions of the divinities into the mere deification of illustrious mortals. The Romans, unsuspecting as yet of the consequences of tampering with received dogmas, showed less indignation at this profanity, than their corrupt

<sup>1</sup> Cicero, *de Nat. Deor.* i. 42.; Plut. *de Isid. et Osir.* Opp. vii. 420. Reiske; Lactant. *de fals. Relig.* i. 2.



predecessors in the same school.<sup>1</sup> Even while the ideas imported from beyond the sea continued silently to undermine the forms of popular belief, the moral principles which are based on an instinctive sense of responsibility and apprehension of future retribution were too deeply rooted in the serious Italian mind to be easily shaken. It happened, however, that at the close of the same century, the Athenians sent an embassy to Rome to negotiate the remission of a sum which the republic had commanded them to pay to a neighbouring state.<sup>2</sup> Unfortunately the men whom they commissioned to plead the cause of justice before the tribunal of power were precisely the best qualified, by the parade of their specious sophistry, to confirm the principles of remorseless tyranny. The envoys were the most eloquent representatives of the three great philosophical schools, Diogenes of the Stoic, Critolaus of the Peripatetic, and Carneades of the Academic. While the senate deliberated or haughtily deferred the question, these clever disputants amused themselves with haranguing the youth of Rome on the most recondite subjects of human inquiry, and found among them an eager and curious audience. The novelty of their topics was even less seductive than the charm of their con-

<sup>1</sup> Constant, *Polyth. Rom.* ii. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *de Orat.* ii. 37.; Gell. vii. 14., xvii. 21. There is some reason to question the authenticity of this story, but it may serve at least to represent the undoubted fact of the jealousy with which Greek literature was regarded by the Romans of that age, and the hostile measures they adopted against it. In the book entitled *Suetonius de claris Rhetoribus* (in princ.), the decree of the senate is copied, by which, it is said, the rhetoricians and philosophers were expelled the city, in the year u. c. 592. Comp. Gell. xv. 11.

CHAP.  
XXII

versation.<sup>1</sup> The subtilties of logic, and the graces of rhetoric, were equally new to their admiring pupils. They agreed in laying down the broad principles of materialism, and upon this foundation the Academic raised his bewildering labyrinth of doubt and indifference, confusing right and wrong, truth and falsehood, and holding up Expediency as the only unchangeable pole-star of human wisdom.

Cato warns  
the Romans  
against  
Greek  
literature.

Among the wise men of the elder generation one alone sounded the alarm at the licentiousness of this fashionable teaching. Cato the Censor, then approaching his eightieth year, exerted all the authority of his age and reputed wisdom to obtain the speedy settlement of the affair in suspense, and the dismissal of the dangerous negotiators.<sup>2</sup> His long experience of men and things had confirmed in him the antique prejudices of his childhood. The Greeks, he was wont to say, are the parents of every vice; whenever they shall introduce their literature among us, they will scatter the seeds of universal corruption.<sup>3</sup> His solemn warnings made a strong impression upon the senators; the philosophers were dismissed in all haste, but their lessons were not so easily forgotten. The fatal taste had been implanted, and new successors arrived to cultivate it. Every art and science of Greek civilization soon had its foreign professors at Rome,

<sup>1</sup> Ælian. *V. H.* iii. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Plut. *Cat. Maj.* 22.; Quintil. *Inst.* xii. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. *H. N.* xv. 4., xxix. 7. Plut. *Cat. Maj.* 23. He remarks upon this; ἀλλὰ ταύτην μὲν αὐτοῦ δυσφημίαν ὁ χρόνος ἀποδείκνυσσι κενήν, ἐν ᾗ τοῖς τε πράγμασιν ἢ πόλεις ἤρθη μεγίστη, καὶ πρὸς Ἑλληνικὰ μαθήματα καὶ παιδείαν ἤσπασαν ἔσχεν οἰκείως.

and they all conspired together to overthrow the prejudices on which the salutary belief of the nation had so long been nourished.

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

The relaxation of the bonds of religious belief had overtaken the Greeks in the impotence of old age, and the vices to which it gave the rein were those of national decrepitude and degradation. It only sunk them more deeply into the meannesses and cowardly trickeries of a people of slaves. They exercised their newly-acquired licence in devising shifts to escape chastisement rather than in steeling themselves against remorse for deeds of rapine and cruelty. But when the same pernicious science of false reasoning was introduced into Rome, it found there a people of heroes and conquerors, just at the dawn of national consciousness, just beginning to replace mere instinct by a serious sense of duty, and to ask themselves, what was the natural bent of their genius, and the responsibility it entailed upon them? The spirit of irreligion was all they wanted to silence every rising scruple, and encourage them to devote all their youthful energy and enthusiasm to the career of conquest, tyranny, and plunder. It let them loose upon the world irresistible and relentless. Their strength was that of giants, and their vices were those of giants also. Pride, ambition, rapacity, and violence were installed in the vacant thrones of the mild Saturn and the bounteous Ops, of the just Jupiter and the steadfast Terminus.

Free-thinking introduced at Rome.

The tone of free-thinking in religious matters which became fashionable among the educated men at Rome corresponded in its bold assurance with

The tone of free-thinking harmonizes with



CHAP.  
XXII.

the spirit of  
the age.

the spirit of enterprize which marked at this epoch their political career. They threw themselves into the new paths of science, not indeed as curious speculators or patient seekers of the truth, but with all the thorough-going intrepidity which signalized their public character. The moral feelings of the Romans were as coarse and blunt as their nervous sensibilities.<sup>1</sup> They did not feel the sacrifice, so painful to tender and scrupulous consciences, of rejecting the supports of faith and tradition. They beheld without misgiving the restraints of ancient principles give way before the advance of all-conquering reason, and regarded every new licence they acquired as a province wrested from the dominion of the enemy. Crimes of violence and rapacity revelled in a presumed impunity, as regards both divine and human laws, on a scale unparalleled perhaps in all human history. In the meanwhile the barriers of antique severity were swept rapidly away. The immense treasures of Greece and Asia were poured in overflowing streams into Rome. Luxury came before refinement. Art was adopted as fashionable before intelligence had learnt to appreciate it. The fastidious patrician patronized all the masters of ancient literature; but the models from Alexandria or Cyrene which he selected to imitate show how little he could discriminate between their merits. Civilization

<sup>1</sup> The Romans, says Augustin (*Civ. D.* ii. 12.), forbade the poets to bring the magistrates into contempt, but imposed no restraint on their ridiculing the gods. He refers to an expression of Scipio in Cicero's work on the Republic, and adds: "Poetas Romanos nulli Deorum pepercisse."

continued long to be the mere exterior polish of a small educated class, and was courted and caressed as an ornament rather than felt as the humanizer of the heart.

But superstition was at hand to avenge religion, as it always will sooner or later. The first symptoms of the decay of the old Italian traditions, comparatively pure and austere as they were, were followed at a short interval by the introduction of hideous and brutal mysteries of foreign origin. The overthrow of the faith of the Greeks in a divine Providence just, wise and beneficent, had been succeeded by a vulgar addiction to magic, the belief, that is, in the powers of evil, the science, as the Hindoos define it, of the fallen angels.<sup>1</sup> When man has once lost his hold of the idea of retribution and compensating good, he has no resource but to prostrate himself before the powers of evil, of which he is conscious around him and within him. This spirit of fear may indeed co-exist along with the spirit of love, and thus even in the laws of the Twelve Tables we find that the practices of magic were authoritatively interdicted.<sup>2</sup> But it was when the gods of Greece had fallen into utter contempt, that devil-worship first reared itself ostentatiously by the side of their temples. The Babylonian sorcerers and astrologers had followed the Macedonian armies into the West. The magician Osthanes, under the patronage of Alexander, taught the occult sciences of Persia to the Greeks.<sup>3</sup> Mystic rites, ostensibly connected with the respectable

Introduc-  
tion of  
Oriental su-  
perstitions.

<sup>1</sup> Constant, *du Polytheisme Romain*, i. 105.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. *H. N.* xxviii. 4., xxx. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. *H. N.* xxx. 2.

CHAP.  
XXII.

names of familiar deities, were promenaded from land to land, and the curious and dissatisfied were seduced into initiation in them by the promise of superior illumination or extraordinary powers. It was at the time when the attack of Ennius upon the divinity of the rulers of Olympus had attracted general notice, that an obscure native of Greece brought first to Etruria, and shortly afterwards to the more congenial soil of Rome, the mysterious orgies of Bacchus, which had already obtained an infamous celebrity in the East. The horrible wickednesses which were perpetrated at the initiations, at which the passions of the youth of either sex were inflamed by wine and music, secrecy and security, had been practised by the devotees without remorse for some time, before they were discovered by the revelations of a slave to her lover, for whose purity or safety she was concerned. The matter was laid before the consuls, and the results of a thorough investigation exposed to the shuddering multitude. The Bacchic orgies were denounced as a monstrous association of debauchery, branching out into adulteries, murders, and possibly seditious combinations. Through them the crime of poisoning, it was said, had become familiar to the Roman matrons; and after the first root of the evil had been extirpated in the city, the inquisition which was made throughout the rest of Italy brought no less than two thousand such miscreants to justice.<sup>1</sup>

It was one thing, however, to proscribe an indecent cult, and visit its devotees with condign

They are  
proscribed  
but con-

<sup>1</sup> Liv. xxxix. 8. 19. 41.; Cic. *de Leg.* ii. 15.; Val. Max. i. 3. 1.; comp. Augustin, *C. D.* vii. 21.; Tertull. *Apolog.* 6., A. V. 557.



chastisement, another to eradicate the moral want and to stifle the spiritual disquietude which impelled men to slake at such impure sources their thirst for a fixed belief. The Bacchanalia, though constantly interdicted, continued to reappear in the city. The Thracian or Orphic mysteries, in which Jupiter was said to be worshipped under the title of Sabazius, caused hardly less scandal to the politic defenders of the pristine institutions.<sup>1</sup> Æsculapius and Cybele were admitted to the honours of the national religion<sup>2</sup>, and other foreign divinities were placed, by a curious analogy, on the footing of tributaries to the state.<sup>3</sup> The monsters of Egypt, however, were more rigidly proscribed: the senate overthrew their altars; but their foreign adherents, supported doubtless by the secret favour of the populace, as often surreptitiously restored them.<sup>4</sup> In the meanwhile Rome overflowed with the impure spawn of superstition. Conjurors, soothsayers, astrologers and fortune-tellers filled

<sup>1</sup> Val. Max. i. 3. 2.: "C. Cornelius Hispanus prætor peregrinus . . . edicto Chaldaeos . . . abire . . . jussit. Idem qui Sabazii Jovis cultu simulato mores Rom. inficere conati sunt domos suas repetere coegit." A. U. 614.

<sup>2</sup> Liv. xxix. 14.; Ovid. *Met.* xv. 625.

<sup>3</sup> Tertull. (*ad Nation.* i. 10.) calls them, "vectigales Dei." The government demanded a tribute for permission to worship them.

<sup>4</sup> Representations of Egyptian rites are said to be found on some Etruscan vases. Heyne, *Opusc.* vi. 194.; comp. Tertull. *l. c.*: "Ceterum Serapim et Isidem et Harpocratem et Anubim prohibitos Capitolio Varro commemorat, eorumque statuas a senatu disjectas, non nisi per vim popularium restructas. Sed tamen et Gabinius Consul Kal. Jan. cum vix hostias probaret, præ popularium cœtu, quia nil de Serape et Iside constituisset, potiolem habuit senatus censuram quam impetum vulgi, et aras institui prohibuit." Cicero (*de Leg.* ii. 8.) denounces the public celebration of foreign rites, but allows them to be cultivated in private.

CHAP.  
XXII.

every street, and introduced themselves into every domestic establishment. The dreams of Cæsar and Pompeius were gravely related.<sup>1</sup> Cicero collected the records of supernatural phenomena<sup>2</sup>; Vatinius invoked the shades of the dead, and read, it was said, the will of the gods in the entrails of a murdered child.<sup>3</sup> Sextus demanded the secrets of futurity of the Thessalian sorceress<sup>4</sup>; Figulus, the Etruscan augur, obtained the reputation of a prophet<sup>5</sup>; Appius Claudius consulted the oracle of Delphi.<sup>6</sup> The belief in portents and omens exercised an unconscious sway over thousands who openly derided all spiritual existences, and professed atheists trembled in secret at the mysterious potency of magical incantations.

Austere  
principles  
of the old  
Roman law  
of family:  
1. Of marriage.

Nevertheless, though Cicero wrote a book in disproof of the science of divination<sup>7</sup>, and even Cato the Censor had wondered how one augur could meet another without a smile<sup>8</sup>, the formal usages of the Roman religion continued for ages to survive the encroachments of free-thinking upon the faith they originally symbolized. Nor was the resistance

<sup>1</sup> If, that is, we may suppose Plutarch and others to have drawn from contemporary authorities.

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *de Divin.* i.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *in Vatin.* 6.

<sup>4</sup> Lucan. vi. in fin.

<sup>5</sup> Suet. (*Oct.* 94.) asserts as a current tradition, that Figulus predicted to the father of Augustus that his son should become lord of the world. Comp. Dion. xlv. 1.

<sup>6</sup> Lucan. v. 70. See above.

<sup>7</sup> In the second part of the treatise *de Divinatione* Cicero argues in his own person against the possibility of any discovery of future events, and particularly against the whole Etruscan discipline of augury (see ii. 12.): "Ut ordiar de haruspicina quam ego reipublicæ causa communisque religionis colendam censeo: sed soli sumus; licet verum exquirere," &c.

<sup>8</sup> Cic. *de Divin.* ii. 24.

less obstinate which the fundamental prescriptions of social life opposed to the elements of innovation. The relations of family and property among the Romans were determined on a peculiarly artificial system. The first principle of their law was the paramount right of the state over the citizen. Whether as head of a family or as proprietor, he had no natural rights of his own; his privileges were created by the law as well as defined by it. The state, in the plenitude of her power, delegated a portion of her own irresponsibility to the citizen, who satisfied the conditions she required, in order to become the parent of her children; but at the same time she demanded of him the sacrifice of his free-agency to her own rude ideas of political expediency. The right of contracting the union which she dignified with the name of proper matrimony, was restricted to persons duly qualified, not only by the ordinary and reasonable conditions of mature age, consent of parents, distance of blood and actual celibacy, but by the status also of citizenship.<sup>1</sup> The modes in which such a marriage might be contracted were three: *confarreation*, a religious ceremony of peculiar solemnity; *coemption*, a symbolical representation of the primitive usage of bargain and sale; and *use*, a remnant of the rude state of society, when it was first thought expedient to hallow by an honourable title the faithful cohabitation of a definite period. By one of these modes the woman passed from her parent's family

<sup>1</sup> The restriction was originally still more closely limited. It was in the year u.c. 310 that the tribune Canuleius effected the authorization of marriage between patricians and plebeians. Liv. iv. 2.



CHAP.  
XXII.

into that of her husband, and became a participator in all its religious and social privileges. She thus became entitled to the style of housewife (*materfamilias*), more venerable than that of matron (*matrona*), which belonged in strictness to the female connected with the male by a lower tie.<sup>1</sup> She was delivered, in legal phrase, into her husband's hands; his dominion over her was recognized as absolute; he became master of her person and her goods almost as if by the right of conquest; alone, or at a later period, with the concurrence of her next of kin, he could condemn her to death.<sup>2</sup> In her civil relation to him she assumed no other footing than that of her own children. She inherited from him as an adopted daughter, and after his death received a legal guardian in one of her new kinsmen, or whomsoever her husband might appoint by will.

## 2. Of parental authority.

The same austerity presided over the old Roman ideas of the parental authority. Within the sanctuary of the family mansion the father ruled supreme. He exercised the power of life and death over his children as over his wife.<sup>3</sup> The father could sell his child, and, if the child recovered his freedom by emancipation, could sell him again even to the third time, before he finally escaped altogether

<sup>1</sup> Heinecc. i. 10. 1. Cicero says, *Topic.* 3.: "Genus enim est uxor, ejus duæ formæ; una matrum familias earum quæ in manum conveniant, altera earum quæ tantummodo uxores habentur."

<sup>2</sup> The authorities referred to are Dionys. *Ant. Rom.* ii. 25.; Gell. ii. 23.; Plin. *H. N.* xiv. 13.; Suet. *Tib.* 35.; Tac. *Ann.* ii. 1., xiii. 32.; Val. Max. vi. 3. 8.

<sup>3</sup> Besides the jurists see Dionys. ii. 26, 27.; Val. Max. v. 2.; Senec. *de Clem.* i. 15.; Sallust. *B. C.* 39.

from the parental dominion.<sup>1</sup> The Roman jurists remarked with truth that the extent to which the authority of the parent over the child was sanctioned by their law, was unknown to the institutions of any other state.<sup>2</sup> But this authority was never supposed to be founded in any natural principle; it was merely the creation of state policy: it followed as a corollary upon the idea of civil marriage, and had no place where the union of the parents, as in the *contubernium* or *concubinatus*, though sanctioned and protected by the law, was not consecrated by the title of just or proper matrimony. It was intimately connected with a religious idea, according to which the head of each family was bound to the maintenance of the sacrifices peculiar to it. Each civil household formed an unit in the aggregate which composed what may be denominated the political family, the gens of the Roman community. Whether originally connected in blood, or united only by legal fiction, identity of patronymic and participation in the same duties, obligations, and religious services, maintained the bond of clanship between the several members of these independent societies.

A system so artificial as this could only flourish in a peculiar and exceptional state of society. As soon as an opening was effected for the influx of new modes of thought, it was assuredly doomed to perish, however circumstances, for a while, might retard its fall. The free operation of the principles

Under-  
mined by  
the laxer  
principles  
of natural  
equity.

<sup>1</sup> Dionys. ii. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Gaius, i. 55.: "Fere enim nulli alii sunt homines qui talem in filios suos habent potestatem qualem nos habemus."

CHAP.  
XXII.

of natural equity could not fail to undermine by degrees the prejudices upon which such a system rested. But the extreme tenacity of forms which characterized the ancient Romans, involved the early progress of all new ideas among them in great obscurity. When it suited Cicero's views to adopt the tone of social conservatism, he could complain of the great luminaries of Roman jurisprudence, even of the generation before his own, for the tendency they had shown to relax the primitive strictness of the law of family. Undoubtedly, the burden of maintaining the family sacrifices had become more and more grievous as the interest in their significance and the number of the clan had diminished. The illustrious Scævola fell under the charge of lending the authority of his name, not, indeed, to the overthrow of the old principles, but to a liberal construction of the law regarding them.<sup>1</sup> The examples of Clodius and Dolabella, who resorted openly to a legal fiction to obtain their adoption into foreign houses, show the laxity which pervaded the ideas of their time.<sup>2</sup> Clodius himself had allowed the sacrifices of his own family to fall into desuetude<sup>3</sup>; a demagogue would not have laid himself open to animadversion in this respect, if he had had any reason to fear the prejudices of the people. The women of Rome declaimed against the tyranny of the old law, which

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *de Leg.* ii. 19. Comp. *pro Murena*, 12.: "Sacra interire illi (maiores) noluerunt, horum (jctorum) ingenio senes ad coemptiones faciendas, interimendorum sacrorum causa, reperti sunt."

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *pro Dom.* 13.; Suet. *Tib.* 2.; Dion. xxxviii. 12., xlii. 29.

<sup>3</sup> Cic. *pro Dom.* 12.



placed them upon so unequal a footing with their husbands in the nuptial relation. The men themselves united with their consorts in demanding greater mutual facilities for divorce. *Confarreatio* allowed the husband, indeed, to put away the wife in some strictly limited cases, and by means of a solemn religious process; but it gave the wife no licence to emancipate herself.<sup>1</sup> Such restrictions were incompatible with the prevailing laxity of morals, and it is probable that in the time of Cæsar this particular form of marriage had already become almost obsolete.<sup>2</sup> But *coemptio*, or the fictitious purchase of the wife from her parents, admitted of remancipation or the restitution of the symbolic purchase-money on the part of the wife; and this was the form of which the Roman women so freely availed themselves, under the influence of passion, caprice, or pecuniary interest.<sup>3</sup> This facility of separation could not fail to introduce new regulations in the wife's favour in the settlement of the dowry, and in other not less important respects.<sup>4</sup> At the same time the influence of public opinion imposed limits upon the actual exercise of the parental power. By new exceptional provisions, the child obtained independent property and the means of transferring and bequeathing it. But it is im-

<sup>1</sup> Festus, in voc. *Diffarreatio*.

<sup>2</sup> Compare what Tacitus says of it in the time of Tiberius (*Ann.* iv. 16.).

<sup>3</sup> See on this subject Cælius's letter to Cicero, *ad Div.* viii. 7.

<sup>4</sup> Cic. *pro Murena*, 12.: "Mulieres omnes propter infirmitatem consilii majores in tutorum potestate esse voluerunt: hi (jetti) invenerunt genera tutorum quæ potestate mulierum continerentur." Comp. Gaius, ii. 118.

CHAP.  
XXII.

possible to assign the exact date of any of these innovations; and all we can assume with certainty of the time which we are now considering is, that in practice the principles of equity and natural reason were beginning to temper the harsh formalities of the old law throughout the social relations.

Original  
law of  
property.

Still more rigid and exclusive were the ideas which originally regulated the tenure of property. The cupidity of the simple warriors of ancient Rome was limited to lands and houses, slaves and animals.<sup>1</sup> These, accordingly, were the only objects which the primitive Roman law recognized as property. For these the citizen fought and conquered; these the state secured to him by placing all the modes of procedure regarding them under the sanction of religious forms. These she denominated things *mancipi*, or *handhold* property, and threw the protection of the law over them for the benefit of her citizens only. No length of occupation could obtain the guarantee of the law to any such property in the hands of an alien.<sup>2</sup> In the course of time, however, other wants made themselves felt. The precious metals, ornamental stuffs, pictures, statues, and trinkets of all kinds acquired a value in the eyes of the plunderers of the world's treasures. All such objects accordingly were thrown together in one multifarious class, distinguished from the first by the negative particle only. They were things *nec-mancipi*, not handhold. While the sale and transfer of the former class of objects were placed under the

<sup>1</sup> Ulpian. *Regul.* tit. 19. 1.

<sup>2</sup> XII. Tab. 3.

guarantee of the state, which thought to protect the purchaser from fraud, by requiring the strict execution of the letter of the contract<sup>1</sup>, the latter were only to be acquired at the risk of the buyer. He was obliged to secure himself against deception by his own ingenuity; no religious and sacramental ceremonies intervened to hallow such random transactions; the mere passing from hand to hand, bare tradition, as the jurists phrased it, was a sufficient mode of procedure. In short, the transfer of things not-handhold followed the law of nature, while that of the others was retained within the magic circle of the law of the city.

But it was found impossible to leave so large and increasing a portion of the objects of value in so unprotected a state. By degrees the decisions of the prætors founded on the principles of equity accumulated into a new body of law regarding them. By the side of the civil law, which established the original exclusive definition of handhold or Quiritary dominion, there grew up a new system of natural property under the sanction of the prætorian edicts. This secondary law was applicable to the great mass of provincial territory. While the *ager Romanus* might be held in full or Quiritary possession, under the guarantees of mancipation and usucaption, the soil of the provinces was supposed, by a fiction of the law, to pertain exclusively to the

Affected  
by the de-  
cisions of  
the prætors.

<sup>1</sup> According to the formula, "Uti lingua nuncupassit ita jus esto." XII. Tab. 6. Comp. Cic. *de Orat.* i. 57., *de Off.* iii. 16., where he tells a curious story, from which it appears how completely the law failed in its object. Troplong, *de l'Influence du Christianisme sur le Droit Civil des Romains*, p. 19.



CHAP.  
XXII.

state, and its actual holders were regarded in the light of occupiers and tenants. In real fact this tenant-right was equivalent to actual possession; it was perpetual and irrevocable, and might be transferred by exchange, sale, gift, or succession. But, inasmuch as it did not come under the primitive idea of property, it failed to realise the full dominion which alone was qualified as Quiritary tenure. Accordingly, such property could only be transferred under the forms of equity, and the vast extent and magnitude of the transactions of this kind which were daily occurring, contributed to enhance rapidly the growing importance of this new branch of law, and to diffuse a general knowledge of its principles and respect for them.

Gradually  
modified by  
the prin-  
ciples of  
natural  
reason.

The attempt to infuse the more liberal spirit of natural reason into the strict forms of the original law could not fail to produce much confusion and inconsistency, and give a fair handle to the sarcasms with which a clever advocate might find it convenient to assail the whole system. In the speech for Murena, Cicero audaciously characterizes the civil law as a mass of fictions and incongruities, and declares, with all the presumption of the successful pleader, that the science is not worth the three days' study which would suffice to master its real principles.<sup>1</sup> But his testimony is less exceptionable to the fact that the most illustrious jurisconsults of his own and the previous generation combined to exalt the estimation of equity over strict law. Such were the views of Sulpicius and

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *pro Mur.* 12, 13.

of the orator Crassus.<sup>1</sup> Scaevola, we have already seen, impelled the tendency of public opinion in the same direction. And Cicero himself, though on some occasions he did not scruple to become the advocate of antiquity, was on the whole a partizan of liberal innovation, and his influence contributed in no slight degree to the progress of the new ideas on these subjects.<sup>2</sup> He professed to base his administration of justice in his province on the principles of humanity and reason. As a philosopher and a statesman, he declared that the source and rule of right were not to be sought in the laws of the Twelve Tables, but in the depths of human intelligence; that equity is the true idea of law, the supreme reason engraved in the nature of man, written on his heart, immutable and eternal, beyond the jurisdiction of the senate, bearing sway over all mankind; this law the deity alone has conceived, established, and promulgated.

These noble sentiments constituted, as it were, the essence which the wisest of the Romans had distilled from the records of Greek philosophy. Above all others it bore the flavour of the mind of Plato, and of the mild and liberal masters of the Academic school. This was the great boon which Greece proffered to her conquerors, to counteract in some degree the malign influence of so many of her lessons. We shall have occasion hereafter to trace

Cicero's  
pure moral-  
ity.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Philipp.* iv. 5. of Servius Sulpicius: "Jus civile semper ad æquitatem et facilitatem referebat." Of Crassus (*de Orat.* i.): "Multa tum contra scriptum pro æquo et bono dixit."

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *ad Att.* vi. 1., *de Leg.* ii. 5, 6., *de Fin.* iii. 20., *de Off.* i. 7., *de Rep.* i. 17., iii. 17.: "Natura enim juris explicanda est nobis, neque ab hominibus repetenda natura."

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

the steps by which the Roman law was humanized by the Greek philosophy. The sect of the Stoics, just now beginning to excite attention and compel admiration at Rome, became, by the logical character of its speculations, and the lofty sense it inculcated of justice and duty, an efficient instrument in this salutary reform. For the present we must be content with observing the progress of humanity in its action on a few of the most refined and intelligent class. The pure morality of Cicero's treatise on Duties, and the practical exhibition of benevolence and natural piety which characterizes his ethical and religious writings<sup>1</sup>, could not have sprung from the bosom of a society which was totally unable to appreciate them.

The beneficial effects of Greek philosophy confined to a small class.

It may be presumed however that the evil which the Romans imbibed from their Greek teachers penetrated deeper into the heart of society than the good. Laxity of principle and indifference of belief had their attractions for the vulgar, while the nobler lessons of philosophy, its ideas of equity and natural right, would only be appreciated by the refined and educated. The priests, who belonged to this latter class, might shrink from the atrocity of human sacrifices<sup>2</sup>, and extenuate the

<sup>1</sup> Such, for instance, as the *de Senectute*, *de Amicitia*, *de Natura Deorum*.

<sup>2</sup> The Romans affirmed that human sacrifices had been abolished by the elder Brutus (Macrob. i. 7.). But on three occasions, at least, such victims were demanded at a much later period; namely, in the year v.c. 527 (Oros. iv. 13.), and again, v.c. 536 (Liv. xxii. 57., "minime Romano sacro"); and once more, v.c. 640 (Plut. *Qu. Rom.* p. 284.). Soon after this the rite was denounced by a decree of the senate. Plin. *H. N.* xxx. 1., A. v.c. 657. Dion Cassius, indeed, asserts that a sacrifice of this kind took place at the triumph of Julius



literal signification of the most scandalous of the national dogmas; the nobles might soften the rigour of ancient law; but to the common people these silent changes were offensive or unintelligible. The literature of Rome, adopted as it was from Greece, was an instrument for enlarging men's ideas, and refining their sentiments; but it remained a dead letter to the mass of the citizens, to whom the glaring spectacles of the circus and amphitheatre proved more attractive than the intellectual culture of a conquered foe.

It was towards the end of the second Punic war that Upper Italy first became filled with Greek settlers. They came indeed, in the first instance, in the train of conquest, and in the condition of slaves. But their well-trained talents soon secured them ascendancy, and they made their captors captive.<sup>1</sup> Throughout the sixth century of the city the foreign professors of science and literature were flocking into Rome. Archagathus, the first Greek physician, came in the year 534, and the schools of grammar and rhetoric were represented

Influence of  
Greek on  
Roman literature.

Cæsar (xliii. 24.), and adds that he cannot find that any oracle required it. The statements of the Greeks on any subject of this kind are to be received with caution, both on account of their ignorance of Roman manners and their prejudice against them. Thus Eusebius (*Paneg.* 13.) asserts that human sacrifices were continued at Rome to his day, alluding, perhaps, to the words of Lactantius (*de fals. Rel.* i. 21.): "Etiam nunc sanguine colitur humano (Jupiter Latiaris);" which undoubtedly refers only to a libation of the blood of gladiators. Dion's statement may be some misconception of the nature of a military punishment. In ancient times the consul, prætor, or dictator, could devote to Mars a victim selected from the legion. Liv. viii. 10. The story of the human sacrifices of Octavius at the capture of Perusia (Suet. *Octav.* 15.), is dubious and obscure.

<sup>1</sup> Hor. *Ep.* ii. 1. 156.:

"Græcia capta ferum victorem cepit."

CHAP.  
XXII

at the end of the century by Crates of Mallus, the commentator on Homer. The Greek language was first rendered fashionable by Scipio Africanus and his friend Lælius. Paulus Æmilius<sup>1</sup>, and in the next generation Scipio Æmilianus<sup>2</sup> were celebrated for their interest in the literature of Greek antiquity. It was with a verse of Homer that the latter predicted that Rome should one day perish, like sacred Ilium.<sup>3</sup> Early in the century commenced the adaptation of Greek metres to the Latin tongue.<sup>4</sup> Ennius and Livius, under the patronage of the liberal nobles of the day, rendered their countrymen familiar with the models of the Epos and the Drama.<sup>5</sup> But these innovations were not unresented. There are not wanting indications of a struggle between the old school and the new, the domestic and the foreign, in literature as in religion and law. The Romans possessed, indeed, even at that early time, a literature of their own,

<sup>1</sup> Plut. *Æmil.* 28.; Plin. *H. N.* xxxv. 40. 30.

<sup>2</sup> Scipio Æmilianus was adopted by the son of the elder Africanus, and bore his cognomen also. Each of them had a friend named Lælius, and both Scipios and both Lælii were equally distinguished for their zeal for Greek literature.

<sup>3</sup> *Iliad.* vi. 448.:

ἔσσεται ἡμαρ ὅταν ποτ' ὀλώλῃ Ἰλῖος ἱρή.

Appian. *Pun.* 132.

<sup>4</sup> Porcius Licinius apud Gell. xvii. 21., speaks of a foreign Muse:

“Pœnico bello secundo Musa pinnato gradu  
Intulit se bellicosam in Romuli gentem feram.”

Comp. Hor. *Ep.* ii. 1. 161.:

“Serus enim Græcis admovit acumina chartis;  
Et post Punica bella quietus quærere cœpit  
Quid Sophocles et Thespis et Æschylus utile ferrent.”

<sup>5</sup> Suet. *de ill. Gramm.* 1.: “Antiquissimi doctorum, qui iidem et poetæ et semi-Græci erant, Livium et Ennium dico.”

which many of them were ill disposed to see superseded by an exotic growth. No nation, perhaps, was ever so rich in ballad poetry, or had more completely woven into verse the whole circle of its ancient traditions. The rhythm indeed was rugged, and the strain homely<sup>1</sup>; but the subject was endeared to them by its appeal to family associations. The contempt with which the imitators of the Greeks, such as Ennius, regarded these rude but interesting essays in heroic poetry, excited, we may believe, a dogged spirit of opposition. The victory of the Hexameter over the Saturnian verse symbolized a sweeping revolution of ideas, and obliterated the cherished recollections of many centuries. Obscure as is the history of this long-forgotten contest, it would appear that Nævius was the champion of the old Roman literature. He was the enemy and traducer of Scipio, and, on the other hand, the friend of the elder Cato<sup>2</sup>; the satiric poetry, of which he was the earliest known author, continued to be the most genuine production of the Roman muse<sup>3</sup>; his dramatic pieces seem, from the titles of many of them, to have depicted the manners of the urban populace<sup>4</sup>; he contended for the rude purity of the old language assailed in form and substance by innovation on all sides; and he felt that with himself that purity would perish.

Nævius  
champion  
of the old  
Roman literature.

<sup>1</sup> Hor. *l. c.* :

“ Sic horridus ille  
Defluxit numerus Saturnius.”

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *de Senect.* 14.

<sup>3</sup> Quintil. i. : “ Satira tota nostra est.”

<sup>4</sup> As, for instance, Agitatoria, Ariolus, Bubulcus, Cerdo, Figulus, Fullones, Lignaria, Tunicularia. Duruy, *H. des Romains*, ii. 26.



CHAP.  
XXII.

It was with this feeling, assuredly, that he composed for himself an epitaph, filled with a mournful presentiment of this impending change. "If immortals," he said, "might weep for mortal men, the divine Camœnæ would weep for Nævius the poet; for since he has descended to the receptacle of the dead, men have forgotten at Rome the use of Latin speech."<sup>1</sup>

His rival  
Ennius.

The melancholy strain of Nævius is strikingly contrasted with the tone of exultation in which his victorious rival speaks also from his tomb. "Let no man," exclaims Ennius, "weep for me! For why? I live in the mouths of my countrymen."<sup>2</sup> The influence of the Hellenizing school now became predominant. The career which Ennius had marked out was followed by a long succession of writers, chiefly dramatic, who devoted themselves to the adaptation or servile imitation of Greek models. Cæcilius, Pacuvius, Plautus, and Terence refined successively upon the language and taste of their predecessors. Accius alone ventured to compose a few pieces on Roman subjects, but these fell speedily into oblivion. But meanwhile the mantle of Nævius had fallen upon Lucilius, whose satiric vein was inflamed with genuine indignation against the en-

Lucilius.

<sup>1</sup> Nævius apud Gell. i. 24. :

"Mortales immortales flere si foret fas,  
Flerent Divæ Camœnæ Nævium poetam :  
Itaque postquam est Orcino traditus thesauro,  
Obliti sunt Romæ loquier Latina lingua."

<sup>2</sup> Ennius apud Cic. *Tusc. Disp.* i. 15. :

"Nemo me lachrymis decoret, nec funera fletu  
Faxit : cur ? voluto vivus per ora virûm."

croachment of foreign ideas. Respected as he was in his lifetime, and long admired after his death, the indiscriminate severity with which he censured his contemporaries seems to bespeak the impugner of certain principles, rather than of personal vices. All the great poets of his day fell equally under his lash; for all of them offended equally against the independence of the Roman muse.<sup>1</sup> He exercised the freedom of his pen even upon Æmilianus and Lælius, but kept his raillery within such bounds as to escape the persecution which had befallen Nævius.<sup>2</sup> Bitter were his sarcasms on the old Roman or Sabine patricians, who deserved rather from their manners to be deemed Greeks<sup>3</sup>, and he exposed, we may believe, with rude scorn the sophistry and impiety of the foreign philosophers.<sup>4</sup> Accordingly, Lucilius made a deep impression upon his age in rallying the austere virtues of the nation around the principles of antiquity. Many a grave master of a Roman household, disgusted with the loose morality of the Greek models of taste, involved in one sweeping condemnation all who cultivated the detested language<sup>5</sup>, and long resisted

<sup>1</sup> Gell. xvii. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Hor. *Sat.* ii. 1., and the Scholiast in loc. He also attacked M. Scævola. Cic. *de Orat.* i.

<sup>3</sup> Lucil. apud Cic. *de Fin.* i. 3.:

“Græcum te, Albuti, quam Romanum atque Sabinum,  
Maluisti dici.”

<sup>4</sup> Lactant. *div. Inst.* v. 15.: “Lucilius apud quem disserens Neptunus de re difficillima, ostendit non posse id explicari, nec si Carneadem ipsum Orcus remittat.”

<sup>5</sup> Cic. *de Orat.* ii. 66.: “M. Cicero senex . . . . nostros homines similes esse Syrorum venalium, ut quisque optime Græce sciret, ita esse nequissimum.”

CHAP.  
XXII.

the current of fashion, in training his children in the frugal habits and modest discipline of his ancestors.<sup>1</sup>

Imitative  
character of  
the Roman  
literature.

But the seductions of the most harmonious, flexible, and copious of languages proved irresistible. Even Lucilius himself could not refrain from interweaving Greek words with the homely staple of his Latin style. In the common intercourse of life Greek became a fashionable vehicle of expression. The example of Cicero in his letters confirms the allusions of Lucretius to the practice of mingling the two languages freely together in familiar conversation. The Roman nobles, when they sate down gravely to the composition of their own historical memoirs, adopted sometimes the idiom of the vanquished foreigner in preference to their own<sup>2</sup>; or, if they aspired to the distinction of greater originality, still devoted themselves to the imitation of his most illustrious authors. This premature introduction to the best of models proved more fatal to the excellence of the Romans in poetry, than in any other walk of literature. Imagination is seldom found to survive the birth of

<sup>1</sup> Horace alludes to the old-fashioned practical education of some of the Roman youth even in his day. (*Ars Poet.* 325.) Cicero says (*de Leg.* ii. 23.) that in his childhood the XII. Tables were committed to memory: "quas nunc nemo discit." Varro, apud Non. in v. Assa voce: "In conviviis pueri modesti ut cantarent carmine antiquo in quibus laudes erant majorum," i. e. the old family ballads: comp. Dionys. *A. R.* i. 79. Cicero would revive the recital of these family records, as a commendable but obsolete practice (*de Leg.* ii. 24.).

<sup>2</sup> Albinus, Lucullus, and perhaps Sulla, wrote their memoirs in Greek. The dictator adopted the name of Epaphroditus when he addressed himself to Greek correspondents. Polyb. xl. 6.; Plut. *Lucull.* 1. The son of the elder Scipio Africanus wrote an historical work in Greek. Cic. *Brut.* 19.



self-consciousness and reflection. The noblest poetical compositions of the age of Cæsar were mere imitations or paraphrases. Sublime invention and vigorous powers of versification were cramped in Lucretius by the trammels of a subject unworthy of his genius, to which he was attracted by an undue admiration of foreign models. The formal adaptations of Catullus, elegant as they are, fall far short of his occasional pieces in the charms of genuine simplicity. Whenever, indeed, the Romans ventured to rely on themselves alone, their productions may rank among the noblest efforts of the true poetical temperament.

This rage for imitation, however, conducted undoubtedly to the diversion of the mind from politics and the real business of life; and thus became an engine of no mean importance in preparing the Roman people for a monarchical usurpation. The general diffusion of literary taste among the nobility enlarged the circle of their interests, and immersed in the study of writers of an age long past away, they could forget the troubles and perils of their own. One intellectual occupation alone remained, which recalled them habitually to the scenes of daily life, and bound them fast to the wheel of political excitement. The Roman noble was by position and education an orator. From his early youth he was instructed in eloquence as an art; he was drilled and disciplined for the business of the forum, at least as carefully as for the camp. To the Roman people he must address himself in the language of the people themselves; he might clothe

Roman  
oratory

CHAP.  
XXII.

his harangue in more fashionable phraseology for the perusal of his associates; but he must speak so as to be understood by a homely and uneducated populace. Whatever allowance we may make for the second revisal which Cicero probably bestowed on his written orations, they still remain, on the whole, an imperishable monument of the spoken language of the nation. Accordingly, the skill of the political orator appeared in nothing more than in combining a technical knowledge of the rules of rhetoric with a pure and idiomatic Latin style. It was the great merit of the mother of the Gracchi that she had bred up her children in the simplicity of their native tongue, of which they availed themselves effectively in their popular harangues.<sup>1</sup> Q. Catulus also and L. Crassus were celebrated for their vernacular diction at a time when the study of Greek models had corrupted most of their contemporary speakers.<sup>2</sup> But these illustrious men had themselves drunk deep of the fountains of foreign art: the persuasiveness of their eloquence was derived in no slight degree from their acquaintance with the empirical science of the rhetoricians. They had renounced the control of the antique prejudices which were still striving to restrict the studies of the Roman youth, and stood in the first rank as patrons of the modern or liberal style of oratory. For in this department of intellectual exertion, also, there was the same struggle

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Brut.* 58.: "Legimus epistolas Corneliæ matris Gracchorum: apparet filios non tam in gremio educatos quam in sermone matris."

<sup>2</sup> Cic. *Brut.* 35.: "Fuit in Catulo sermo Latinus, quæ laus dicendi non mediocris ab oratoribus plerisque neglecta est." Of Crassus (c. 58.): "Latine loquendi et sine molestia diligens elegantia."

between the old and new, the domestic and foreign element, as we have already remarked in so many others. In the flourishing period of the Roman commonwealth, the art of speaking was in fact the art of governing. It was only in the familiar society of the rulers of the state that mysteries so important were to be sought and communicated.<sup>1</sup> From the first the nobles regarded with jealous apprehension the pretensions of the Greek rhetoricians who opened their public schools for instruction in eloquence. The foreign intruders were repeatedly ordered to quit Rome; but the taste they had inspired, the interests they had developed, were not to be repressed: the young aspirants for forensic honours repaired to schools of art beyond the sea and returned from Athens and Apollonia, Mytilene and Rhodes, partizans of the Attic or Asiatic style respectively, but equally contemptuous towards the old homely Italian. Ultimately, even Roman teachers began to give public instruction in the art of rhetoric<sup>2</sup>; but either they were not qualified to compete with the Greek professors, or fashion refused to countenance them. When Cicero as a young man wished to avail himself of the Latin exercises over which Plotius presided, his

taught by  
the rheto-  
ricians.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Brut.* 72.: "Nec id solum domesticæ consuetudinis, ut dudum de Læliorum et Muciorum familiis audiebamus."

<sup>2</sup> Suet. (*de Cl. Rhet.* 1.) cites the edict of the censors, A. U. 662, by whom the Latin rhetoricians were branded as pernicious innovators. It does not appear that they were expelled, or their schools closed. Plotius and his principal followers, Gniphio, Otacilius, and Clodius were freedmen. The Romans did not consider their profession creditable to a man of ingenuous birth. See Ellendt, proleg. in Cic. *Brut.* p. xv.



CHAP.  
XXII.Decay of  
military  
discipline.

advisers recommended him rather to train himself for public life by declaiming in Greek.<sup>1</sup>

But the decay of the ancient ideas was still more apparent in another quarter. The vitals of the republic were corrupted in the corruption of her legions. In the course of the last two centuries a great change had taken place in the composition of the Roman armies, a still greater in their habits and sentiments. In ancient times only the wealthier citizens had served in the legions, armed and equipped according to the class assigned to them by the censors. They were wont to go forth a few days' journey from their homes, and return at the close of a few weeks' campaign to take part in the elections or ceremonies of the city, and enjoy the sweets of domestic life. Originally the state had afforded her defenders no pay for a service demanded alike from all who could maintain themselves in the field by their own means. Occasions, indeed, had frequently occurred when the citizens had resisted the consul's summons, and refused to serve till their complaints were redressed by the senate; but when once enlisted and bound by the terrors of the military oath, and still more of the military discipline, their conduct had been as exemplary as their courage, and the Roman emperor had rarely had to contend against the mutinous spirit of his generous soldiery. But this admirable discipline seems to have been first broken down in the long series of years during which the legions were occupied in the conquest of Spain.

<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Ep. ad Titinium*, apud Sueton. *de Cl. Rhet.* 2.

Removed so long and so far from their own hearths and the associations connected with them, demoralized at the same time by the repeated licence to plunder, the vigorous exertions of Cato and Scipio *Æmilianus* could restore only for a moment a healthy tone of obedience in the camps of the conquerors.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, the rapid decrease of the middle class of citizens from which the soldiers of the republic were drafted, rendered the recruitment of the legions constantly more difficult. It was in vain that C. Gracchus, among the various measures of his tribunate for conciliating the favour of the commons, sought to bribe them to military service by making the state pay for their clothing. This was a great step, at least in principle, towards the conversion of the temporary service of the citizen into the establishment of a standing army. But the reform of Marius struck a deeper blow at the institutions of the infant republic. He opened the ranks to all classes of citizens without pecuniary qualification.<sup>2</sup> Important as this change was, its necessity was so distinctly felt that it does not appear to have roused the decided opposition of the nobles. The proletaries of over-crowded Rome won the great victories over Jugurtha and the Cimbri; but the new recruit, without home and acres, wife and family, transferred to his leader the devotion he owed to the state. The camp and not the city became the centre of his dearest interests. The names of the senate and people by which he was sworn were speedily forgotten, but

<sup>1</sup> Vell. ii. 5.; Florus, ii. 18.

Sallust. *B. J.* 86.; Flor. iii. 1.; Val. Max. ii. 3. 1.

CHAP.  
XXII.

he loved his centurion and he worshipped his eagles. Military service now became the profession of a life; the manners and sentiments of the paid swordsman corresponded with his occupation; the legionary was known in the Suburra by his gait and language, as surely as by his arms and accoutrements. Whenever an expedition was announced which promised booty, such as those to the opulent regions of the East, the ranks of the army were crowded with volunteers, unprincipled and imperious; the veteran despised the reward of a few acres of land, and quitted his plough to buckle on his sword, at the call of a favourite commander.<sup>1</sup> He claimed as his own the spoils of the conquered enemy, and, if baulked of his prey, refused to follow in the pursuit. A proconsul, such as Lucullus, who strove to temper the severities of war with clemency and moderation, was baffled by the mutinous spirit of his troops, and checked in the mid career of victory. The audacity of the private soldier was encouraged by the example of centurions and tribunes: the emperor found it, for the most part, easier and more profitable to give the rein to licence than to curb it. Meanwhile, the cohorts transplanted from the banks of the Tiber took root on the margin of the Nile and the Orontes. The garrisons of the Syrian frontier were transferred, through a series of years, to the command of each successive proconsul. The troops which Gabinius carried into Egypt fixed their abodes there after his return to Rome.<sup>2</sup> The soldiers of the republic

<sup>1</sup> Compare Liv. xxxix. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Cæs. B. C. iii. 110.; Duruy, *Hist. des Romains*, ii. 44. The vanquished legionaries of Crassus were content to take up their abode in Parthia.



compared themselves with the regular battalions which guarded the thrones of Oriental monarchs; they envied the splendour of their equipments and the lavish profusion of their pay; above all, the honours rendered to them by nobles, and the fear they inspired in the people.

In the healthier days of the commonwealth the senate had been described as an assembly of kings: in dignity and substantial power every member of that august order had deemed himself the equal or the superior of monarchs on their thrones. The consul who went forth from Rome at the head of his fellow-citizens to overthrow the dynasties of Greece and Asia, had returned to resume his place in the city with the proud simplicity of a private senator. But these antique virtues were rapidly corrupted by contact with the forms and shows of royalty. The series of years to which the proconsul's command became frequently extended, weaned him from his attachment to home, and accustomed him to pomp and power inconsistent with republican manners. Surrounded by officials whose fortunes depended on his favour, supported by a soldiery which acknowledged no law but his word, and fawned upon by courtiers and vassal potentates, he forgot the sentiments of his birth, and resigned himself to the charms of sovereignty. Sulla was fascinated, like the Spartan Pausanias, by the allurements of Asiatic pomp and the contagious example of despotism. Pompeius dreamed, in his Alban villa, of the guard of state and the robe of honour, and the silken canopies of Syria and Armenia. The East was the grave of many a great Roman

Corruption  
of the  
Roman  
generals.

CHAP.  
XXII.

---

Concluding  
remarks.

virtue, and Alexandria was the Capua which corrupted Cæsar.

Such was the general decay of principles and corruption of manners which marked the era of the foundation of the imperial government. It contained, indeed, elements both of good and evil, and the progress of this history will derive some of its chief interest from the attempt to discriminate between them. We have beheld a nation, still full of life, still instinct with energy, just arrived at the culminating point of its glories in the career most appropriate to its genius; the conquered world lies prostrate at its feet, and for a moment it seems to have achieved the second and greater triumph over its own passions. The task now lies before it of consolidating its acquisitions and imparting civilization to its subjects. In modern times all moral and political speculation is forward-looking, and is full of anticipations of new discoveries in happiness and knowledge. But the Roman statesmen and philosophers, with their strong practical instincts, took no such comprehensive survey of the destinies of their race. Cicero's writings may, I believe, be searched in vain for a single expression of reliance on the progressive improvement of mankind. The two poles of his philosophy, between which he wavers with perpetual oscillation, are regret for the past and resignation to the present. Cæsar, while the unseasoned fabric of his own institutions was tottering around him, derived no consolation from belief in a providential government of the world. At the moment of launching his country, as faith might have fondly persuaded him, on a career of

tranquil expansion and comprehensive culture, the founder of the empire closed his eyes to the future and shrank from even guessing at the end. The old beliefs of the primitive ages, which had done something at least to temper prosperity and sweeten the ills of life, had perished to a poisonous core in a shrivelled husk. The science of ethics was apparently exhausted. It had finished its career in blank disappointment, and there was no faith or courage to commence it afresh. Alexander wept on the margin of the Eastern Ocean that there were no more lands to conquer; Cæsar, from the furthest bourn of philosophic speculation, may have confessed with a sigh that within the visible horizon of human intuitions there were no more provinces for reason to invade. The Great Disposer had yet another leaf to turn in the book of His manifold dispensations; but the rise and progress of a new religion, with vigour to control the jarring prejudices of nations and classes, asserting supernatural facts, and claiming divine authority, appealing with equal boldness on the one hand to history, on the other to conscience, shaping an outward creed, and revealing inward ideas, the law of the simple and the science of the wise, exalting obedience in the place of ambition, and expanding patriotism into philanthropy, was the last offspring of the womb of Time that Cæsar could have imagined, or Cicero have ventured to anticipate.



LONDON :  
SPOTTISWOODES and SHAW,  
New-street-Square.











DG  
276  
M5  
v.2

Merivale, Charles  
A history of the Romans  
under the empire

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---



